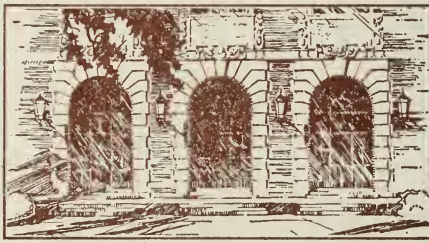


LIBRARY OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS
AT URBANA-CHAMPAIGN

Q.821
C39Yc
v.31



The Textual Tradition of
Chaucer's Troilus



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2015

The Textual Tradition of Chaucer's Troilus

BY

ROBERT KILBURN ROOT, PH.D.

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR, JOHN L. CADWALADER
PRECEPTOR IN ENGLISH, IN PRINCETON UNIVERSITY

LONDON

PUBLISHED FOR THE CHAUCER SOCIETY

BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,

BROADWAY HOUSE, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.

AND BY HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS,

AMEN CORNER, E.C., AND 29-35 WEST 32ND STREET, NEW YORK.

1916 for the Issue of 1912.

First Series, XCIX.

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED,
BRUNSWICK ST., STAMFORD ST., S.E., AND BUNGAY, SUFFOLK.

821
C.394c
V.31
~~no. 94~~
MS. 12.11.15
English 2 Ag 16 24 vol 4 - 1176 for 1879 continuation

To

Sir William S. McCormick

SCHOLAR, MAN OF AFFAIRS, AND GENEROUS FRIEND

349900

Adam sciveyn, if ever it thee bifalle
Boece or Troilus to wryten newe,
Under thy lokkes thou most have the scalles,
But after my making thou wryte trewe.
So ofte a daye I mot thy werk renewe,
Hit to correcte and eek to rubbe and scrape
And al is through thy negligence and rape.

PREFACE.

THE textual study of Chaucer's *Troilus*, which is now offered to students of the poet's works, was begun a number of years ago by Sir William S. McCormick, then professor in the University of St. Andrews. Very important public services to the cause of British university education compelled him to abandon the work to which he had already given a great amount of time and labour. When, in the summer of 1913, I undertook its completion, Sir William McCormick most generously put at my free disposal all the collations and notes which he had accumulated. To him, therefore, my debt is so great that adequate acknowledgment is impossible. In whatever value this study may possess, his share is a large one. For the use I have made of the materials turned over to me, and for the conclusions reached, I must, of course, accept sole responsibility. Much of the work I have inevitably had to do over again from the beginning, since only so could I hope to control the many elements which make up a problem of extraordinary complexity. I have, however, been saved many months of labour by the virtually complete collations of seven of the unprinted MSS., and of Caxton's edition, which Sir William McCormick had made. Repeatedly, also, I have availed myself of suggestions found among his papers. It gives me pleasure to acknowledge, also, the helpful advice of my friend and colleague, Professor Gordon Hall Gerould, who has read my book in manuscript.

It may make easier the understanding and appraisal of the results of this study if I indicate briefly the procedure which I have followed. I had, to begin with, the diplomatic prints of seven of the *Troilus* MSS. published by the Chaucer Society. Extensive comparisons of these prints with the MSS. have shown that they are in general to be trusted. Wherever I found reason to distrust a printed reading, and wherever important results

depended on its accuracy, I have had recourse to the original. In an appendix to this volume I have listed all corrections of the Chaucer Society prints which have come to my notice. I have had in my possession a complete and very careful transcript of MS. Harleian 2392 (H_4), made some years ago for Dr. Furnivall. This also I have extensively verified. The collations made by Sir William McCormick are so detailed as to be virtually transcripts. His method was to take the text of one of the printed MSS., and alter it in the margin and between the lines in accordance with the readings of the MS. in question. Thus the readings of H_5 were indicated over the print of Gg, those of R over the print of J, those of Cx over H_3 , those of Ph over H_2 , those of A, D, and S_1 over Cl. Usually, though not always, the collation has extended even to matters of spelling. These collations I have in large part verified; and I have repeatedly had recourse to the MSS. themselves where any doubt arose. For the text of Thynne I have used the photographic facsimile. Two of the MSS., S_2 and Dig, I have myself collated, but only in part; since, as will be seen, their readings are seldom important. A partial collation has served to indicate unmistakably their membership in a large family, of which they constitute a very corrupt sub-group. Finally, I have had the Specimen Extracts from all otherwise unpublished authorities recently issued by the Chaucer Society. By these means I have been able to have before me at a glance the virtually complete testimony of all the scattered authorities, so that it has been possible to carry on much of the work at three thousand miles remove from the actual documents. I have, however, personally examined every page of every MS. concerned.

The investigation of the MS. relations has been based on a minute examination of about 2500 lines chosen from all parts of the poem, after a more cursory comparison of the authorities in their entirety. The lines chosen for careful study include: (1) the stanzas printed in the Chaucer Society's volume of Specimen Extracts; (2) the whole of the soliloquy on free choice in Book IV; (3) all lines in which there is a significant variation found in two or more MSS.; (4) all lines in which there is a variation, however slight, affecting the two main types of text α and β , or the important group designated as γ . For each of these 2500 lines I have prepared a separate card, containing the whole line as found in the Campsall MS. (chosen as a convenient basis of

comparison); and on this card I have noted all variant readings unless merely orthographical, found in any of the MSS.

I have regarded as significant variations all those where the agreement of two MSS. in a variant reading could not readily be explained as due to coincidence. It must be remembered that in the tradition of a Chaucerian poem one great influence making for corruption operated equally on nearly all scribes of the fifteenth century. This was the linguistic change which rendered mute many unaccented syllables, which in Chaucer's usage preserved full metrical value. Consequent upon this was a general ignorance of Chaucer's metre. Such variations, therefore, as the insertion or omission of *which* before *that*, or *that* after *which* or *how*, and in general the insertion or omission of colourless words not vital to the sense, I have usually regarded as not significant. In the same category I have put variations which consist in simple transpositions of words and phrases within the line, particularly when the transposition results in the substitution of a normal for an inverted order. Such variations must, of course, be taken into account when one comes to the final constitution of a critical text; but on them one cannot safely base any argument for MS. relation, unless the cases of agreement between two or more MSS. in such readings are very numerous.

The problem of presenting the results of my study in such form as to make them most readily comprehensible to the reader has not been an easy one. Because of the length of the poem, and the shifting character of some of the authorities, it has seemed best to present the evidence for each of the five books in a separate chapter, and then to resume the whole in a concluding chapter. This method has the disadvantage of broken continuity as regards single aspects of the discussion; but I am convinced that it makes for greater clearness.

In citing variant readings, the method is this: First is given the reading of the group of MSS. under discussion, followed by all variants of MSS. within the group. Then follows the reading of the rest of the MSS., with all variants which may conceivably have any bearing upon the main variation. When a reading is cited as that of more than one MS., it is spelled according to the MS. first named. Unless the variant reading under discussion is that of a group which includes Cl, the reading given as that of the rest of the MSS. is in the spelling of Cl. So far as possible,

a cited reading is quoted from one of the MSS. printed entire; and the MS. chosen is in every such case the first one available in the following order of preference: Cl, Cp, H₁, J, H₂, Gg, H₃. A dagger (†) before the line-number of a variant cited indicates that the reading in question is manifestly corrupt. An asterisk (*) indicates a striking case of variation due to authentic revision. When a reading given as characteristic of a group of MSS. is found also in other MSS. outside the group, the fact is indicated by printing after the cited reading the designations of these other MSS., enclosed in parentheses and preceded by the plus sign *e.g.* (+ GgH₅). A minus sign similarly used, *e.g.* (— AD) indicates that the MSS. designated desert the reading of the group for that of the rest of the MSS. When the designation of a MS. is enclosed in parentheses without other indication, *e.g.* (Cp), it means that the MS. omits the passage under discussion. The line-numbering adopted is that of Skeat's edition.

In work such as this, where even a momentary lapse of attention entails risk of error, I cannot hope wholly to have escaped the pitfalls. I have, however, taken every precaution to avoid inaccuracy; and I feel confident that any slips which have escaped me in revision are not so serious as to invalidate the conclusions. The conclusions themselves are of two sorts: the reasoned presentation of demonstrable facts, and more or less conjectural interpretation of the facts. Of the soundness of the first sort I can feel some confidence; of that of the second the reader must be the judge. I could not avoid the duty of attempting explanations, even where the way was most doubtful. In any event, I have presented the full evidence; and that cannot be without value. In the not very distant future I hope to publish a critical edition of *Troilus*, for which such a study as the present is an indispensable preliminary.

The task has been a long and a very exacting one; but it has been at every stage full of interest. The textual critic of Chaucer has always this reward, that in helping to recover the exact wording of the poet's lines he is sure of the approbation of an author who ended the greatest of his completed works with a prayer for his poem—

that non miswryte the,
Ne themysmetre for defeaute of tonge.

CONTENTS.

CHAP.	PAGE
I. THE AUTHORITIES	1
II. THE MANUSCRIPT RELATIONS IN BOOK I	33
III. THE MANUSCRIPT RELATIONS IN BOOK II.	83
IV. THE MANUSCRIPT RELATIONS IN BOOK III	128
V. THE MANUSCRIPT RELATIONS IN BOOK IV	182
VI. THE MANUSCRIPT RELATIONS IN BOOK V	230
VII. CONCLUSION	248
APPENDIX	273
INDEX	278

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

- A : MS. Additional 12,044, British Museum.
 Cl : Campsall MS., Doncaster.
 Cp : Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, MS. 61.
 Cx : Caxton's edition.
 D : Bishop Cosin's Library, Durham, MS. V. II. 13.
 Dig : MS. Digby 181, Bodleian.
 F₁ : Fragment in Camb. Univ. Libr., MS. Ff. 1. 6.
 F₂ : Fragment in Trinity College, Cambridge, MS. R. 3. 20.
 Fil : Boccaccio's *Filostrato*. (References are to book and stanza in the Moutier edition.)
 Gg : Cambridge University Library, MS. Gg. 4. 27.
 H₁ : MS. Harleian 2280, British Museum.
 H₂ : MS. Harleian 3943, " "
 H₃ : MS. Harleian 1239, " "
 H₄ : MS. Harleian 2392, " "
 H₅ : MS. Harleian 4912, " "
 J : St. John's College, Cambridge, MS. L. 1.
 Ph : MS. Phillipps 8250, Cheltenham.
 R : MS. Rawlinson Poet. 163, Bodleian.
 S₁ : MS. Selden, B. 24, Bodleian.
 S₂ : MS. Selden, Supra 56, Bodleian.
 Th : Thynne's edition of 1532.
 α : the earliest, unrevised text, and collectively the MSS. which in any given passage present this text.
 β : the final, revised text, and collectively the MSS. which in any given passage present this text.
 γ : a lost MS. derived from the archetype before the revision was yet complete, and collectively the MSS. derived from this original, *i. e.* Cl, Cp, H₁, S₂, Dig, A, D (and sometimes also S₁ and H₃).
 † : indicates that a reading is manifestly corrupt.
 * : indicates that the variation in reading is clearly due to authentic revision.
 A superscript numeral after the designation of a MS. indicates the portion of the MS. written by a given hand. Thus, H₂³ indicates the portion of H₂ written by the third hand.

The Textual Tradition of Chaucer's *Troilus*.

CHAPTER I.

THE AUTHORITIES.

OF the many MSS. which may once have been written of Chaucer's *Troilus* there have survived to us, so far as is known, but sixteen, and of these two are incomplete.¹ Besides the MSS., two early printed copies present texts which are independent of the existing MSS., and therefore rank with the MSS. as authorities. These are the *editio princeps* printed by Caxton about 1483, and the first collected edition of Chaucer's works, edited by Thynne in 1532. The editions of Wynkyn de Worde, 1517, and Pynson, 1526, are reprints of Caxton, and have no value as authorities. Thynne made use of Caxton; but his main reliance was a MS. now lost. Subsequent editions are based on Thynne.

To evaluate these eighteen authorities, to determine so far as may be their relation to one another and to Chaucer's original, and to show how they are to be used for the establishing of a critical text, is the purpose of this volume. This problem is enormously complicated by the fact, for which abundant evidence will be presented in the following chapters, that the existing MSS. derive, not from a constant and uniform authentic text, but from a text which underwent extensive alterations and revision at the hands of the poet himself. Certain of the MSS. derive from Chaucer's original, while still in its first unrevised form, to which we shall give the designation α ; others from the final revised version of this original, which we shall call β . At a time when the work of revision had been only partially done, while the

¹ There are in addition three short MS. fragments of no critical value, see p. 31.

original was in a state midway between α and β , there was derived a MS., the ancestor of about half of the total number of existing MSS., including many of the most beautiful and carefully written. To this family of MSS., or rather to its lost original, has been given the designation γ .

A further element of complication is introduced by the fact that several of the MSS. are composites, based for part of the poem on an exemplar of α type, let us say, and for another part on an exemplar of β type. A result of this is that the MSS. which bear witness to the α text in Book I are not the same which bear witness to it in Book III, nor yet in Book IV. The symbol α , then, does not designate a constant group of MSS. but a state of Chaucer's text, attested now by this group of MSS., now by that, and so with β . The γ group, it will be found, is very nearly constant.

In the case of one of the MSS., H_2 , the composite character of the volume is patent to our eyes. It is the work of four different scribes, one of whom we see to have been a repairer. He found a defective MS., itself the work of two different scribes, which he then patched up, supplying lost leaves, filling out lines left blank, finishing an unfinished quire, and ultimately calling in the aid of still another scribe to complete the volume. The repairer and his associate used as their exemplar a MS. of different type from that which had served for the earlier scribes. With the variations of handwriting before our eyes, the changes from one type of text to the other are easy to follow. If, however, instead of H_2 we had only a MS. copied from it, we should have before us but the writing of a single scribe, a MS. apparently homogeneous, but in reality the composite H_2 . Such a MS. we actually have in Gg, the work of a single scribe, but descended from what was probably a composite similar to H_2 . Or a scribe may have had access to more than a single exemplar, and transferred his allegiance from one to another midway in his task.

In some cases we are offered the still more confusing phenomenon of a "mixed" or "contaminated" text, where a MS. copied from one exemplar has been "corrected" by reference to another. When these corrections have been made in the actual MS. before our eyes, they cause no trouble. More often they lie back of the existing MS., somewhere in its line of descent. On Plate I. of the Chaucer Society's volume, *The Manuscripts of Chaucer's*

Troilus, may be seen a striking example of contamination, where the "correction" is made in the existing MS.

In this introductory chapter we shall describe and characterize each of the eighteen authorities for the text of *Troilus*. For fuller bibliographical descriptions the reader is referred to the Chaucer Society's volume, *The Manuscripts of Chaucer's Troilus*, where will be found also collotype facsimiles of the various handwritings. Here the description is concerned primarily with textual matters. In the case of each MS. is given a full list of all omissions and transpositions involving at least an entire line. In anticipation of the results reached in later chapters, the chief aspects of its affiliation are noted. Dialectal peculiarities are recorded; and any striking orthographical characteristics are mentioned. It has not seemed necessary to treat this last matter with any fullness of detail, since the Chaucer Society has already printed specimen extracts from all of the MSS. not printed entire, and from Caxton and Thynne.

The MSS. are described in the alphabetical order of their designations.

ADDITIONAL 12,044 (A).

British Museum, MS. Additional 12,044. A vellum MS., $10 \times 7\frac{1}{2}$ in., of 113 leaves, which contains only *Troilus*. It is in two hands, both of the fifteenth century. A later hand has throughout made corrections and supplied missing lines. The first hand has written up to line 1709 of Book III, and the second hand has completed the volume, which is, however, defective at the end.

Omissions, etc.

1. 890-896, stanza 128, omitted, no gap.
1. 914, 915 transposed.
2. 528, 529 transposed.
2. 734 (second half), 735 by later hand over erasure.
3. 295-364, ten stanzas, omitted, no gap. Due to the loss of a leaf in the AD original (see p. 137).
3. 927-931 by later hand in space left blank.
3. 1078 by later hand.
3. 1208 by later hand over erasure.
3. 1209 by later hand in space left blank.

3. 1229, 1230 transposed.
3. 1324-1337, stanzas 190, 191, in $\alpha\gamma$ position.
3. 1447 by later hand in space left blank.
3. 1591, 1592 transposed.
4. 39, 40 in γ order.
4. 430, 431 by scribe over erasure.
4. 526-532 by later hand in space left blank.
4. 708-714, stanza 102, omitted, no gap.
4. 750-756, stanza 108, in $\beta\gamma$ position.
4. 1024 by later hand over erasure.
4. 1430 after 1433.
5. 60, 61 in γ order.
5. 1138, 1139 transposed.
5. 1541-1750 missing, three leaves lost.
5. 1821-end missing, leaf lost.

A is throughout a γ MS., closely related to D, save for lines 1345-1414 of Book III, a passage omitted by D, which the scribe of A has supplied from a MS. akin to GgH₅. Of the omissions and transpositions noted above, however, apart from those characteristic of the whole γ group, only the omission of 3. 295-364 is shared by D. It introduces many corrupt readings, frequently omitting words not necessary to the sense but required by the metre. The second hand is somewhat more guilty in the matter of corruptions than is the first. Neither scribe understood Chaucer's metre.

The first scribe apparently did not preserve in his speech the guttural continuant *gh*. In l. 625, for example, we find *pow* for *pogh*; in l. 617 *Hough* for *How*; in 2. 1120 *ought* for *out*. The weak vowel in inflectional syllables, though normally *e*, is often written *i*. The character *p* is used interchangeably with *th*, but only in pronominal forms.

The second scribe has no difficulty with the guttural continuant which he indicated by *3*, and occasionally by *gh*. Only rarely is *3* used for initial *y*. *Sch* is regularly written for *sh*. The weak vowel is occasionally *i* or *y*. He regularly writes *frome* for *from*, and *schulde* for *sholde*. The character *p* is used interchangeably with *th*, but more commonly in pronominal forms.

The readings of A, or of the AD parent, can be used to check those of ClCpH₁ in reconstituting the γ original. In some instances, however, the AD parent has corrected γ readings.

CAMPSALL (CL).

The property of Mrs. Bacon-Frank, of Campsall Hall, Doncaster. A vellum MS. $12 \times 8\frac{1}{4}$ in., of 120 leaves, which contains only *Troilus*. It is beautifully written in one hand of the early fifteenth century, and was executed for Henry V. while Prince of Wales, *i. e.* between 1399 and 1413.

Omissions, etc.

1. 890–896, stanza 128, omitted, no gap.
3. 1324–1337, stanzas 190, 191, in $\alpha\gamma$ position.
4. 39, 40 in γ order.
4. 438, 439 transposed. Corrected in margin.
4. 708–714, stanza 102, omitted, no gap.
4. 750–756, stanza 108, in $\beta\gamma$ position.
5. 60, 61 in γ order.

CL is consistently a γ MS., somewhat closer in its readings to AD than are CpH₁S₂Dig. Dialectally and orthographically it varies but little from Cp and H₁. It uses *p* interchangeably with *th*, though not at the beginning of a line. It does not use the character 3. Though remarkably free from gross blunders, it introduces a considerable number of trivial variations in which other MSS. outside the γ group, notably R, occasionally share. These agreements seem always to be fortuitous; for the variations are too trivial to warrant the hypothesis of contamination. Despite occasional lapses, it is an authority of high value for a reconstitution of the γ original.

CORPUS (CP).

Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, MS. No. 61. A vellum MS., $12\frac{1}{2} \times 8\frac{7}{10}$ in., of 151 + 2 leaves, which contains only *Troilus*. It is beautifully written in one hand of the early fifteenth century.

Omissions, etc.

1. 890–896, stanza 128, omitted, no gap.
3. 137 omitted.
3. 1228 omitted, space left at end of stanza.
3. 1324–1337, stanzas 190, 191, in $\alpha\gamma$.

3. 1576-1582, stanza 226, omitted. Stanza 225 is the last on a leaf which is the last of a quire. The beginning of 1576, *I passe al that which*, is written at the foot of the page (fol. 87b) as a catchword. The stanza was, therefore, present in Cp's original.
4. 39, 40 in γ order.
4. 491-532, six stanzas, omitted, no gap.
4. 708-714, stanza 102, omitted, no gap.
4. 750-756, stanza 108, in $\beta\gamma$ position.
4. 1388, second half,-1409, first half, omitted, no gap. An error of anticipation by which stanza 199 is "telescoped" into stanza 202.
5. 60, 61 in γ order.
5. 1233-1274, six stanzas, omitted, no gap.

Cp is consistently a γ MS. throughout. In its readings it is closest to H_1S_2 Dig. Save for the omissions noted above, it presents the γ text with a high degree of purity. Though not always consistent in preserving the weak *e* of inflectional syllables, it approximates in this and in other respects, grammatical and metrical, to Chaucer's known usage. In orthography, also, it shows a high degree of consistency. The character \mathfrak{p} is not used. Initial *y* is always written \mathfrak{z} ; but \mathfrak{z} is never used except with this value. The guttural continuant is consistently represented by *gh*. The vowel of inflectional syllables is regularly *e*. Adverbial *-ly* becomes *-lich*, and the first person pronoun *ich*, before a vowel.

With the closely similar H_1 , Cp is of the highest importance for the reconstitution of the γ original. All things considered, it is probably the best basis for the constitution of a critical text.

CAXTON'S EDITION OF 1483 (?) (Cx).

Caxton's edition of *Troilus and Cresede* is a small folio of 120 leaves, of which the first and the last two are blanks. The volume bears no date, but was probably printed in 1483. Four copies are known to exist. Two are in the British Museum, one in the library of St. John's College, Oxford, and one in the John Rylands Library, Manchester. Besides these there is a fragment of eight leaves in the British Museum.¹ Of the two copies in the

¹ For a more detailed description see Seymour de Ricci, *A Census of Caxtons*, Oxford, 1909, p. 30.

tish Museum, one lacks a few leaves. For my collations I have used the other British Museum copy, which is perfect.

Omissions, etc.

- . 111, 112 transposed.
- . 148-154 corrupt.
- . 449-504, eight stanzas, omitted.
- 1. 785-812 after 840, an eight-stanza leaf of the MS. copy reversed.
- 1. 890-896, stanza 128, omitted.
- 1. 904-931 after 959, again a leaf of the MS. reversed.
- 2. 246-301, eight stanzas, omitted.
- 2. 328-329 transposed.
- 2. 1079-1081 corrupt. (See *Specimen Extracts.*)
- 2. 1377 corrupt :

In that maner for no maner gynne

- 3. 133 reads :

Yow for to serue / lyke as ye wyl deuyse

- 3. 316-320 corrupt. (See *Specimen Extracts.*)
- 3. 442-476, five stanzas, omitted.
- 3. 1114-1169, eight stanzas, omitted.
- 3. 1266, 1267 transposed.
- 3. 1324-1337, stanzas 190, 191, in β position.
- 3. 1779-1785 after 1813.
- 4. 137, 138 transposed.
- 4. 153, 154 transposed.
- 4. 750-756, stanza 108, in $\beta\gamma$ position.
- 4. 1277-1279 corrupt :

Not withstandyng the Grekes grete route

Doutyth not / it must nedes be so

By veray resons more than one or twoo

- 5. 70, 71 transposed.
- 5. 341 corrupt :

And though bitwene yow were neuer no strif

- 5. 348 corrupt :

Withoute wordes or blowyng oute aloft

- 5. 1243 omitted. After 1244 a corrupt line :

For sorowe of whiche / almost ther he deyde

5. 1256, 1257 corrupt :

Hath thus withdrawe your hert / & love from me
This is the cause of your long absence

5. 1498. Fourth and fifth lines of Latin argument of Statius transposed.

5. 1812, 1813 corrupt :

How he was slayne / alas al to rathe
The folk of Troye to moche harme & skathe

5. 1829 after 1832.

5. 1831 after 1828.

A glance at the list of omissions, etc., just given will serve to show how careless was Caxton's work as editor of *Troilus*. He must have printed from a single corrupt and defective MS., without even noticing that certain leaves were missing and others reversed. Had he made any pretence at collating it with another copy, some of the omissions and spurious lines would have been corrected. What we have, then, is a printed copy of a single lost MS.; and Caxton's carelessness has resulted in giving to the modern critic a text which, however corrupt, is at least not "edited," and hence is more valuable than the excellently edited text of Thynne. Caxton's MS. was consistently of the β type, akin to the β portions of H_3 . H_3Cx agree with γS_1 as against JRH_4 in a series of striking variants in lines 701-1113 of Book II.

Throughout the poem Cx is very corrupt. Words are omitted; words and phrases are transposed—to the serious detriment of the sense and the utter confusion of the metre. Cx is particularly erratic in its treatment of final *e*. It has, however, no distinctive traits of dialect or orthography.

Despite its corruptions, Cx is an important witness to the text of β .

DIGBY 181 (Dig).

Bodleian, MS. Digby 181. A paper MS., $11\frac{1}{8} \times 8$ in., of $93 + 4$ leaves, which in addition to its fragment of *Troilus* contains a miscellaneous collection of poems by Chaucer, Lydgate, Hoccleve, etc. The *Troilus* fragment is written by one hand of the fifteenth century. It ends in the middle of a page with line 532 of Book III.

Omissions, etc.

1. 152 after 154, proper order indicated in margin.
1. 890-896, stanza 128, omitted, no gap.
1. 955, 956 omitted, no gap.
2. 776-1083 omitted. The loss corresponds to two leaves; but, as there is no mutilation of the MS., the leaves were apparently lost in Dig's original.
2. 1157-1233 omitted. The loss corresponds to one leaf, which again seems to have been missing in the original.
2. 1419 by scribe in margin.
3. 89 by scribe in margin.
3. 533-end of poem missing.

Dig is throughout a γ MS., closely related to S_2 , with which it shares innumerable corruptions besides many others of its own. Dialectally, also, it shares the peculiarities of S_2 .

DURHAM (D).

Bishop Cosin's Library, Durham, V. II. 13. A vellum MS., 11×7 in., of $111 + 5$ leaves, which contains, besides *Troilus*, *Cupid's Letter* by Hoccleve and a poem of five seven-line stanzas: *Troilus* is written in one hand of the fifteenth century, save for a few lines, 5. 151-154, 184-188, which are by a different scribe. Another contemporary hand has made corrections; and a modern hand has supplied in the margin a number of omitted lines.

Omissions, etc.

1. 222 omitted, no gap.
1. 231-384 missing, two leaves lost.
1. 684 omitted, no gap.
1. 720 omitted, no gap.
1. 890-896, stanza 128, omitted, no gap.
1. 1048 omitted, no gap.
2. 396 by scribe in margin.
2. 514 written twice, first deleted.
2. 695, 696 written three times (though second time only four words of 696). The four superfluous lines were stricken out in blue by the rubricator.
2. 1032, 1033 omitted, no gap. Supplied in margin by modern hand.

2. 1215, 1216 by later hand in space left blank.
2. 1262 repeated after 1263.
3. 165 omitted, no gap.
3. 257 omitted, no gap.
3. 295-364, ten stanzas, omitted, no gap. Apparently a leaf was lost in D's original.
3. 438 omitted, no gap.
3. 676 omitted, no gap.
3. 800 omitted. Line 799 is at foot of page.
3. 809 omitted. Loss indicated by rubricator.
3. 1171, 1172 by scribe in margin.
3. 1245 after 1215, but deleted and then written in proper place.
3. 1324-1337, stanzas 190, 191, in $\alpha\gamma$ position.
3. 1339 repeated again after 1443, but deleted.
3. 1345-1414, ten stanzas, omitted, no gap. Again a ten-stanza leaf missing in D's original.
3. 1551, 1552 transposed.
4. 39, 40 in γ order.
4. 550 by scribe in margin.
4. 708-714, stanza 102, omitted, no gap.
4. 750-756, stanza 108, in $\beta\gamma$ position.
4. 1035 omitted. In its place 1041 with last two words omitted. Line 1041 again, complete, in proper place.
4. 1397 by scribe in margin.
4. 1426 written twice, first time deleted.
4. 1488 after 1485.
5. 60, 61 in γ order.
5. 136, 137 by scribe in margin.
5. 151-154, 184-188 by different hand in space left blank.
5. 814 written twice, first time deleted.
5. 1172, 1173 written twice, second time deleted.
5. 1396, 1397 omitted, no gap. Supplied by modern hand in margin.
5. 1749 after 1745, but deleted, and written again in proper place.
5. 1802, 1803 transposed, but corrected in margin.

D is throughout a γ MS. closely related to A. Of the many instances of omission and transposition just given, however, only

two, the omissions of 3. 295–364 and 3. 1345–1414, are, apart from those characteristic of the whole γ group, shared by A. The text of D is rather more corrupt than that of A.

Dialectally it has no very marked peculiarities. We find, however, *awne* for *owne*, e. g. 2. 652; 5. 565, and *ar* for *er*. *Shoulde* is regularly written for *sholde*. The character *p* is used interchangeably with *th*; but the character *3* is not employed.

CAMBRIDGE, Gg 4. 27 (Gg).

Cambridge University Library, MS. Gg 4. 27. A vellum MS., $12\frac{3}{4} \times 7\frac{5}{8}$ in., of 516 leaves, which contains a miscellaneous collection of Chaucer's works. It is written in one hand of the first half of the fifteenth century. The volume has been mutilated by the cutting out of illuminated leaves.

Omissions, etc.

1. 1–70 missing, leaf cut out.
1. 86 omitted, no gap.
1. 122 all but first word by corrector.
1. 582–595 repeated over page and deleted.
1. 654 all but first word by corrector.
1. 890–896, stanza 128 omitted, no gap.
1. 1044–2. 84 missing, two leaves cut out.
2. 616 omitted, no gap.
2. 1146 omitted, no gap. *Caret* in margin.
2. 1233–1239 repeated over page and deleted.
2. 1384–1388 by corrector.
2. 1460 omitted, but supplied by scribe at foot of page, with proper place indicated.
3. 1–56 missing, leaf cut out.
3. 571 all but first word by corrector.
3. 957 omitted, line left blank.
3. 1223, 1224 by corrector.
3. 1324–1337, stanzas 190, 191, in $\alpha\gamma$ position.
3. 1693–1695 by corrector; 1693, 1694 transposed.
3. 1807–4. 112 missing, two leaves cut out.
4. 307–322 by corrector.
4. 410, 411 in α order.
4. 728 after 721, and whole stanza awkwardly revised in accordance with the shift.

4. 750-756, stanza 108, in α position.
4. 806-833 omitted, no gap.
4. 953-1078, free-choice soliloquy, except last stanza, omitted,
no gap.
4. 1090 omitted, line left blank.
4. 1477 by corrector.
4. 1667-5. 35 missing, leaf cut out.
5. 60, 61 in γ order, but 61 corrupt: *And ofte sche syhede & seyde allas.*
5. 187 omitted, no gap.
5. 194 omitted, line left blank.
5. 257 corrupt: *And for that for anon he dede awake*, by contemporary hand, not that of corrector, in space left blank.
5. 384 all but first word by corrector.
5. 411 by later hand in space left blank.
5. 571, 572 transposed.
5. 578 by scribe at foot of page, proper place indicated.
5. 713-719 omitted, no gap.
5. 881 omitted, line left blank after 882.
5. 922 omitted, line left blank after 924.
5. 1011 all but first word by corrector.
5. 1069 after 1071, but proper place indicated.
5. 1702-end missing, four leaves cut out of MS.

The text given by Gg is of composite character. It is closely related to the fragmentary H_5 , which ends with 4. 686, and the account to be given of it applies also to H_5 . In Book I, Gg (and H_5) is consistently a β MS., somewhat closer in its readings to J than to the other β MSS. In Book II its β character continues through line 63. From 64 to 1210 it presents a "mixed" text, predominantly α in character but with frequent β readings. It shares, however, in none of the distinctive JRH₄ readings so numerous between 701 and 1113. Beginning at 2. 1210 and extending into Book III, it resumes its β character with clearly marked relationship to J. At line 399 of Book III (with one earlier instance in 243) Gg becomes definitely and consistently an α MS., and so continues till the end. As an α MS. it presents the text at the same stage of revision as does the α portion of J. This is particularly marked in its treatment of the free-choice soliloquy. See below, pp. 216-220.

The text of Gg is exceedingly corrupt, the corruption most commonly taking the form of a transposition of words, or the omission of a word not necessary to the sense, to the utter confusion of the metre. Some of these corruptions are shared by H₅; but many others are not.

There are also a number of dialectal and orthographical peculiarities to be noted. The scribe does not preserve with any consistency the guttural continuant, which he writes *ʒ* or *h*. We find regularly *pour* for *purgh*, and *pow* for *pough*, and, on the other hand, such spellings as *douʒteles* for *douteles* (5. 1149). He is also uncertain as to the value of *h* in the combination *wh*. He usually writes *wich* for *which*, and we find *weper* for *weper* (4. 1374). Occasionally *ho* is written for *who*. There is a strong tendency to substitute *e* for short accented *i*, e. g. *sek* for *sik*, and *dede* for *dile*. *Wele* is consistently written for *wol*. The weak vowel of inflectional syllables, however, is regularly *i* or *y*. Another peculiarity is the regular use of the forms *myn* and *pyn* instead of *my* and *pi*. *Sch* is always written for *sh*. The character *p* is used interchangeably with *th*. The character *ʒ* is used both as guttural continuant and as initial *y*.

The corruptions of Gg can be in large part eliminated by comparison with H₅; and the reconstituted GgH₅ original is a very important witness to *a*, particularly in Book III, where the only other authority is H₂Ph.

HARLEIAN 2280 (H₁).

British Museum, MS. Harleian 2280. A vellum MS., 9½ × 6¾ in., of 98 + 1 leaves, which contains only *Troilus*. It is written in one hand of the middle of the fifteenth century, which has supplied glosses, usually in Latin, and has made a number of corrections.

Omissions, etc.

1. 890–896, stanza 128, omitted, no gap.
3. 1324–1337, stanzas 190, 191, in *αγ* position.
4. 39, 40 in *γ* order.
4. 708–714, stanza 102, omitted, no gap.
4. 750–756, stanza 108, in *βγ* position.
5. 60, 61 in *γ* order.
5. 1345–1428, 12 stanzas, missing through loss of a leaf.

H₁ is consistently a γ MS. In its readings it is closest to CpS₂Dig. Dialectally and orthographically it varies very little from Cp, save that it often writes *sch* for *sh* and occasionally uses the character þ, chiefly, however, in pronouns and pronominal adverbs. Comparatively free from corruptions of its own, it is an authority of the first importance for a reconstitution of the γ original.

HARLEIAN 3943 (H₂).

British Museum, MS. Harleian 3943. A vellum MS., 10 $\frac{1}{4}$ × 5 $\frac{5}{8}$ in., of 116 leaves, which contains only *Troilus*. It is written in four hands, all of the fifteenth century, of which the first and second seem distinctly earlier than the other two. Hand 1 has written 1. 71-497, 1. 568-3. 1078, 3. 1639-4. 196. Hand 2 has written 3. 1079-1638, from which, however, 1289-1428 are lost. Hand 3 has written 1. 1-70, 1. 498-567, 4. 197-406, and has supplied missing lines in the parts written by hands 1 and 2. Hand 4 has written from 4. 407 to the end of the poem. It would seem that the scribe of hand 3 found an unfinished and defective MS., the work of hands 1 and 2, which he restored and corrected, subsequently turning over the task of completing the work to the scribe of hand 4.

Omissions, etc.

1. 1-70 by H₂³ on new leaf.
1. 148 erased to leave space between stanzas.
1. 484-490, stanza 70, omitted, no gap.
1. 498-567 by H₂³ on new leaf.
2. 26 by H₂³ in space left blank.
2. 29-42, two stanzas, after 49.
2. 250 by H₂³ in space left blank.
2. 509 omitted, line left blank.
2. 1083, all but first word, by H₂³ in space left blank.
3. 116, 117 transposed.
3. 1079-1638 by H₂².
3. 1251 by H₂³ in space left blank.
3. 1265 by H₂³ at end of stanza, proper place indicated.
3. 1289-1428, twenty stanzas, missing, two leaves lost.
3. 1546, end, and 1547 by H₂³ in space left blank.
3. 1596 corrupt: þat he of his modir borne wesse.

3. 1597 after 1603.
3. 1744–1771, Troilus's hymn to love, omitted, no gap.
4. 197–406 by H_2^3 . From 407 to end by H_2^4 .
4. 750–756, stanza 108, in $\beta\gamma$ position.
5. 940 and 942 exchanged.
5. 1498–1499. An additional line, *Feruidus ypomedon timidique in gurgite mersus*, found in no other MS., appended to the Latin argument of Statius.
5. 1807–1827, *Teseide* passage, omitted, no gap.

The composite nature of H_2 is clearly reflected in the character of its text. The portions written by hands 1 and 2 are consistently an α MS., very closely related to Ph. The portions written by hands 3 and 4 are from a MS. closely related to H_4 , which presents α readings in Book I and β readings in the rest of the poem.

Throughout, the text of H_2 shows many corruptions and metrical perversions. Dialectal and orthographical characteristics vary with the several hands. The scribe of hand 1, who is also the scribe of Ph, exhibits the same habits of spelling that are seen in Ph. Hand 2 writes *sch* for *sh*, uses \mathfrak{z} or *gh* for the guttural continuant, and regularly writes *ij* for long *i* (e.g. *lijf*, 3. 1476; *sijke*, 3. 1170, 1172). The weak vowel of inflectional syllables alternates between *e* and *i*. A Southern form, *we beep*, is found in 3. 1095. Hand 3 regularly uses the Northern pronominal forms, *their*, *them*. In 4. 216 it writes *shulde* for *sholde* to detriment of the rime. Short accented *e* tends to become *i* (*wirke*, 4. 237; *silf*, 1. 537, 4. 245), and the weak inflectional vowel is usually *i*. It is very uncertain in its treatment of final *e*, regularly writing (as does also hand 4) *arte* for *art* and *frome* for *from*. Hand 4 is marked by confusion as to the value of the guttural continuant which it writes either *gh* or \mathfrak{z} . Instances of this confusion are *doughtles* for *douteles*, 4. 430; *troughth* for *trouthe*, 4. 445; *nouth* for *nought*, 4. 498; *Route* for *Roughthe*, 4. 431. The weak vowel is regularly *e*, but occasionally *i*.

H_2 is an important witness to α in the first three books, and after 4. 196 to β .

HARLEIAN 1239 (H_3).

British Museum, MS. Harleian 1239. A vellum MS., $15\frac{1}{2} \times 5\frac{3}{4}$ in., of 107 leaves, which contains, besides *Troilus*, selections

from the *Canterbury Tales*. The text of *Troilus* is written by three hands. Hand 1 has written from the beginning of the poem through 2. 1033; hand 2 has written 2. 1034–3. 1603, 3. 1758–end; hand 3 has written 3. 1604–1759. Lines 1758, 1759 of Book III are thus written by both hand 2 and hand 3. The selections from the *Canterbury Tales* are by a fourth hand.

Omissions, etc.

1. 379–630 missing, two leaves lost.
1. 890–896, stanza 128, omitted, no gap.
1. 904–973, ten stanzas, omitted, no gap.
2. 1663, 1664 transposed.
3. 266 omitted, space left blank.
3. 276 omitted, no gap.
3. 738 omitted, no gap.
3. 767, 768 transposed.
3. 953–959 omitted, no gap.
3. 1294, second half, and 1295, first half, omitted, no gap.
3. 1324–1337, stanzas 190, 191, in β position.
3. 1371, 1372 transposed.
3. 1387–1393 omitted, no gap.
3. 1542 omitted. In its place 1544, which is found again in its proper place.
3. 1664 omitted, no gap.
3. 1750 omitted, no gap.
3. 1758, 1759 repeated on next leaf, where new hand begins.
4. 82 omitted, no gap.
4. 179, 180 transposed.
4. 267–273, stanza 39, after 280. After 267, a spurious line,
As thou wyl woste from Ioye thus me depryue, made up
out of 268 and 269.
4. 359 omitted, no gap.
4. 383 omitted. In its place a corrupt repetition of 378.
4. 410, 411 in α order.
4. 563 omitted, no gap.
4. 621 written twice.
4. 750–756, stanza 108, in α position.
4. 953–1085, free-choice soliloquy, omitted, no gap.
4. 1147–1153 omitted, no gap.
4. 1204 omitted, no gap.

- 5. 225-231 omitted, no gap.
- 5. 382 after 379.
- 5. 556, 557 transposed.
- 5. 655, 656 omitted. In their place 662, 663, which are written again regularly.
- 5. 1071 omitted, no gap.
- 5. 1642 omitted, no gap.

The text presented by H_3 is both composite and "mixed." From the beginning of the poem through 2. 1033, the portion written by hand 1, H_3 is a β MS. of a type closely similar to Cx. H_3 Cx agree with γS_1 against JRH_4 in the series of striking variants beginning at 2. 701; H_3 Cx also share many minor variations. In this portion of H_3 , more particularly in Book II, there are, however, occasional indications of contamination with a γ MS. of the same type as A. From 2. 1034 to 3. 1095, H_3 is fundamentally a γ MS. of the same type as A; but in Book III it not infrequently deserts the γ reading, and shows occasional contamination with β . From 3. 1096 to 4. 299 it is again a β MS., with only slight traces of γ contamination. With line 300 of Book IV, H_3 becomes an α MS. and so continues to the end of the poem, though a β reading appears in 4. 322, and in the latter part of Book V there are again indications of contamination with γ . In its α portion, H_3 presents a text at a stage of revision not far removed from that found in Ph. H_3 Ph omit the free-choice soliloquy entire. Between lines 1301 and 1442 of Book IV, H_3 has a series of unique readings which seem to represent a stage more primitive even than that of Ph. At the end of Book V, however, it contains regularly the *Teseide* stanzas, derived apparently from its γ constituent.

Throughout, the text of H_3 is exceedingly corrupt, the commonest type of error being omission of short words. No one of the three scribes has any understanding of Chaucer's metre. Dialectal and orthographic characteristics vary with the several hands. Hand 1 usually ends the third indicative singular in *es*, and occasionally has *u* for long close *o*. In spite of these Northern traits, he is now and then doubtful about the guttural continuant, writing *hough* for *how* and *pou* for *pogh*. The definite article is usually written *tho* instead of *the*. The character \mathfrak{z} is used for initial *y*; \mathfrak{p} is used only rarely. *Sch* is written for *sh*. The

second hand is characterized by a very erratic treatment of the letter *h*; we find such spellings as *whe*, *whas*, *where*, *whoo* for *we*, *was*, *were*, *woo*, and on the contrary *were* for *where*. *Is* is written for *his*, and *hooke* for *ooke*. *Wyche* or *wych* is regularly written for *which*, though occasionally we find *qwych*. There is a tendency to substitute *i* for short *e*, e. g. *fryude* for *frende*, *shitte* for *shette*. These characteristics appear throughout the work of hand 2, but are commoner in the first half of the poem. The characters *ȝ* and *p* are not used. *Sch* is occasionally written for *sh*. The third hand, which writes only 155 lines, is much more careless than are the other two, and is very eccentric in spelling. Characteristic spellings are *stabull*, *discordubull*, *litull*, *anodur*. *Sch* is written for *sh*. *ȝ* and *p* are not used.

The chief value of H_3 lies in its testimony to an early stage of *a* in the fourth book. Its readings are also important in lines 701–1033 of Book II, where with Cx it supports γS_1 as against JRH_4 .

HARLEIAN 2392 (H_4).

British Museum, MS. Harleian 2392. A paper and vellum MS., $8\frac{1}{2} \times 5\frac{3}{4}$ in., of 145 + 2 leaves, which contains only *Troilus*. It is written in one hand of the middle of the fifteenth century, which has also supplied a large number of marginal notes in Latin.

Omissions, etc.

1. 222 corrupt: *and bridle & labour from euen til morn*.
1. 643, 644 transposed. 644 corrupt: *the coloures & knoulech who so riht demyth*.
2. 953–980, four stanzas, after 1008.
2. 1692 repeated after 1699 and deleted.
3. 1324–1337, stanzas 190, 191, in $\alpha\gamma$ position and again in β position.
3. 1770, 1771 transposed, proper order indicated.
4. 750–756, stanza 108, in $\beta\gamma$ position.
4. 953–1085, free-choice soliloquy, omitted, no gap.
5. 1498–1499, Latin argument of Statius, omitted, no gap.
5. 1807–1827, *Teseide* passage, omitted, no gap.

H_4 presents a composite text, the genesis of which cannot with certainty be determined. In Book I it is very definitely *a*. It

contains stanza 128 omitted by all other MSS. save H_2Ph , and shares with H_2Ph in a very large number of α readings. In trivial variations, however, it shows relationships, possibly accidental, with β , particularly with R. In Book II it is a mixture of α and β , with the α element decreasing in importance as the book proceeds. Between 701 and 1113 it shares with JR in a number of striking variants, the character of which is discussed on pp. 126–128. In Book III it becomes distinctively a β MS. and so continues to the end, sharing in virtually all the β readings of Book III and consistently avoiding the many α readings of Book IV. Its “mixed” character, however, does not end with Book II. H_4 contains stanzas 190, 191 of Book III twice over, once in the α position with α readings, and again in the β position with β readings. It contains Troilus’s hymn to love, 3. 1744–1771, which is omitted by H_2Ph . It omits the free-choice soliloquy in Book IV, an α characteristic not shared by the closely related H_2^4 . With H_2 it omits the *Teseide* passage in Book V; and with R omits the Latin argument of Statius. For discussion of these peculiarities see pp. 157, 219–221, 244, 247, below.

Throughout, H_4 is closely related to the portions of H_2 written by hands 3 and 4; and the common parent, H_2H_4 , stands somewhat nearer to R than to the remaining β MSS. There are a considerable number of agreements in trivial variations, possibly due to accident, with Cx and with the β element of H_3 .

The text has no marked dialectal peculiarities. The weak vowel of inflectional syllables appears interchangeably as *e*, *i*, or *y*. The guttural continuant is regularly written *h*, rarely *gh*. Long close *e* is occasionally written *ie*.

Though marred by many corruptions in phrase and in metre, H_4 is purer than H_2 or R. It is of the utmost importance as a witness to α in Book I; and, after J ceases to be a β MS. in Book IV, H_4 becomes our best witness to β .

HARLEIAN 4912 (H_5).

British Museum, MS. Harleian 4912. A vellum MS., $11\frac{1}{2} \times 7\frac{5}{8}$ in., of 76 + 1 leaves, which contains only an incomplete copy of *Troilus* ending with 4. 686. It is written in one hand of the fifteenth century, with many corrections by the same or by a contemporary hand.

Omissions, etc.

1. 890–896, stanza 128, omitted, no gap.
1. 953–1029, eleven stanzas, omitted, no gap.
2. 743–749 omitted, no gap.
3. 379–385 omitted, no gap.
3. 620 omitted. After 618 a spurious line: *And ledyn vs alle bothe low and hye* is written in its place, and the order then indicated as 618, 619, spurious line, 621. Lines 617, 618 read:

But a fortune thorow gret goddis
O influence of thin heuenys onelye

3. 663, 664 transposed, correct order indicated in margin.
3. 1054 after 1056, order corrected in margin.
3. 1324–1337, stanzas 190, 191, in $\alpha\gamma$ position.
3. 1338–1344, stanza 192, omitted, no gap.
3. 1525 over erasure.
4. 39, 40 in γ order.
4. 314, 315 after 308.
4. 410, 411 in α order.
4. 441 omitted. In its place 448 written and deleted. Line 448 again in proper place.
4. 687—end of poem missing; but part of 687 is written as a catchword at the foot of page.

H_5 is throughout closely related to Gg, and its type of text is that already described in the account of Gg. It shares many of the corruptions of Gg and has also many others of its own—transposition of words and phrases, omission of unimportant words, etc.

Like Gg, H_5 does not understand the value of the guttural continuant, which it writes *gh*. We find such spellings as *spiritgh*, *desspitgh*, *whighth* for *white*; *thowe* for *though*, *owgth* for *ought*, *row* for *rough*. *Ho* is frequently written for *who*. The vowel of inflectional syllables is *i* or *y*. The character \mathfrak{z} is not used; and *p* is used only in pronominal and adverbial forms. A Northern form *beris* is found in l. 946.

H_5 is of use chiefly for supplying deficiencies and checking errors in Gg.

ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, L. 1 (J).

St. John's College, Cambridge, MS. L. 1. A vellum MS., $10 \times 6\frac{3}{4}$ in. of 121 leaves (+ 8 leaves added later at end), which

contains *Troilus*, and in a sixteenth-century hand at the end of the volume Henryson's *Testament of Criseide*. *Troilus* is written in one hand of the fifteenth century, which has also supplied a few marginal notes in Latin. Throughout the volume a seventeenth-century hand has written in corrections, taken apparently from Speght's edition of 1602.

Omissions, etc.

1. 890–896, stanza 128, omitted, no gap.
2. 536, 1307, 1308 by scribe over erasure.
3. 53, 54 transposed.
3. 1324–1337, stanzas 190, 191, in β position.
4. 750–756, stanza 108, in α position.

Though written in a single hand, and homogeneous throughout in orthography, the text of J falls into two sharply defined parts. From the beginning of the poem through line 430 of Book IV, J is consistently a β MS. Between 430 and 438 it becomes an α MS. and so continues to the end. In its β portion, the text of J shows certain affinities with R. Between lines 701 and 1113 of Book II, JRH₄ present a series of striking variants which are discussed below, pp. 126–128. A connection also exists between J and the β constituent in the “mixed” text of GgH₅, which is most clearly marked after line 1210 of Book II.

In its α portion J presents the text in the same state of revision as Gg (here consistently an α MS.). This is most strikingly shown in its treatment of the free-choice soliloquy (see pp. 216–221). J and Gg, however, are independently derived from the α original.

In both portions, the text of J is remarkably free from gross blunders. It has no marked dialectal peculiarities, and in orthography is strikingly similar to Cp. The weak vowel of inflectional syllables is normally *e*, but *i* is occasionally found. The character *ȝ* is used only very rarely, and then for initial *y*; *þ* is used in the abbreviation of *pat* and very rarely in writing the definite article. The first person pronoun is regularly *ich* before a vowel, and the adverbial suffix *-ly* becomes *-lich* before a vowel.

Because of its freedom from corruptions, its consistent orthography, and its fair approximation to Chaucer's metre, J is an authority of very great importance—as a witness to β in Books I–III, and to α in the last two books.

PHILLIPPS 8250 (Ph).

MS. Phillipps 8250, the property of T. Fitzroy Fenwick, Esq., Cheltenham. A paper and vellum MS., $8\frac{3}{4} \times 5\frac{7}{8}$ in., of 325 leaves, which contains besides *Troilus* a miscellaneous collection of pieces in prose and verse. It is written throughout in one hand of the early fifteenth century.

Omissions, etc.

1. 820-822 omitted, 813-815 repeated in place of them.
2. 26 by scribe in margin.
2. 29-42, two stanzas, after 49.
2. 250, 509, 537 by scribe in margin.
2. 1083 by scribe in space left blank.
3. 116, 117 transposed.
3. 292 by scribe in space left blank.
3. 1251 omitted.
3. 1324-1337, stanzas 190, 191, in $\alpha\gamma$ position.
3. 1375 by scribe in space left blank.
3. 1744-1771, *Troilus's* hymn to love, by scribe on inset leaf.
4. 410, 411 in α order.
4. 750-756, stanza 108, in α position.
4. 790 by scribe in space left blank.
4. 953-1085, soliloquy on free choice, by scribe on inset leaves.
5. 1070, 1071 read :

And þat to late is me now to repente
To this y wil be trewe in myn entente

5. 1377 by scribe in space left blank.
5. 1807-1827, *Teseide* passage, by scribe on inset leaf.

Ph is throughout an α MS. except for the passages added later, on inset leaves, in the margin, etc., which are from a γ MS., akin to H_1 . The scribe copied an α MS. and then, after his copy was completed, supplied its deficiencies from a γ MS. Though he repaired the omissions of his original, he did not correct its many scribal blunders. The text of Ph is corrupt in its readings and sadly "mis-metred" by an almost complete ignorance of the syllabic value of final *e*, and by many transpositions of words and phrases.

The hand which has written Ph is identical with the first hand of H_2 . The text of Ph is very closely related to the portions of H_2 written by hand 1 and hand 2, with which it shares a great

number of corrupt readings. Despite these corruptions, the testimony of H₂Ph is of very high value in determining the text of *a*, particularly in the first three books.

Ph has no marked dialectal traits. In orthography it is virtually identical with the first hand of H₂. The weak vowel of inflectional syllables is nearly always *i* or *y*. The guttural continuant is written *gh*. The character *ȝ* is used for initial *y*, and *p* is used interchangeably with *th*.

RAWLINSON POET. 163 (R).

Bodleian, MS. Rawlinson Poet. 163. A paper MS., 11½ × 8¼ in., of 115 leaves, which contains, besides *Troilus*, the unique copy of Chaucer's *Rosamund*. It is written in four hands, all of the fifteenth century. Hand 1 writes 1. 1-700; 2. 118-433, 1044-1113; 3. 1373-end of poem. Hand 2 writes 1. 701-2. 117; 3. 306-912. Hand 3 writes 2. 434-1043; 2. 1114-3. 305. Hand 4 writes 3. 913-1372. Each scribe has written marginal notes in English and in Latin. The volume seems to be the work of a group of associated copyists.

Omissions, etc.

1. 281-350 missing, leaf torn out.
1. 890-896, stanza 128, omitted, no gap.
2. 1-49, proem, omitted, no gap.
2. 169-178 (in part), 179-201 (wholly), 209-216 (in part),
217-248 (wholly), missing, leaf torn.
2. 1069 omitted, no gap.
2. 1446 by scribe in margin.
2. 1750-1751. Between 1750 and 1751 we read :

Compleined ek heleyne of his siknes	} Vacat
And feithfully / that pitee was to heere	

For ye must outhur / chaungen your face
 That is so ful of mercy and bountee
 Or elles must ye do this man sum grace
 For this thyng folweth of necessitye
 As sothe as god ys in his magestee
 That crueltee / with so benigne a chier
 Ne may not last / in o persone yfere

The first two lines are 1576, 1577 repeated. The word *vacat* is in a contemporary hand, possibly that of the scribe. The complete stanza is found in no other known MS. of *Troilus*.

3. 1-49, proem, omitted, no gap.
3. 1212-1246, five stanzas, after 1099 and again in proper place with somewhat different readings.
3. 1324-1337, stanzas 190, 191, in β position.
3. 1406 omitted, no gap.
4. 1-28, proem, omitted, no gap.
4. 52, 53 transposed, correct order indicated.
4. 750-756, stanza 108, in $\beta\gamma$ position.
5. 402, 403 after 394, but deleted and repeated in proper place.
5. 419 omitted, no gap.
5. 421-560, twenty stanzas, missing, two leaves lost.
5. 656 by scribe in margin.
5. 843-910, missing, leaf torn out.
5. 1498-1499, Latin argument of Statius, omitted, no gap.

R is throughout the poem consistently a β MS. of the same type as the β portions of J and H_4 , with which it shares a series of distinctive readings between lines 701 and 1113 of Book II. In minor variations it shows agreements now with this MS., now with that, particularly with J, with H_4 , and with Cx. In no case, however, is the evidence strong enough to justify the hypothesis of close relationship, especially in view of R's unique characteristics—the omission of proems and the presence of the additional stanza—which point to an independent line of descent. These peculiarities of R must be considered in detail.

For the omission of the proems to Books II, III, and IV no certain explanation can be given. At first glance one might suggest that R was derived from Chaucer's original at a time when these proems were not yet written; but such a supposition flies in the face of all the evidence. R is consistently a β MS., and as such must derive from the original in its latest, fully revised stage. It contains the free-choice soliloquy, the *Teseide* passage, and the Boethian hymn to love, the first two of which, and probably the third also, were not present in Chaucer's earliest draft. On the other hand, the proems are regularly found in all the α MSS. Nor can one see any reason for believing that the omission of the proems was due to the deliberate choice of the

scribe in order to avoid interruption of the story. Only in the case of Proem III can the interruption be regarded as in any way inartistic. A possible explanation might be that in the common original of all the MSS. these proems were written on inserted loose leaves, and that these leaves were lost before the time when R was derived.

No less interesting is the problem offered by the unique stanza found between lines 1750 and 1751 of Book II, printed in the list of omissions, etc., above. There is no reason to doubt the genuineness of this stanza. In grammar and in rime it accords with Chaucer's known usage. The first line, indeed, is metrically deficient in the fourth foot; but this may easily be due to scribal omission of a monosyllable, perhaps *now*, after *chaungen*. The manner of the lines is distinctly Chaucerian; and their substance is entirely appropriate, as spoken by Pandarus to Criseyde.

The proper place for the stanza is not at all easy to determine. As it stands in the MS., it concludes a speech of Pandarus to Criseyde spoken as he is leading her to the side of Troilus's sick-bed in the house of Deiphebus. The three stanzas which constitute this speech, apart from the added stanza, begin with an appeal to Criseyde to remember in what exalted company she is, and how sad is the plight of Troilus. She is solemnly conjured not to slay him (stanza 248). She must not waste time, and particularly such a favourable opportunity, "while folk is blent" (stanza 249). If a lady is too coy, she will attract attention, and the gossip thus aroused will spoil all. Therefore come along and bring him to health (stanza 250). Then follows in R the unique stanza, which insists on the incompatibility of cruelty with the kindness of Criseyde's face. In stanza 251 Chaucer addresses "loueres that ben here." It is plainly out of keeping where it stands. It could, however, with some appropriateness come between stanzas 248 and 249. Its thought resembles a good deal that of three stanzas (lines 330-350) near the beginning of Book II; and the stanza could suitably enough come after stanza 49 (line 343).

But what of the two lines, *Compleined ek heleyne*, etc., which in R precede the unique stanza? They are lines 1576, 1577, the first two lines of stanza 226, and have no conceivable connection with their new context; nor could the unique stanza possibly belong in the immediate neighbourhood of stanza 226. The word *vacat* written opposite these lines in the margin (whether by the

scribe or by some one else I cannot with certainty decide) is not intended, I think, to cancel the lines,¹ but rather to call attention to the fact that the remaining lines of the stanza are missing. *Vacat* is apparently equivalent to *caret*.

The most plausible explanation I can suggest to fit all the circumstances is this: Chaucer wrote the stanza with the intention of inserting it at some place in Book II, perhaps after stanza 248. He used a discarded piece of paper or parchment, at the top of which had already been written the first two lines of stanza 226. These lines he did not take the trouble to erase, nor did he indicate clearly the precise position of the new stanza. The copyist found this added slip between the leaves of his exemplar, and incorporated it bodily at the place where it appears in R. Some one, troubled by the two floating lines, wrote *vacat* opposite them. That the stanza was an afterthought gains some slight corroboration from the fact that it corresponds to nothing in Boccaccio.

These striking peculiarities of R, the omission of the proems and the added stanza, indicate very clearly that R has descended from the common original along an independent line of descent, and that the readings which it shares with other MSS., notably J, H₄, and Cx, were already present in the common original. Had there been anything like consistent editing or contamination, R would certainly have added the missing proems. If the suggestions I have offered towards an explanation of the peculiarities be given any weight, they would indicate that R was derived latest of all surviving MSS.

That R stands at the end of a somewhat long line of descent is suggested by its many corrupt readings. The commonest form of corruption is the omission or insertion of a small word to the utter confusion of metre. The corruptions are present about equally in the work of each of the four scribes. None of the scribes shows any marked dialectal peculiarities beyond a tendency shared by them all to write *aght* and *naght* for *oght* and *noght*. Nor does the orthography vary significantly. The characters þ and ȝ are not used. The second and third hands occasionally write *sch* for *sh*. The weak vowel in inflectional syllables is either *e* or *y* (*i*).

It is most unfortunate that the text of R is so full of minor corruptions, since it is the only MS. which presents a *β* text from

¹ It was so interpreted by Professor McCormick, who first discovered the unique stanza: *Furnivall Miscellany*, p. 297.

beginning to end. It is in any event an important witness to the text of β .

SELDEN B 24 (S_1).

Bodleian, MS. Selden B 24. A paper MS., $10\frac{1}{4} \times 6\frac{5}{8}$ in., of 231 leaves, containing, besides *Troilus*, a miscellaneous collection of English and Scottish verse of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. Among the twenty-one pieces which make up its contents is the unique copy of the *Kingis Quair*. The first 209 leaves, including the whole of *Troilus*, are by one scribe, probably a Scotchman named James Graye. The MS. was executed not earlier than 1489.

Omissions, etc.

1. 890-896, stanza 128, omitted, no gap.
2. 1175, 1176 transposed, correct order indicated in margin.
3. 1324-1337, stanzas 190, 191, in β position.
4. 39, 40 in γ order.
4. 750-756, stanza 108, in $\beta\gamma$ position.
5. 1857-1862 partly lost by tear at bottom of fol. 118.

S_1 presents a mixed or collated text, based on a γ MS. akin to AD and a β MS, which is of the same general type as Cx and the β portions of H_3 . In Book I and up to line 617 of Book II it shares virtually all the γ readings, and shows only slight traces of β influence. In the remainder of Book II it shares only occasionally in distinctive γ readings; but between 701 and 1113, where JRH_4 separate from the other β MSS., S_1 agrees with $\gamma H_3 Cx$. In Book III it shares in some fifteen γ readings and in over sixty β readings, with stanzas 190, 191 in the β position. In Book IV it shares in twenty-four γ readings, but has stanza 106, which γ omits. In Book V it shares in twenty-four out of thirty-five γ readings, but has lines 60, 61 in the $\alpha\beta$ order. It would seem that the method of its scribe-editor was to take a β MS. and "correct" it to γ readings, thoroughly at the beginning, and thereafter only spasmodically.

Though the text of S_1 has superficially a Scottish cast from the consistent writing of *quh-* for *wh-*, and *su-* for *sw-*, its only other Northern traits are the use of *thair* and *thame* in the plural third person pronoun and the spelling *maid* for *made*. It uses the character ȝ only as initial *y*, and þ only in the abbreviation of *pat*.

The text is remarkably free from gross blunders; and the scribe evidently had a fairly good ear for Chaucer's metre. Despite its very considerable virtues, its "mixed" and "edited" character greatly diminishes the value of its testimony. Its witness to γ is usually superfluous. As an authority for β , it can be used only with great caution.

SELDEN, SUPRA 56 (S_2).

Bodleian, MS. Selden, Supra 56. A paper MS., $8\frac{3}{4} \times 5\frac{5}{8}$ in., of $106 + 1$ leaves, which contains only *Troilus*. It is neatly written in one hand. The colophon gives the date of its transcription as 1441.

Omissions, etc.

1. 890-896, stanza 128, omitted, no gap.
1. 955, 956 omitted, no gap.
3. 1324-1337, stanzas 190, 191, in $\alpha\gamma$ position.
4. 39, 40 in γ order.
4. 46 after 43 and again in proper place.
4. 708-714, stanza 102, omitted, no gap.
4. 750-756, stanza 108, in $\beta\gamma$ position.
5. 60, 61 in γ order.
5. 694, second half, and 695, first half, omitted by telescoping.

S_2 is throughout a γ MS., closely related to the fragmentary Dig. Though singularly free from omissions and transpositions except those characteristic of the γ group, S_2 is in its readings very corrupt. A large part of these corruptions, since shared by Dig, are due to the S_2 Dig parent. Dialectally S_2 is strongly marked by Northern forms. The third sing. pres. indic. regularly ends in *-es* or *-is*, long close *o* is usually represented by *u*, and *pame* regularly takes the place of *hem*. *Haffe* or *hafe* is regularly written for *haue*. In 3. 282 we find *beseke* for *beseche*. Long open *o*, however, is written *o*. The character \mathfrak{z} is used for initial *y*, and interchangeably with *gh* for the guttural continuant. The character *p* is used in pronominal forms. The MS. has a sadly "mismetred" text.

S_2 , or S_2 Dig, is occasionally of use in determining a γ reading where the remaining evidence is confused. But with the generous attestation of γ , the evidence of S_2 is seldom necessary.

THYNNE'S EDITION OF 1532 (TH).

In Thynne's folio of 1532, the first collected edition of Chaucer's works, *Troilus* fills fols. 170-218, and part of fol. 219a. Judged by sixteenth-century standards, and even by those of a later date, Thynne's text of the poem merits high praise. It is very free from careless blunders; and in a great majority of the lines Chaucer's metre is perfectly preserved. It marks a great advance over the text of Caxton and the reprints by Wynkyn de Worde and Pynson. The modern critic, however, can use Thynne's text only with great caution. It is a "mixed" or "contaminated" text, based on a collation of several authorities, and incorporates not infrequently readings which seem to be editorial emendations.

Thynne's authorities were at least three: (1) Caxton's edition; (2) a γ MS. closely akin to CpH_1S_2 ; (3) a MS. which was of the α type at least in Books I and II.

His use of these authorities is not the same throughout the poem. In Book I, where the main line of cleavage is between α on the one hand and $\beta\gamma$ on the other, he found Cx and his γ MS. in virtual agreement. He gave, particularly in the early part of the book, precedence to Cx. In the first 202 lines my collations show 24 instances in which Th has a reading otherwise peculiar to Cx. Of these instances the most striking is the transposition of lines 111 and 112. In 47 ThCx read *selfe* for *soule*; in 86 *openly* for *generally* with H_3R ; in 95 *And* for *For*; in 96 *And wyst neuer* for *As she pat nyst*; in 101 *Most fayrest lady* where α reads *So fair was none*, and $\beta\gamma$ *Nas noon so faire*; in 104,5, *And therwith was she so parfyte a creature As she had be made in scornynge of nature*. Other cases of agreement are found in 56, 76, 86, 88, 91, 98, 106, 108, 110, 162, 163, 165-168, 198, 202, 238, 324, 563, 634, 648, 747, 764. In Book I, Th shares very few of the distinctive γ readings. The only instances are 143, 539, 720, 880, 960. It contains, however, a considerable number of α readings. Most important is the fact that Th contains the genuine, though perhaps cancelled, stanza 128 otherwise found only in H_2PhH_4 . Other α readings are found in lines 78, 82, 85, 176 (a conflation of α and β), 195, 259, 274, 276, 393, 540, 640, 755 (conflation), 773, 796, 1029. These readings are recorded in the list of α readings in Book I, pp. 35-53. They are derived neither from H_2Ph nor H_4 , but from a lost MS. of the same type.

In Book II the proportion of distinctive γ readings is much greater. Such readings are found in lines 87, 110(+ α), 176, 221, 283, 403(+ JR), 406, 745, 768(+ JGgH₅), 937, 950, 956, 960, 1093, 1113, 1143, 1152(+ J), 1156, 1202, 1291, 1316, 1439, 1585(+ H₄), 1590, 1602, 1746, that is to say in about half of the instances. Th has readings characteristic of γ H₃Cx in 703, 825, 897, 908, 923, 1018, 1083–1085, 1095–1097. Characteristic Cx readings are much less frequent than in Book I. Instances, none of them very striking, are found in lines 2(+ H₄), 41, 86, 97, 130(+ H₃A), 512, 1118, 1164(+ A). In the first eight hundred lines are found a few α readings: lines 46, 603, 646, 675, 679, 734–735, 738, and with α JRH₄ against γ H₃Cx in 701 and 792. In 736 Th reads: *I thynke eke howe he worthy is to haue*, a conflation of $\alpha\gamma$ H₃Cx and JRH₄. In 1426 Th reads *No more of this to speke*, an hypermetrical conflation of the γ reading, *No more to speke*, and that of the remaining MSS., *No moore of this*.

In Books III–V the text of Th is to all intents and purposes consistently of the γ type. It contains all the distinctive γ readings save in a half-dozen cases, all in Book III, where a simple error is corrected. Th avoids, however, the confusion of γ as to the point where Book IV begins (see pp. 182, 183), and contains stanza 102 of Book IV omitted by γ . This stanza has apparently been derived from a source akin to H₂H₄. The γ MS. used by Thynne is of the type represented by CpH₁S₂, nearest perhaps to S₂, with which it shares distinctive readings in a number of lines, *e.g.* 4. 128, 4. 362, 4. 474. Throughout these three books continue occasional instances of agreement with Cx, always in trivial variations. Th consistently avoids the distinctive β readings, regularly given by Cx, which are so numerous in Book III. The only exception, probably accidental, is in 3. 1466, where the variation is a simple transposition in order. In 4. 156 Th reads *Abode what other lordes wolde to it sey*, an hypermetrical conflation of β and $\alpha\gamma$. There are no instances in the last three books where Th has adopted an α reading.

That Th is an edited text the evidence, as summarized above, makes abundantly clear; though, as he progressed through the poem, the editor has more and more accepted the authority of his γ MS. Since we possess such generous MS attestation for the readings of γ , the modern critic will have little occasion to consult Th save for its α readings in Books I and II, and then only when

the *a* MSS. are at variance. Even in these cases Th must be used cautiously. Though its *a* readings seem to be of independent derivation, there is always the suspicion that what we read may be due to editorial emendation.

In the following chapters I have adduced the Th reading only now and then, when it seems to have peculiar significance.

FRAGMENTS.

Three brief fragments of *Troilus* must be mentioned. Three stanzas, 3. 302-322, incorporated into a short poem in the rime royal, of which they constitute stanzas 4-6, are found in Cambridge University Library, MS. Ff. 1. 6, fols. 150b, 151a. One stanza, 1. 631-637, with the title "Pandare to Troylus," is found in Trinity College Cambridge, MS. R. 3. 20, fol. 361a. The MS. is written by Shirley. Two strips of vellum, found in a book-binding, which contain longitudinal sections from 5. 1443-1498, are described in the Appendix to the Report of the Cambridge Antiquarian Society, Vol. VI (1887), pp. 331-335. There are no variant readings in these passages which enable one to determine the genealogical affiliations of these fragments; but the last does *not* share a *γ* reading in 5. 1449. None of these fragments is of any value to the textual critic.

By way of making clearer certain matters already stated in this introductory chapter, I shall conclude by giving two tables, of which the first presents the varying complexion of the MSS. of "composite" character, and the second the changes of handwriting which occur in certain MSS.

MSS. OF COMPOSITE CHARACTER.

	H ₂	H ₄	G ₂	J	H ₃	S ₁
I.	α	$\alpha(\beta)$	β	β	β	$\gamma(\beta)$
II.	α	α 65	β 63	β	$\beta(\gamma)$ 1033	$\gamma(\beta)$ 617
		$\beta(\alpha)$	$\alpha(\beta)$ 1210		γ	$\beta(\gamma)$
			β			
III.	α	β	β 398	β	$\gamma(\beta)$ 1095	$\beta(\gamma)$
			α		$\beta(\gamma)$	
IV.	α 196			β 430 438	β 299	$\beta(\gamma)$
	β	β	α	α	α	
V.	β	β	α	α	$\alpha(\gamma)$	$\beta(\gamma)$

MSS. IN MORE THAN ONE HAND.

	H ₂	A	R	H ₃
I.	H ₂ ³ 1-70 H ₂ ¹ 71-497 H ₂ ³ 498-567 H ₂ ¹ 568-	A ¹	R ¹ 1-700 R ² 701-	H ₃ ¹
II.	H ₂ ¹	A ¹	R ² 1-117 R ¹ 118-433 R ³ 424-1043 R ¹ 1044-1113 R ³ 1114-	H ₃ ¹ 1033 1034 H ₃ ²
III.	H ₂ ¹ 1-1078 H ₂ ² 1079-1638 H ₂ ¹ 1639-	A ¹ 1708 1709 A ²	R ³ 1-305 R ² 306-912 R ⁴ 913-1372 R ¹ 1373-	H ₃ ² 1-1603 H ₃ ³ 1604-1759 (<i>sic</i>) H ₃ ² 1758 (<i>sic</i>)-
IV.	H ₂ ¹ 1-196 H ₂ ³ 197-406 H ₂ ⁴ 407-	A ²	R ¹	H ₃ ²
V.	H ₂ ⁴	A ²	1. ¹	H ₃ ²

CHAPTER II.

THE MANUSCRIPT RELATIONS IN BOOK I.

By far the most striking series of variant readings in Book I is that in which H₂PhH₄ agree as against the combined testimony of all the other MSS. The readings peculiar to this group are in several cases manifestly corrupt; but in a much larger number of cases they offer variants perfectly acceptable in themselves, and so divergent as to point unmistakably to an hypothesis of deliberate revision. Moreover, a comparison with Chaucer's Italian source, *Filostrato*, shows that the readings of H₂PhH₄ are closer to the Italian, and hence presumably more original.

Most important is the fact that these three MSS. contain a stanza, number 128 in the modern editions (ll. 890–896), which is found in no other MS. It is included by Thynne, but omitted by Caxton. Pandarus has just learned that the lady for whose love Troilus is languishing is no other than his own niece Criseyde. He bids him be of good cheer, for his lady is both “gentle” and fair (stanza 126). She is bounteous of her estate and glad, friendly of speech, gracious in well doing, perfect in her *savoir faire*, and more than royal in the honour of her heart (stanza 127). Then follows in H₂PhH₄ the following stanza :

[128]

And for þi loke of good comfort þow be ;	H ₄ that thou be.
For certainly the firste poynt is this	H ₂ ferst ; Ph first.
Of noble corage and wele ordeyne,	H ₄ thou ordeyne the.
A man to have pees wip hym self y wis ;	H ₄ om. A man ; thi seluen.
So oghtist thou for noght but good it is	H ₂ Ph om. noght but.
To love wele, and in a worthy place ;	H ₂ Ph om. a.
The oght[e] not to clepe hit hap but grace.	

Stanza 129 begins :

And also thenk, and þerwip glade the,
That seth þi lady vertuous is al,
So folowith hit þat þer is some pite.

Troilus is therefore to guard her good name, and at the same time to hope for her favour.

There is nothing in grammar, metre, or style to cast the slightest doubt on the genuineness of stanza 128. It has the unmistakable ring of Chaucer's manner. Moreover, the first words of stanza 129, “And also thenk, and þerwip glade the,” though not inappropriate without 128, gain in effect from the balance furnished by the first line of 128. On the other hand, stanza 128 cannot altogether escape the charge of digression. Both before and after, Pandarus is speaking primarily of Criseyde, and is basing his hope for Troilus on the qualities of his niece's character. Stanza 128 turns from Criseyde to moralize on the “first point” of a noble and well-ordered heart in the lover rather than in his mistress. If we cannot doubt the genuineness of the stanza, we equally cannot but recognize that its absence leaves no appreciable gap, but rather serves to unify the passage. It will be shown presently that there is good reason to believe

H₂PhH₄ represent a first edition of the poem, and that the remaining MSS. give us the text in a revised form. If so, the excision of the stanza may be due to deliberate revision. This possibility is at least strong enough to make us cautious about arguing for a close relationship of the remaining MSS. on the basis of their omission of the stanza.

We must now consider in detail the long series of variant readings which mark the agreement of H₂PhH₄, and characterize in Book I the type of text to which has been given the designation *a*.

H₂PhH₄ (*a*).

2. That was kyng Pryamys sonne of Troye (+ H₅)

Rest: That was þe kyng. . . .

(Cx *om.* That was þe ; Gg *lacking*)

A nine-syllable line.

- *9. Thou cruel wighte that sorowist euer yn peyne

Rest: Thow cruel furie sorwyng euere yn peyne

(R *om.* euere)

Furie is a more specific word, and prevents a repetition in line 13, where all MSS. read *wight*.

- *12, 13. For wel it sitt . . .

Vnto a wofull wighte a drery fere

(H₂³ chere *for* fere)

Rest: A woful wight to han a drery feere

(A *om.* *second a*)

The form of line 14, *And to a sorowful tale a sorry cheere*, suggests that the *a* reading is more original.

17. Pray for spede though that I shulde sterue

(H₂³ *om.* that)

Rest: . . . al sholde I perfor sterue

- *19. But natheles myght I do yit gladnesse

(H₄ yit myhte I do)

Rest: . . . if þis may don gladnesse

- *24-28. Remembre you for olde passid heuynesse

For goddis love and on aduersitee

That other suffren thynke how somtyme pat ye

Fownde how love durst you displese

Or ellis ye wonne hym with to grete ease

(24: Ph of *for* for; H₄ on old heuynesse; 25: H₄ in *for* on
 26: H₄ *om.* pat; 27: Ph Foundyn; H₄ *middle of line illegible*;
 28: H₂³ it *for* hym; *om.* to)

Rest:

Remembre yow on passed heuynesse
 That ye han felt and on þe aduersite
 Of other folk and þenketh how pat ye
 Han felt pat loue dorst yow displese
 Or ye han wonne hym with to gret an ese

(24: H₅ of *for* on; Cx in *for* on; 25: H₃ of *for* on; Cx in
for on; 26: Cl fok *for* folk; 27: R Han felt how pat loue; Cx
 how *for* pat; 28: H₅ Or ellis 3e haue, an *inserted above by later
 hand*; RCx *om.* an; Gg *lacking for entire passage*)

Throughout this passage the variation between *a* and the remaining MSS. is so considerable as to point clearly towards conscious revision. We can, moreover, trace some of the steps of this revision. Line 24 in *a* is hypermetrical. In the original of *a*, *olde* had apparently been revised to read *passid*; but in H₂³ and Ph both adjectives are retained. The H₄ scribe has omitted *passid*. In line 26, also, H₄ has improved a hypermetrical line by omitting *pat*. R and Cx have retained the earlier *how* in line 27, and have omitted in 28 the added *an*. Still more striking is the conflate reading of H₅ in line 28. In the original of H₅ the line had been revised by deleting *ellis* and inserting *haue*; but H₅ fails to notice the deletion of *ellis*. Like R and Cx it fails to reproduce the inserted *an*.

*33. He yeve me myghte . . .

Rest: That I haue myght . . .

34. Some peyn or woo suche as his folke endure
 (H₂³ *lovis for* his; H₄ *om.* his; Ph & *for* or)

Rest: Swych peyne and wo as loues folk endure
 (Cx *servantis for* folk)

The reading of H₂³ seems to be a conflation; but the evidence is confused by the fact that H₄ omits *his* (or *lovis*). H₂³ forsakes the *a* reading entirely in lines 57, 58. The *a* reading, as found in Ph, is perfectly satisfactory; but the reading of the remaining MSS. is more definite and artistically preferable.

- *36. Praith for them that eke ben dispeired
 (H_4 eek that ; Ph disespeyred)
Rest : And byddeth ek for hem pat ben despeyred
 (H_3 *om.* ek for ; ClCpJ desespeyred)

The agreement of H_2^3 and Ph compels us to accept *that eke* as the reading of the α original, which H_4 has correctly emended. With the longer form *disespeyred* found in Ph, the α line is metrically satisfactory. Note that this longer form of the word is also found in ClCpJ to the detriment of the metre. Compare lines 29 and 43.

- *43, 44. And biddith eke for them pat ben at ese
 In love that god them graunte perseueraunce
Rest : That god hem graunte ay goode perseueraunce
 (Cx graunt hem ; A *om.* ay)
 *45. And sende them myght their loves so to plesse
 (+ ClH₁ADS₁) (ClH₁S₁ for to plesse)
Rest : And sende hem myght hir ladys so to plesse
 (H_5 (Gg)Cx for to please ; R *om.* so)

The change from *loves* to *ladys* was apparently to avoid repetition with *loue*, the revised reading in 46. For a discussion of the γ reading in this line, see below, p. 69.

46. That it to hem be worshipp and plesaunce
 ($H_2^3H_4$ That it be to them)
Rest : That it to loue . . .
 (D *om.* it ; Cx is *for* it)
 52. Now herkeneth ech with goode entencion
 (H_2^3 Nowlistenytheuery wight with ; Ph everych *for* ech)
Rest : Now herkeneth with a goode entencioun
 (Cx *om.* a)

The α reading seems to be corrupt. *Ech* or *everych* would demand the singular *herken*, but all the other imperatives in this passage are in the plural. *Herken ech* could easily give rise to *herkeneth* ; or perhaps *ech* developed by dittography from the last syllable of *herkeneth*.

54. In whiche ye shall the double sorowe here (+ Cx)
Rest : . . . ye may . . .

57, 58. H₄Ph Knowe thyng is how that the grekes stronge
 With armys in a thousand shippys went
 (Ph Knowyn)

Rest : Yt is wel wist . . .

In armes with . . .

H₂³ abandons the *a* reading. The Italian *Nell' armi forti*, *Fil.* 1. 7, suggests that *In armes* is the original reading. If so, *With armys* must be an error of the *a* scribe ; but the difference is too trifling to constitute clear evidence.

†61. And in dyuerse wise and in on Intent (+ R + Cp)
 (H₄ way *for* wise, assent *for* Intent ; Cp *om.* first And)

Rest : omit second in

A hypermetrical line, presumably due to scribal error. Cp has apparently introduced *in* independently to compensate for the loss of *And*. The agreement of R may be fortuitous ; but cf. 27, 28, where R retains *a* readings.

63. . . . thay diden all their peyn (+ H₅)
 (H₂³ *om.* all ; Gg *lacking*)

Rest : . . . wroughten . . .

(With line 71 hand 1 of H₂ begins, and continues through 497.)

78. Wherfor to departe al softly (+ Th)
 (H₄ Wherefore ; Th *om.* al)

Rest : For which for to departen softly

(GgD *om.* second for ; Cx he thought *for second* for ;
 H₃ shortly *for* softly)

If we accept the trisyllabic *Wherefore* of H₄ (cf. Kittredge, § 88) the reading of *a* is metrically normal. The Italian *Per che . . . dipartirsi*, *Fil.* 1. 9, may equally well give us *Wherfor* or *For which*.

82. Dede hym bothe worship and servise (+ Th)
 (H₂Ph *om.* bothe)

Rest : Hym deden bothe . . .

*83. Hopyng in hym kunnyng hem to rede

Rest : In trust pat he hath . . .

(H₅ hadde ; Cx had)

The α reading is closer to the Italian, *Da lui sperando sommo e buon consiglio*, *Fil.* 1. 9. *Hopyng in hym* is a rather bald translation. The reading of the remaining MSS. is more idiomatic.

- *85. Grete rumour gan whan it was ferst aspyed (+ Th)
(Ph was *for* gan; Th rose *for* gan)

Rest: The noyse vpros . . .

The α reading is again nearer the Italian: *Fu romor grande*, *Fil.* 1. 10. The *was* of Ph is closer to *Fil.* than the *gan* of H_2H_4 ; but the very close relationship of Ph and H_2^1 as against H_4 (see below, p. 54) compels us to accept *gan* as the reading of α . Note the conflate reading of Th.

- *87-91. That Calcas traytour fled was & alyed
(88) { H_2 To her foos & woldyn fayn be wrokyn
Ph To her foos & wyllyn to be wroken
 H_4 With here foos & wilned to be wroken
(89) { H_2 On hym pat had his troupe pus falsly brokyn
Ph On hym pat falsly had his troupe brokyn
 H_4 For he was fals & his surance broken
(90) And sworyn pat he & al his kin at onys
(H_4 They *for* And)
(91) { H_2Ph Were worthy brent bope fell and bonys
 H_4 Weel worthi were brent be bothe fell & bonys

Rest: That Calkas traytor fled was and allyed
(γ traytor fals fled was; H_3 was fledde)

- (88) With hem of Grece and casten to ben wroken
(S_1 shoop *for* to ben; R cast hem; Cx To *for* With)
(89) On hym pat falsly hadde his feith so broken
(A hadde his feith so falsly broken; S_2 Dig Of *for* On; Gg hade falsely)
(90) And seyden he and al his kin at onys
(H_1Gg sayden *pat* he)
(91) Ben worthi *for* to brennen fel and bones
(CpH_5 to be brent; H_1 alle fel and bones; D *for* to bren flesh; Gg *om.* *for*; Cx Were worthy to be brent bothe felle and bonys)

The variations in this passage between H_2 , Ph, and H_4 are so considerable that it is impossible to reconstruct with any certainty

the reading of *a* in 88, 89, and 91. I should conjecture that 88 and 89 read:

To her foos & wilned to be wroken

On hym pat falsly had his troupe broken ;

and that the *a* reading of 91 has been preserved by Cx :

Were worthy to be brent bothe felle and bonys

We must assume that these lines were confused in the original of H₂PhH₄. As compared with *a*, the remaining MSS. show a clear case of revision. One may note the greater definiteness gained by *With hem of Grece*, and perhaps also in *casten* as compared with *wilned*.

*93-96. Vnknowyng of this fals & wikked deede
(H₂ cursyd *for* fals & wikked ; Ph *om.* fals &)

(94) His doghtir which pat lyvid in grete penaunce
(H₂Ph *om.* which)

(95) For of her lyf she was perfor in drede
(H₂ *om.* of)

(96) Ne in al pis world she nyst what to rede
(H₂ nyst not)

Rest :

(93) Al vnwist of pis fals and wikked dede
(GgH₅Cx *om.* Al ; D Al men wiste ; H₃ the *for* pis)

(94) His doughter which pat was in gret penaunce
(ADS₁ liued *for* was)

(95) For of hire lyf sche was ful sore in drede
(H₃ ful ofte ; D ofte *for* ful sore ; S₁ sory and full of drede ; Cx And *for* For)

(96) As she pat nyst what was best to rede
(S₁S₂Dig wist nat ; H₃ *om.* pat ; Cx And wyste nevere what best was to rede)

Al vnwist is hardly an improvement on the *Vnknowyng* of *a*. It must mean "not informed of," as though from *wissen*, O.E. *wissian*, "to point out" ; ordinarily it means "unknown," cf. *Troil.* 2. 1294 ; 3. 603, 770, 789. Note that GgH₅ and Cx approximate to the *a* reading by omitting *Al*, and that ADS₁ preserve the *a* reading in 94. In 95 the *a* reading, *perfor*, seems to be a clear case of error, due to misreading *ful sore*. In 96, on the other hand, we have a deliberate revision.

98. Of ony frend to whom she durst mone

Rest: . . . she dorst hire mone

(ClS₂DigCx she dorst make hire mone; R was
best to mone)

If we read *durste*, which is grammatically correct, the α reading is entirely satisfactory.

101. So fair was none for ouer euery wight

(H₄ *om.* ouer)

Rest: . . . for passyng euery wyght

Since H₄ omits *ouer*, it may be that this is an H₂Ph emendation, and that *passyng* had been omitted by the α original.

*104. As doth a perfit heuenly creature

Rest: As is an heuenysh parfit creature

(γ As doth; Cx And ther wyth was she so perfyte a
creature)

γ fails to incorporate the first part of the revision.

*108. Wel ny oute of her wyt for pure fere

Rest: . . . for sorwe and fere

110. Byfor Hector on knees she fell a doun (+ CxTh)

Rest: On knees she fil byforn Ector a doun

(GgH₅ On kneis before ector sche fel adoun)

*111. With chere & voys ful pytous & wepyng

Rest: With pitous voys and tendrely wepynge

(R Whych petowe wys)

The Italian, *E con voce e con vista assai pietosa*, *Fil.* 1. 12, marks the α reading as more original.

*118. . . . lete 3our fadir tresoun gone

To sory hap . . .

Rest: Forth with mischaunce

Filostrato (1. 13) reads *lascia con la ria ventura Tuo padre andar*. *Sory hap* translates *ria ventura* more literally than does *mischaunce*. Perhaps α should read *With sory hap*.

123. As fer forth as y may enquire & here (+ R)

Rest: As fer as I may ought enquire . . .

(H₁ *om.* I)

124. And she hym thonkyd oft in humble chere

Rest : . . . with ful humble chere

Fil. 1. 14: Ella di questo il ringraziò assai.

125. . . . if it had be his wille (+ GgH₅)

Rest : . . . and it hadde ben his wylle

(R *om.* and)

†130, 131. Thurgh good in al & eke with yong & olde
(H₂ Thurgh out in al with yong & eke with olde ;

Ph god *for* good ; with *for second* &)

Ful wel bylovyd & folk wele of her tolde

Rest : Kept here estat and bothe of yong and olde

(A *om. first* and ; H₅ *om.* of)

Ful wel beloued and wel men of here tolde

(H₅ Ful wel hir loud ; A And wel beloued **ful wel** ;

D men wel ; Cx *om.* wel)

The *a* reading in 130 seems indefensible.

133. I rede not perfor y lete hit gone

Rest : I rede it nought . . .

137. . . . al vnsoft

(H₄ as vnsofte)

Rest : . . . no thing softe

143, 144. For why it were a long digression

Of my matere . . .

(H₄ it were of to long discuscioun)

Rest : For it were heere a long digression

Fro my matere . . .

(γ + H₅ *om.* heere ; S₁ For quhy it were **a** ; R right
for here, GgH₅AH₃Cx For *for* Fro)

Since Gg reads *here*, the agreement of H₅ with γ must be accidental. For further discussion of this line see p. 61.

†150, *151. The old vsage nold they of troy lettyn

(H₄ For al nolde thei of troye lette)

As for to honour her goddis and to loute

(H₂Ph her god and to loutyn ; H₄ *om. second* to)

Rest : Hire old vsage nolde pei not letten
 (Cx Yet for alle theyr vsage wolde ; ClH_1AR wolde)
 As for to honoure hire goddes ful deuoute
 (Cx To worship and honour their goddis ; R Ne *for*
 As, the *for* to ; Gg god)

Line 150 in *a* is hypermetrical if one gives proper syllabic value to *vsage* and *nold(e)*. Note the connection between H_4 and Cx. Line 151 is perfectly satisfactory ; the rime words are *about*e and *doute*. For *loute* in the sense of bowing down to an idol, cf. *Monk's Tale* 3352.

157. . . . of ioly veer þe pryme

Rest : . . . of lusti ver þe pryme
 (H_5 of forsing ver)

159. In meny wyse shewyd as y rede

Rest : In sondry wyses . . .
 (GgH_5RCxH_5D wyse)

The line seems to be due to *Fil.* l. 18, *E in diversi atti mostran loro amori*, though Boccaccio is speaking of *ogni animale* and not of *Li troian padri* (or *Pronti i Troiani* in ed. 1789). If so, *In sondry wyses* is the more original reading, and the weaker word *meny* must be charged to the *a* scribe.

*163–167. In general went euery manere wight
 That thryfty was to heryn her servise
 (H_4 tristi, the *for* her)
 And pat so meny a thousand lusty knyght
 So meny a fressh mayde & lady bryght
 (H_2 lady & maydyn)
 Ful wele byseyn the meste meyne & leest
 (H_2 the moost & eke þe leest ; H_4 mene)

Rest : In general pere went many a wight
 (D many worthy wight ; Cx Generally)
 To herkenen of Palladion seruyse
 (γ þe seruyse ; H_3GgH_5R Palladions)
 And namely so many a lusti knyght
 ($RCxS_2Dig$ om. so ; R a lusty gentyll knyght ; H_5
 yong *for* lusti)
 So many a lady fresch and mayden bright
 (Cx And *for* So ; H_3 mayden fresche and lady dere)

Ful wel arayed bothe meste and leste
 (J bothe þe meste and þe leste ; H₃ tho moste ; R *om.*
 wel ; H₁Cp boþe most meyne and lest ; Cl bothe
 meene meste ; A men bothe mest ; D bothe moste
 menne ; S₁ bothe most mene)

In this passage there is clear evidence of revision. *To herkennen of Palladion seruyse*, in 164, is more definite than the *a* reading, and more in keeping with the pagan background. The change in 163 seems to have been dictated by the dropping of the phrase, *That thryfty was*, crowded from the line by the long word *Palladion*. In 167 we can see the very method of revision. The line in *a*, misunderstood and emended by H₂, and perhaps also by H₄, who writes *mene* instead of *meyne*, must mean that all the knights and ladies who thronged the temple were goodly to look on, both the great retinues of important personages and the more modest trains of the less distinguished. Criseyde's *meynee* is mentioned in 2. 614, and that of Troilus in 5. 526. The *a* line was then revised to read *bothe meste and leste* by changing *the* to *bothe* and by deleting *meyne*. The scribe of the γ original made the change to *bothe*, but failed to delete *meyne*. Cp and H₁ retain this erroneous γ reading with the spelling *meyne*. In the parent of A and D *meyne* became *menne* or *men*, and A attempted an ingenious emendation. S₁ changes to *mene*, and Cl to *meene* with transposition of order. The parent of S₂ and Dig emended the hypermetrical line by dropping *meyne*, and so S₂Dig present the correct revised reading. J and H₃ have correctly deleted *meyne*, but have wrongly kept the original *þe* in addition to *bothe* of the revised reading.

*169. Among þe which was Cryseyda
 (H₂ was this Cryseyda)

Rest: Among þese opere folk was Criseyda
 (R ther was)

The Italian, *Tra' quali fu . . . Griseida*, *Fil.* 1. 19, marks the *a* reading as more original. The revised reading gains in definiteness.

*176. As she was as þei seydyn euerychon
 (H₂Ph echeon)

Rest: As was Criseyde as folk seyde euerichone
 (GgH₅ *om. second* as ; S₂DigCx ychone)

Again, the α reading is less definite. Th reads *they sayden* with α .

183. Davn Troyllus . . .

Rest: This Troilus . . .

195. . . . a lord she slepith soft (+ Th)
(H_4 o lord)

Rest: . . . god wot . . .

199. . . . have folk . . .

Rest: . . . folk han . . .

*202, 203. O verrey folys may ye no thing se
Kan none of yow yware by other be
(H_4 war)

Rest: O verrey foles nice and blynde be ye
Ther is not oon kan war by oþer be
(Cl loues *for* foles; Gg *om.* O, *om.* nice, þat can *for*
kan; Cx blynde and nyce; ClCpJ nys; *in* Cp
the n of nys has been erased)

*206–209. But trowe ye not þat love þo lokyd row
(H_4 not ye, *om.* þo)
For þat despite & shope to bene ywrokyn
(Ph shop how; H_4 shapid to be wrokyn)
Yes certein lovis bow was not ybrokyn
(H_2 certis; H_4 for loues bowe)
For be myn heed he hit hym atte fulle
(H_2 at þe)

Rest: At which þe god of loue gan loken rowe
(Cl to loken)
Right for despit and shop for to ben wroken
(H_5DCx *om.* for; H_3 hope)
He kyd anoon his bowe nas not broken
(Cl And *for* He; D toke anon *over erasure*; S_1 his
bowe that nas nat; H_3 to-broken; $RCxH_3H_5$ was)
For sodeynly he hit hym atte fulle
(Cl Ful *for* For, at þe *for* atte)

A clear case of conscious revision. As in 202, 203, a declarative statement replaces a rhetorical question. In 208 and 209 the revision is in the direction of greater definiteness.

215. Daun Troylus . . .

Rest : This Troylus . . .

Cf. line 183.

217. But alday faylith that that folys wenden

(H₂ pes *for second* that ; Ph pe *for second* that ; H₂Ph
wenyn ; H₄ fool is wende)*Rest* : . . . þyng þat . . .

224. . . . as my feris drawe (+ AD)

Rest : . . . with my feres drawe(Cl felawes ; R *om.* my ; Gg hyse *over erasure by*
corrector)

225. . . . þat . . . (+ R)

Rest : . . . þis . . .

245. . . . men may it se

(H₄ *om.* it)*Rest* : . . . men shal it se

255. Ne grucchith not to love for to be bond

(H₄ greuith)*Rest* : Refuseth not . . .

*257-259. Betir is þe wand þat bowyn wole & wynd

(H₄ bond *for* wand)

Than þat that brestith þerfor y 3ow rede

(Ph brest ; H₄ wil breste)

Now folowith hym þat so wele may 3ow lede

Rest : The yerde is bet þat bowen wole and wynde(A bende *for* wynde ; S₁ threde *for* yerde ; R That *for*The, bynde *for* wynde ; CpH₃ Tho *for* The)

Than þat þat brest and þerfor I yow rede

(A now *for* yow ; Gg brestyt ; H₅ brestith ; Dig
brekis ; R bresteth, *om.* and)

To folwen loue þat yow so wel kan lede

(γ To folwen hym þat so wel kan yow lede ; R Rede
for lede)

The α reading in 258 would seem to be due to scribal corruption. The parent MS. dropped *and*. H₂ has patched up the metre by substituting the unsyncopated form *brestit*h ; H₄ has attained the same object by reading *wil breste*. But note that Gg

and H_5 have the unsyncopated form with *and*, and that R agrees with H_2 . In 259 we have three distinct readings, of which the γ text stands midway between α and β . Perhaps, as in 167, γ failed to incorporate the full revision. In 259 Th reads *Nowe foloweth him* with α .

261. . . . of whom y told
Rest : . . . of which I tolde

- †272. His eye perceyvid and so depe hit went
Rest : His eye perced . . .
 (ClCp procede; S_2 Dig proceded; Cp sighte *for* eye;
 . R departed; Gg His eyzen perseydyn)

A clear error in α , as is shown by the Italian: *L'occhio suo vago giunse penetrando*, *Fil.* 1. 26. The error of Cl, Cp, S_2 Dig may be due to misinterpreting a scribal abbreviation.

274. H_2 And sodenly wax wondur sore astonyd
 Ph And sodenly wox for wondre astoned
 H_4 And sodenly for wondyr he wex astoyned
 Th And sodaynly for wonder wext astoned
Rest : And sodeynly he wax þerwith astoned

H_4 has apparently preserved the authentic α reading. H_2 is certainly corrupt. Ph presents a possible reading if we supply *he* before *wox*.

276. O verrey god þoght he wher hast pou wonyd (+ Th)
 (H_4 *om.* god)
Rest : O mercy god . . .
 †327. And al his chere & speche he vnournith
 (H_2 speche & chere; Ph Vnornith, V *of* Vnornith
corrected; H_4 For *for* And, yit he mourned)
Rest : . . . also he borneth
 (H_5 so *for* also)

A clear case of error.

- *342. But told y which were þe worst y leve
 (Ph whiche; H_4 But told I which were as I leeu)
Rest : But tolde I yow þe worste poynt I leue

The revision may be due to a desire to avoid repetition of phrase with the preceding line, *But þat is not þe worste as mot I the*, and to secure greater definiteness. Note that the α line has

only nine syllables, since dissyllabic *whiche* is justifiable only in the plural (Kittredge, § 78, ten Brink, 254).

*344, 345. But take pis pat 3e louers oft eschewe
For good or done of good intencion
(H₄ with *for* of)

Rest : Or elles don of good entencioun
(H₃ doon hit)

The revision avoids the repetition of *good*, and the somewhat awkward phrase *eschewe For good*.

348, 349. And 3et if she for oþer encheson
Be wroþe 3et shalt þow have a groyn anon
(H₄ *om.* 3et in 348)

Rest : . . . þan shalt þow . . .
(Gg that *for* shalt)

The *a* reading seems to be corrupt. Apparently 3et is repeated from 348.

†373. Ne myght for so goodly on be borne
(Ph *has corrected* to lorne over erasure)

Rest : . . . be lorn
(H₃ *om.* be ; H₅ forlorn)

A clear case of error. The Italian reads : *Poter per cotal donna esser perduto*, *Fil.* 1. 35. The rime word in 375 is *vpborne*.

393. And of this song not only his sentence (+ Th)
(H₂ þis sentence ; Ph his song)

Rest : And of his song nought only þe sentence
(GgH₅ þe song ; A this song ; R his sentence ; D content)

The *a* reading seems to be corrupt. Note the variants within each group.

*395. H₂ But eke save þat our spechis differens
Ph But eke save þat yn our speches be difference
(yn *and* be *inserted above*)
H₄ But eek sauf that in our spech is difference

Rest : But pleynly saue oure tonges difference
(Cl tonge deference)

H₂ and Ph are plainly corrupt, and H₄ is not very metrical. Perhaps the unrevised reading was : *But eke sauf yn our spech is difference*.

403. If he be wykked . . .

Rest: If it be . . .

The pronoun refers to *love*. In 401 all MSS. read *he*, which falls under the rime. All except AD and H_2Ph read *hym* in 405, where AD read *it*, and H_2Ph repeat the noun *love*.

†407. H_2Ph And if y yn myn owne lust brenne

H_4 And if in myn awyn lust I brenne

Rest: And yf þat at myn owene lust I brenne

(S_2 Dig *om.* yf; AD *om.* at; A *om.* I)

The Italian, *S'a mia voglia ardo*, Petrarch, Sonn. 88, confirms the reading *at*. *Yn* may be due to scribal anticipation of *myn*. α has dropped *þat* to the injury of the metre. The H_2Ph parent has transposed the pronoun *y*, perhaps with the idea of improving the disordered metre.

424. 3ow þonk y lord þat have broght me to þis

(H_4 which *for* þat)

Rest: . . . han me brought . . .

(Gg broute me, *omitting* han)

The α reading is probably due to scribal transposition; for the natural prose order would more readily be substituted for the poetical order than *vice versa*.

452. By night or day by wysdom or folye (+ Gg H_5)

(H_5 be it wisdom)

Rest: . . . for wysdom . . .

†462. My lif is lost . . .

(H_2Ph Al my lyst is lost)

Rest: And lyf is lost . . .

(A And myn lif; D And luf)

The preceding line reads *My dere herte allas myn hele and hewe*, and the context demands *And* in 462. *My* must be explained as caught from the preceding line by scribal error. Note the conflate reading in A, which points to contamination.

483. That al þe grekis as þe deth hym dred

(H_4 That alle grekis)

Rest: That þe Grekes . . .

The α reading avoids a nine-syllable line. *Al* has, however, no support from the Italian, which reads: *Che gli Greci il temean*

come la morte, *Fil.* 1. 46. Though Chaucer doubtless wrote nine-syllable lines, he would hardly arrive at one by deliberate revision. We must assume either that the *a* reading is original and that the remaining MSS. are corrupt, or, on the authority of the Italian, that the nine-syllable line is authentic, and the *a* reading a case of scribal emendation. Since *a* is frequently corrupt, I incline to the second hypothesis.

(With 498 begins again hand 3 of H_2 , and continues through 567)

532. More than on of whos foly men Ryme
(H_2^3 he *for* on)

Rest: More þan þat fol . . .
(CpA that folk; S_2 Dig the folk; RCx a fool)

540. These wordis and full many an other mo (+ R + H_5 + Th)
($H_2^3 H_4 H_5$ *om.* an)

Rest: . . . ful manye an oper to

564. Ph H_4 . . . and don his corage wakyn
 H_2^3 . . . and his courage wake

Rest: . . . and his corage awaken

H_2^3 has dropped *don*, but keeps *wake* instead of *awaken*.

(With line 568 begins again H_2^1 , and continues to the end of the book.)

582. Pandare that ny malt for wo & rouþe

Rest: This Pandare þat neigh malt . . .

(J þat wel neyght malt; Gg þat wol ner mast; H_5 þat wel ner malt)

JGg H_5 , which insert *wel*, though reading *This*, suggest that the original reading of *a* may have been *Pandare that wel ny malt*.

629. Ther as he felle that loke coud wyde
(H_4 lookyn coude)

Rest: . . . coude loke wyde

- *640. Ne no man wote what gladnes is y trow
(+ JGg H_5 + Th).

Rest: Ne no man may be inly glad I trowe

(R ueryly glad; S_2 Ioly gladde; Dig non *for* no man)

A clear case of revision, in which JGg H_5 retain the *a* reading.

644. H_2Ph As men may se so thes clerkis demith
 H_4 The coloures & knoulech who so riht demyth
 (H_4 has transposed 643 and 644. Its reading is a clumsy attempt to supply a line missing in its original.)

Rest : As men may se and so þe wyse it demeth
 (Gg om. it)

- †678. . . . þogh þat y wist
 (H_4 om. þat)

Rest : . . . if ich it wyste
 (R and for if)

The context clearly demands *if* rather than *þogh*. The α original has repeated *þogh* from the preceding line.

715. A god wil þou art not agast of me

Rest : If god wole . . .

- *755. But lete me myn infortune waylyn
 (H_4 my fortune bewaylyn)

Rest : But suffre me my myschef to by-wayle
 (D om. my ; Cp om. to ; H_5 for to)

The α reading is perfectly satisfactory. For *infortune* cf. *Troil.* 3. 1626, 4. 185. One can see no motive for the revision. Th reads : *But suffre me my fortune to bewaylen.*

- *773. Why no parde sir quod this Troylus (+ Th)
 (H_2Ph om. this)

Rest : No certes broþer quod þis Troylus
 (A seide for quod ; Cp om. þis)

The α reading is somewhat more dramatic. The revised reading is more concise and avoids the repetition of *why* in 774.

- †786. As sharp as doth the Sicipus in helle
 (Ph Ciciphus ; H_4 Sitiphus)

. . . he Ticius . . .
 (ClRH₅ þe for he ; H_3 tho for he ; H_1Cx om. he ;
 S_1 he Theseus ; Gg he which is) (Th he Tesiphus)

The context, which speaks of the vultures rending his stomach, makes it clear that Tityus and not Sisyphus is meant. Cf. Boethius 3. m 12. 29, where the name is spelled *Ticius*, and, for

Sisyphus, *Duchess* 589, with Skeat's note. It is not impossible that the error in *a* may be due to the poet himself.

†794. And wantrowist to telle of þi sorowis smert
(Ph tellyn ; H₄ And wondist to tellyn)

Rest : For wantrust tellen of þi sorwes smerte
(D untrust ; Cx woundis *for* sorwes ; H₅ To noon
tellyn of þy sorwe and smerte)

A clear case of error. Not only is the *a* reading unmetrical ; but the context clearly demands a noun and not a verb. I know of no authority for such a verb as "*wantrowen*."

796. As mych as speke o word ye more or lesse (+ Th)
(H₂Ph *om.* ye ; H₄ to speke)

Rest : . . . a resoun more or lesse
(Cl lasse)

831. . . . but if þow fynd it so
(+ GgH₅ ; Gg *om.* if)
. . . . but þow it fynde so
(A hit *for* but)

890–896. *Stanza* 128 (+ Th)

Rest : *Omit stanza.*

For a discussion of this stanza see p. 34.

938. . . . whil þat y lyve

Rest : . . . whil I leue
(D whan *for* whil ; S₁ quhill I may lyve)

*949. The lilie wexith white smothe & soft

Rest : The rose waxeþ swote smothe and softe
(ClCpH₁DS₁ and smothe and softe ; Gg swete sauery
& softe)

The *a* reading seems preferable. The adjectives "smooth" and "soft" apply better to the lily than to the rose. Moreover, the rose is more naturally contrasted with its own thorns than with the "*foule nettle rough and pikke*" growing next it. But the change seems to be deliberate.

976. For þis have y herd seyð of olde lerid (+ R)
(H₂Ph sey ; H₄ *om.* herd ; H₂ old)

γ + J . . . of wyse lered (Cl ylered)

Gg(H₅) . . . of leryd

H₃ . . . ofte herde sey and lerede

Cx . . . herde seyð oft of lered.

Olde lerid is preferable to the somewhat tautological *wyse lered* of γ and J. Apparently the scribe of the common original first wrote *wyse* and then altered it to *olde*. γ and J failed to note the correction. H_3 and Cx misread *olde* as *ofte*. Gg omitted the word.

†1014. Now blisful Venus now help or þat y sterue

Rest: *Omit second now*

The α reading is hypermetrical.

1029. . . . þan do right as þe lest (+ Th)

(H_4 thanne, *om.* right)

Rest: . . . now do right as þe leste

(Cl ript; A now *for* right)

An examination of the long list of readings which characterize H_2PhH_4 reveals a number of significant facts.

(1) That H_2PhH_4 are descended from a common ancestor, not Chaucer's original, is shown by their agreement in a number of readings manifestly corrupt, *i. e.* 61, 272, 327, 373, 407, 462, 678, 786, 794, 1014.

(2) Of the remaining H_2PhH_4 readings, some present but a slight variation, such as a simple transposition in word-order or a trifling substitution, which could be explained as a scribal corruption. Others, however, involve so considerable a difference in phrasing that the variation can be explained only as due to deliberate revision. In many instances we are presented with alternate readings both of which are not only possible, but in spirit and manner thoroughly Chaucerian. The readings which point clearly to deliberate revision are marked in the list with an asterisk. It is, of course, possible that the slighter variations may be due to such a cause.

(3) A comparison with Chaucer's Italian originals shows that in a number of instances H_2PhH_4 present a reading closer to the source than that of the remaining MSS. The reverse of this is true only when H_2PhH_4 are manifestly in error. Since it seems fair to assume that revision will normally result in a freer rather than a closer following of the source, this fact points towards the conclusion that H_2PhH_4 present the earlier and unrevised text of the poem. This conclusion is corroborated by the fact that H_2PhH_4 are the only MSS. which contain the obviously genuine stanza 128 (cf. above, p. 34).

(4) The variants which characterize H_2PhH_4 are not evenly distributed throughout the book. Of the 93 variants, including cases of manifest error, 72 occur in the first 500 lines, and 59 in the first 300 lines. This fact further confirms the hypothesis of deliberate revision, since variations due to scribal carelessness or caprice would normally be scattered throughout the extent of the work.

(5) Certain MSS. outside this group, notably GgH_5 and R, occasionally share in the readings of H_2PhH_4 . In one striking instance, line 640, the reading of H_2PhH_4 is shared by $JGgH_5$.

We must now consider the relations existing between the MSS. which constitute this group of H_2PhH_4 . And here it must be remembered that H_2 is not homogeneous. The first and the eighth folios of H_2 , including lines 1-70 and 498-567, are in a different hand from that which has written the rest of Book I. They are by hand 3, which has also written lines 197-406 of Book IV. (See *The MSS. of Chaucer's Troilus*, p. 17.) Though H_2^1 and H_2^3 are both throughout Book I a MSS., H_2^1 is closely related to Ph, while H_2^3 is cognate in origin with H_4 .

The close relationship of H_2^1 and Ph has already been to some extent illustrated by the variants given in the long list of a group readings. Any one who will compare line by line the two MSS. through the stanzas included in the Chaucer Society's volume of *Specimen Extracts* will be struck at once by the remarkable similarity in spelling. Even more significant is the fact that the two MSS. are the work of the same scribe. Of the truth of this statement the reader may convince himself by examining the facsimile pages given in *The MSS. of Chaucer's Troilus* (Plates IX and XVIII). I have minutely compared the facsimile of Ph with the corresponding lines in H_2^1 , and the facsimile of H_2^1 with the corresponding lines in Ph. This comparison of identical words, usually of identical spelling, leaves no doubt in my mind that the copyist is one and the same. There are, to be sure, trifling differences, but only such as can be readily understood from the fact that H_2 , a vellum MS. throughout, is more carefully executed than Ph, the greater part of which is written on paper. Ph lacks the illuminated stanza initials and the stanza spacings which are found throughout H_2 . Thus, for example, the scribe uses two forms of the letter *h*, one of which ends in a firm downstroke with a tendency to turn at its conclusion to the right, while the

other ends with a free flourish to the left. Each of these forms is present both in H_2 and in Ph ; but the former greatly predominates in H_2 , while the latter is characteristic of Ph .

The close relationship of H_2^1 and Ph is attested by their agreement in a great number of characteristic readings, a large proportion of which are manifestly corrupt. These agreements I shall illustrate by the following list of representative examples. A complete list would fill many pages, and could serve no useful purpose.

$H_2^1 Ph$.

(H_2^1 begins with line 71)

†76. For wele wist he byfor þat Troy shold
(Ph þat Troy by for)

Rest: . . . by sort

An error due to the confusion of f and long s .

†119. Dwellith whil 3ow good lyst in troy

Rest: Dwelleth with vs whil . . .

†156. . . . þe tyme

Of apparaille whan clopid is the mede

Rest: Of Aperil . . .

A curious error apparently due to the suggestion of *clupid*.

181, 182. Symple of beryng & deboner of chere
With a ful seure lokyng & a manere

Rest: Symple of atyr and debonaire of chere
With ful assuryd lokyng and manere
(H_4 a seemly *for* assuryd; Gg answered)

†197. I have herd told of 3our lyvyng

Rest: I haue herd told pardieux of . . .

237, 238. That love is he þat althing can blynd
For may no man vndo þe lawe of kynd

Rest: . . . may bynde
For may no man fordo . . .
(H_5 undo)

†268. This Troylus with euery wight about

Rest: . . . of euery wyght . . .
(ClH_5 and *for* of; H_4 on *for* of)

The Italian reads *or d'uno or d'altro*, *Fil.* 1. 26. The context also demands *of*.

†286. She shewyd wele pat men myght in her gesse

Rest : Omit She

H₂Ph have clumsily emended an authentic nine-syllable line.
The subject of *shewyd* is *pe pure wyse of here menyng* in 285.

406. For more thurst y the more pat y drynk
(H₂ thrust)

Rest : For ay þurst I þe more pat I it drynke
(H₄RA om. it)

†409. . . . wherto þan y pleyne

Rest : . . . wherto pleyne I þenne

A manifest error. The rime word is *brenne*.

423. þe spiryt which that oght euere youris be

Rest : Mi spirit which þat aught youre be

(H₄ ay for þat ; H₁S₂Dig om. þat ; Gg þe wheche ;
H₅ om. which)

The reading *ay* in H₄ gives some support to *euere* in H₂Ph. It is possible that the *a* original may have read: *My spiryt which oght euere youris be*, or *My spiryt which ay oghte youris be*. The Italian, *omai L'anima è tua che mia esser solea*, *Fil.* 1. 38, lends no support, however, to such a conjecture.

425, 426. But whethir goddes or woman she is

Y wis y note . . .

Rest : But wheþer goddesse or womman I wys

She be I not . . .

(GgH₅ om. She be)

The error of GgH₅ in omitting *She be* seems to be connected with a revision of the H₂Ph reading into that of the remaining MSS. Perhaps this should be regarded as an authentic *a* reading not shared by H₄.

†465. Ne in his desire non opir fantasye bred

Rest : . . . fownes . . .

(D foules ; H₄R sownes ; Cp fewnes ; H₅ other brede ;
S₂Dig fode no(r) brede)

The word *fownes* (= fawns) in this strange metaphorical use has bred many corruptions.

†471. That Ector or his brethyryn dedyn (+ D + H₅)

Rest : . . . his opere breþeren . . .

Opere has been dropped because of the similarity of the following word. The same error has been made independently by D and H₅. The Italian reads: *Ch' Ettore e gli altri suoi frate' faceano*, *Fil.* 1. 45.

†496. Ne semyd hit as she of hit roght

Rest: . . . as þat she of hym roughte
(γ + Gg *om.* as; H₃Cx lacking)

The context demands *hym*. The line is metrically deficient.
(Lines 498–567 are written by hand 3.)

†612. And for þe love of god the cold care

Rest: . . . my cold care
The context demands *my*.

†632. But hit makith sharp keryng toles

Rest: But yet it maketh . . .
(S₁F₂ And 3it)

A nine-syllable line.

642. Eke white by blak shame by worthines

Rest: . . . by shame ek worthinesse
(A eke shame by; S₂Dig Also shame be)

†646. That y have in love so oft assayed

Rest: I þat haue . . .

665. þat his craft ne coud his sorowis bete

(H₂ bet)
Rest: That al his craft . . .

†739. To no man for why þat he so ferd

Rest: To neuer no man for whom . . .
(ClCpH₁S₁H₃ *om.* no; AH₄Cx Neuer to no man;
R Neuer to man; H₅ To neuere a man)

Note the uncertainty of the MSS. as to the word-order, due perhaps to an attempt to improve the metre.

747. Eke it is craft some tyme to seme fle

(H₂ sle *for* fle)
Gg Ek it is a craft for summe sumtyme to fle
Rest: Ek som tyme it is a craft to seme fle.
(H₄H₃Cx *om.* a)

†748. For thy with yn effect men huntith fast

Rest : For þyng which yn effect . . .

(ClCpH₁S₂Dig Fro þyng)

†767. Trist þow þat y told it in her ere

Rest : Dorstestow . . .

†806. þou mayst alone here wepe knele & cry (+ Cx)

(Ph wepe and knele)

Rest : . . . crie and knele

A clear case of error, since the rime word in 808 is *fele*. Cx changes *fele* to *espye*.

†860. Wer it my sustir for wham þou makist þis sorow

Rest : Were it for my suster al þi sorwe

914. And some wold monche her brede alon

Rest : . . . here mete allone

(GgH₅ vary)

926. Thes faytours . . .

Rest : These loueres . . .

957. Be diligent & trew and alwey hide (+ RCx)

Rest : . . . ay wel hide

(H₄ ay weel yede)

†1032. That þow my lady desiryn shold

(Ph þow *corrected to y*)

Rest : That to my lady I desiren sholde

(Gg *om. to*; H₅ þat I my lady desyre shulde)

That þow is repeated from 1031.

†1076- And in þe toun his name sprong for ay

1078. So goodly was & gat hym so mych grace

þat eche wight hym lovid þat lokyd in his face

Rest : And yn þe town his manere þo forþ ay

(A his name sprang in fay; H₃ to fore ay; Cx he holdeth ay)

So goodly was & gat him so yn grace

(A such *for* so yn; H₅ his *for* yn; Gg *lacking*)

That eche hym louede . . .

(A That euery man louede hym)

Line 1076 is meaningless; 1078 is hypermetrical. The agreements of A with H₂Ph must be explained as due to contamination.

1081. The trustiest and on the best knyght (+ R)

Rest : The þriftieste . . .

The list of readings in which H_2^1 and Ph agree might have been extended indefinitely; but the representative examples given above are sufficient to show that H_2^1 and Ph are descended from a common original, and that this original must have presented a very corrupt text. In a great majority of cases the characteristic readings of this pair of MSS. are manifestly erroneous. In no case have we any sufficient ground for supposing that the variation is due to intelligent revision. Closely related as are H_2^1 and Ph, each is guilty of numerous corruptions of its own; so that neither can be regarded as the source of the other. For example, H_2 omits stanza 70 (lines 484–490) which is given by Ph; and Ph omits the first three lines of stanza 118 (lines 820–822), repeating in their place the first three lines of stanza 117, an error not shared by H_2 .

In the two passages written by hand 3, H_2 is unmistakably related to H_4 . This relationship is attested by the following readings:

$H_2^3H_4$

† 4. Frome wo to wele and afftirwarde oute of Ioye

Rest: . . . and after out of Ioye

10. . . . the sorye Instrumente

Rest: . . . sorwful . . .

20. H_2^3 . . . or my love availe

H_4 . . . or my book auaille

Rest: . . . and his cause auayle
(A this *for* his; Cx lady *for* cause)

† 63. Full besyly thay diden all their peyn

(H_2^3 *om.* all)

Rest: By Parys don . . .

The Italian, *Di vendicar l'oltraggio e la rapina Da Paris fatta*, *Fil.* 1. 7, supports the reading of the remaining MSS. The reading of $H_2^3H_4$ must be regarded as a scribal variation, due perhaps to a dislike for run-on lines.

68. Knew well that Troy distroied shulde be

Rest: . . . sholde destroyed be

498. But than felte Troilus suche wo (+ R)

(H_4 fell)

Rest: But þanne felt þis Troylus . . .

500. Was this þat she hym had I-loued so
(H_2^3 in love *for* I-loued)

Rest: . . . som wyght hadde loued so
(Ph euer *for* som)

† 536. The deth for I will while þat my liff may laste
(H_4 *om.* þat)

Rest: *Omit* will. (R wyl *for* while)

Will is anticipated from the next line.

546. . . . his sorowe gan multiply (+ Gg H_5)

Rest: . . . his wo . . .

† 547. Bewaillyng thus in his chambre allone
(H_4 By wakyng)

Rest: . . . yn his chambre þus allone
(D *om.* þus)

The transposition is greatly to the detriment of the metre.

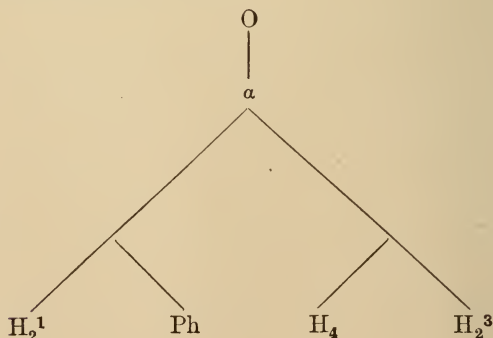
† 558. God saue them þat haue besieged our toun (+ Gg)

Rest: . . . byseged han . . .

Again the metre is disarranged.

These agreements, of which a number are cases of manifest error, serve to establish the common descent of H_2^3 and H_4 from an already corrupt original. It must be noted, however, that H_2^3 has in several instances incorporated, presumably by contamination, readings of the β type. See lines 34, 57 and 58, 564 already discussed in the main list of α readings. An examination of the variants given in that list, and in the $H_2^3H_4$ list above, will show that neither H_2^3 nor H_4 is derived from the other.

The relations now established within the group of α MSS. may be graphically represented thus:



O indicates Chaucer's original in its unrevised form, and *a* a copy of that original. It is obvious that *a* may be reconstructed by the agreement in any line of H₂¹ or Ph with H₄ or of H₄ or H₂³ with Ph. Where the two branches of *a* are in conflict, recourse must be had to the testimony of the MSS. outside the group, and to the general principles of transcriptional probability. It must be noted, however, that in the latter part of Book I particularly there is some sort of a cross relation between H₄ and β, notably with R and Cx, the nature of which will be discussed later on (see pp. 81-83).

We must now consider the MSS. which present the text in its later revised form. Here it will be convenient to begin with the numerous and intrinsically very important group to which has been given the designation γ. It consists of Cl, Cp, H₁, S₂, Dig, A, D, and (throughout Book I) S₁. These eight MSS. are associated by their agreement, as against the remaining MSS. (including *a*), in a series of variant readings which is presented in full in the list which follows:

ClCpH₁S₂DigADS₁ (γ)

†87. That Calkas traytor fals fled was and allyed
With hem of Grece . . .

Rest: Omit fals (H₃ was fledde)

A hypermetrical line, due, perhaps, to a misreading of *fled* and to a subsequent correction.

†143. For it were a long disgression (— S₁, + H₅)
(H₁ discrecioun)
H₂PhH₄S₁ For why it were . . .
JGgH₃Cx For it were here . . .
R For it were right . . .

A nine-syllable line, emended by S₁. The agreement of H₅ I regard as fortuitous, since the closely related Gg reads *here*. For further discussion of this line see p. 42.

†162. And to þe temple yn al here goodly best wyse
(— CpS₂Dig)

Rest: Omit goodly (R om. al)

A hypermetrical line, corrected by CpS₂Dig.

164. To herkenen of Palladion pe seruyse
 β To herknen of Palladions seruyse
 (JCx Palladion)
 α That thryfty was to heryn her servise
- † 167. Ful wel arayed bothe most meyne and leste
 (Cl meene meste; A men bothe mest; D menne;
 S_1 mene; S_2 Dig *om.* meyne)
 β . . . bothe mest and lest
 α . . . the meste meyne & leest
 A corrupt conflation of α and β , corrected by S_2 Dig. For a full discussion of the line see above, p. 44.
- † 198. Ye louers and youre obseruaunces
 (A and of youre)
Rest: . . . and yowr lewed obseruaunces
 (Ph and of; Cx and eke)
 A four-stress line.
259. To folwen hym pat so wel kan yow lede
 β To folwen loue pat yow so wel kan leede
 α Now folowith hym pat so wel may 3ow lede
 Again γ stands midway between α and β , as though it had failed to incorporate the full revision.
- † 261. Of pis kynges sone of which I tolde (+ GgH₅)
Rest: As of this kynges sone . . .
 A scribal error, accidentally shared by GgH₅.
324. He streyght anoon vnto his paleys turneth (+ Cx)
Rest: . . . the paleys . . .
 The Italian reads: *al palazzo tornossi, Fil. 1. 32.*
386. And ouer all pis yet mucche more he poughte
Rest: And ouere al this muchel moore he thought
 (PhH₄ *om.* al; RH₄ full mochell; H₃ *lacking*)
 The γ reading is metrically preferable; but the reading without *yet* is possible.
442. So mucche day by day his owene pought
Rest: . . . day fro day . . .
 The Italian reads: *Tanto di giorno in giorno, Fil. 1. 41.*

487. . . . bothe euen and morwe

Rest : . . . on eue and morwe

(H₄ *om.* on ; GgH₅Ph on euyne and on morwe ; H₂H₃Cx
lacking)

495. But wel I rede . . .

Rest : But wele rede I . . .

γ substitutes a normal word-order.

†496. Ne semed it þat she of hym roughete (+Gg)

(A on *for* of ; S₂Dig *om.* Ne, thought *for* roughete ;
Dig 3it *for* it)

Rest : . . . as þat she of him roughete

(H₂Ph as she of hit roght)

The line in γ is metrically deficient.

502. For which . . .

(Cl For such)

Rest : For þat . . .

(JGgH₅ For þat cause).

539. þough neuere more þyng ye me byhete

(CpS₂Dig heete *for* byhete)

Rest : . . . no thing more . . .

(R Thogh that thing ye more me behete ; H₅ þow
neuere þyng hereafter)

563. . . . don his wo to falle (+R)

(S₂Dig euelle *for* wo ; Cl *om.* to)

Rest : . . . don his sorwe falle

(H₂³ to do *for* don his)

565. But wel he wiste . . .

Rest : But wel wist he . . .

Again γ substitutes a normal word-order.

628. I haue myself ek seyn a blynd man go

(AS₂Dig seen ek)

Rest : I haue my seluen seyne

(H₂PhH₄H₅RCx myself)

649. Ek þe ne oughte not ben yuel apayed

(S₂Dig Also þou ought nought to be ; D to *for* not)

Rest : And ek the noughte nat . . .

(H₂PhH₄ And eke þow oughtest not ; GgH₅ And ek
þou not ; H₃R the aught not ; Cx the not ought)

- †661. Remede and red by erbes she knew fyne (— S₁)
(Cl erbess)

Rest : . . . he knew . . .

(RH₄ couth ; H₅ kenewe he ; Gg he knyht)

An error, corrected by S₁. The pronoun refers to Phoebus.

720. And sith I am he that pou tristest most
(Cl sithen, yn whom *for* that ; D *omits line*)

Rest : And seist I am . . .

(Gg And seyst pou pat I am ; H₄ And seist that I
am ; H₃ on whom *for* that ; H₂PhCx *om.* that)

Sith is repeated from 719.

806. . . . wepe and crie and knele (+ J)

Rest : *Omit first* and

- †808. And she wole quyte pat pou shalt not fele
(A quyte wole ; S₁ quyte so pat)

Rest : And she wol quyte it that . . .

(R *om.* And ; Cx shal *for* wol, *om.* that ; H₃ the *for* it)

In γ the transitive verb *quyte* is without an object.

820. Of pat word toke hede Troylus

Rest : And of that word . . .

(Gg pys *for* that)

A nine-syllable line.

834. 3e so pow seyst . . .

Rest : Ye so seystow . . .

Again γ substitutes a normal word-order.

880. For of good name and wysdom and manere (— AS₂Dig)

Rest : *Omit first* and

(S₂Dig goddis *for* good)

949. . . . swote and smothe and softe (— AS₂Dig)

Rest : *Omit first* and

(a white *for* swote ; Gg sauery *for* smothe)

Note that in two cases AS₂Dig depart from γ in exactly the same construction.

- †960 But he pat departed is yn euery place
(S₂Dig euere)

Rest : But he that parted is . . .

A scribal error to the detriment of the metre.

976. For þis haue I herd seyð of wyse lered (+ J)
 (Cl ylered)
 a + R . . . of olde lerid
 Gg(H₅) *Omit* wyse
 H₃ . . . ofte herde sey and lerede
 Cx . . . lherde seyð oft of lered

For a discussion of this line see above, p. 52.

- 1000-1001. That þow shalt be þe beste post I leue
 Of al his lay and most hise foos to greue
 (- DS₁) (Cl best)

Rest : . . . and moste his foos greue
 (JRS₁ and moost his foos ay greue)

The reading *to greue* is supported only by γ. It is due to a misunderstanding of the line. The context requires not the superlative *most*, but the verbal form *moste* (= must). For the dissyllabic form see Kittredge, p. 330. In the present passage only H₃ and Cx read *moste*, the rest *most* or *moost*. The reading of JRS₁ is due to an attempt to repair the metre.

1002. Ensamþle whi se now þese wyse clerkes
 (Cl ye *for* now ; Dig *om.* now ; S₂ says *for* se ; S₂Dig
 þe wyse)

Rest : . . . grete clerkes

Wyse is apparently a scribal substitution due to the influence of *whi se*.

1012. But hotter weex his loue and þus he seyde
Rest : . . . and thanne he seyde
 (Ph þo *for* thanne ; H₄ *om.* he)

1050. . . þat þis auaunt . . . (+ H₃)
Rest : *Omit* þat

1057. To here þat to þe deth me may comaunde (- DS₁)
 (A *second* to *inserted later*)
Rest : . . . may me . . .

1064. And fynde a tyme þer-to and a place (+JCx)
 A *con. second* a)
Rest : . . . a space
 (H₄H₅ *om. second* a)

The phrase *tyme and space* occurs in *Cant. Tales, Prologue* 35. J and Cx agree with γ in substituting a more familiar locution.

An examination of the list of γ group readings, 33 in all, just given, makes clear the following facts :

(1) That the MSS. of this group are descended from a common ancestor, not Chaucer's original, is shown by their agreement in a number of readings which are manifestly erroneous. The clearest cases of error are indicated in the list by a dagger (†).

(2) Of the variant readings not manifestly corrupt, none is of such a character as to suggest intelligent revision. Their trivial character is in striking contrast with the variants exhibited by α . Often transcriptional probability makes against them, *e. g.* in the substitution of a normal for an inverted word-order in 495, 565, and 834. In only one line, 386, is the γ reading preferable to that of the remaining MSS. ; and there the alternative reading, though metrically less smooth, is quite defensible.

(3) In several instances, lines 143, 167, 259, γ occupies a position midway between α and β . It would seem that the γ original failed to incorporate the whole of an indicated revision.

Within the group of γ MSS. a close relation exists between S_2 and Dig, both of which are clearly copies of a very corrupt descendant of the γ original. This relationship, already illustrated by the variants given in the list of γ readings above, may be further exemplified by the following list of representative readings selected from among a great number of similar instances. There is hardly a stanza in which the relationship is not exhibited. No useful purpose would be served by making this list complete.

S_2 Dig.

119. . . . whil you good thyngk . . .

Rest : . . . good list . . .

†327. *Omit alle.*

Rest : And alle his chere . . .

†388. And what arte myght gare hire to loue be soght

Rest : And what to arten hire to loue he soughte

†465. S_2 No he desyred none oþer fode no brede

Dig No he desired no nothire food nor bred

Rest : Ne yn hym desir noon opere fownes bredde

(H_5 Ne hym desyred noon other brede)

For other variants on this line cf. above, p. 56.

†485. And made his mete his foo & eke his drynke sorow
(Dig om. his foo)

Rest: And made his mete his foo and ek his sorwe
(Cp. foo inserted by later hand)

†531. I shal be scornyd a thousand time

Rest: I shal by Iaped ben a . . .

592. To take a parte of wo . . .

Rest: To entrepärten wo . . .

616. And late me dye . . .

Rest: And lat me sterue . . .

†631. A whetstone es no brynnyng Instrument

Rest: . . . no keruyng Instrument.

†806. . . . opyn here . . .

Rest: Thou mayst allone here . . .

That neither S_2 nor Dig is derived from the other is proved by the fact that each is guilty of corruptions where the other preserves the correct reading. Cf. the readings in lines 610, 620, 624, 640 in *Specimen Extracts*.

Less striking in its manifestation, but nevertheless unmistakable, is the relationship existing between A and D. This relationship is attested by the following agreements:

AD.

†38. And for hem . . . (+ S_2)

Rest: And ek for hem . . .

94. . . . þat lived in gret penaunce (+ $S_1 + a$)

Rest: . . . þat was . . .

†124. And she hym thanketh . . . (+ H_3)

Rest: And she hym þonked . . .

The Italian reads *Ella di questo il ringraziò*, *Fil.* 1. 14.

205. . . . is nought þis . . . (+ $GgH_5 + H_3$)

Rest: . . . is þis nought . . .

224. . . . as my feeres drawe (+ a)

Rest: . . . with my feres drawe

(Cl felawes)

405. That cometh of it . . .

Rest: . . . of hym . . .
(H₂Ph of love)

407. *Omit* at

Rest: . . . at myn owene lust
(α yn myn owne lust)

†409. If harme agreue me . . . (+ H₄)

Rest: If harme agree me . . .
(H₅ angre ; Cx angree)

The Italian reads *S'a mal mio grado*, Petrarch, Sonnet 88.

†490. A That the hote fire of loue hym for brende

DS₁ . . . so sore hym brende

Rest: . . . hym brende.
(H₅ hym ded brende)

668. And paraenture 3it . . .

Rest: And yet paraunter . . .
(GgH₅Cx paraenture)

797. . . . of no thyng list recche

Rest: . . . lest of no pyng recche
(H₄ list of lif nothyng rechch)

803. . . . shouldest pou . . . (+ GgH₅)

(A xuldest)

Rest: . . . shaltow . . .

†878. . . . for Iesus name . . . (+ R)

(DR Ihus ; A Ihis *over erasure*)

Rest: . . . for Ioues name . . .

943. Wolde now . . .

Rest: Now wolde . . .

†972. Or honur hast . . .

Rest: Or ouer haste oure bope labour shende
(Gg Or for euere hast pou ; H₅ *lacking*)

988. . . . ay be redy

Rest: . . . be ay redy

(H₃CxGg(H₅) be al redy ; H₂ al day be redy ; Ph alwey
be redy)

It will be noticed that the variant readings in which A and D agree are of a very trivial character, such as simple transpositions and the omission or alteration of single words. Into such errors it is easy for a scribe to fall, however pure the text before him. So obvious are many of the errors that in several instances they are shared independently by unrelated MSS. Only in lines 94 and 490 is there any question of conscious contamination. We should not be justified in arguing a relationship of A and D on such evidence were it not that the instances are fairly numerous, and that the relationship is attested later in the poem by evidence much less equivocal. The common ancestor of A and D was a γ MS., singularly free from corruptions other than those it inherited from the γ original.

Finally, before leaving the γ group, must be considered a series of instances in which two or more of the units which make up γ agree in a reading not shared by the remainder.

SCATTERING AGREEMENTS OF γ MSS.

45. CpS₂Dig + β And send hem myght hire ladies so to plesse
 ClH₁ADS₁ + α . . . hire loues so to plesse
 (ClH₁S₁H₅Cx for *for* so ; R *om.* so ; H₁ loueres)

To explain the division of the γ MSS. between the α and the β reading we must assume that the γ parent first wrote the unrevised reading, *loues*, and then corrected to *ladies*, but without making the correction clear, and that ClH₁ADS₁ failed to notice the correction.

- †98. ClS₂Dig + Cx Of ony frend to whom she dorst make hire
 mone
 (Cx And nyst to whome she durst make her mone ; S₂Dig
om. hire)
Rest : Omit make. (R was best to mone ; α *om.* hire)

The γ original must have contained both *make* and *hire*, probably with *make* marked for deletion. S₂Dig chose *make* rather than *hire*, while Cl retained both words. Note that α omits *hire*. *She durst mone* would have been perfectly satisfactory. In Cx this whole stanza, and the next, is so extensively altered, that one cannot safely argue from any of its readings. Its agreement with Cl may well be due to accident.

168. ClS₂Dig Ye bope for the seson and for þe feste
 (S₂Dig *om.* Ye)
 H₂Ph + H₅ + A . . . & eke for þe feest
 (H₅ ek *inserted above*)

Rest : . . . and þe feste
 (Cx *om.* Ye ; and the hye feste)

The repetition of *for* from the earlier part of the line is so easy an error that it may well have been made by several scribes independently. It would look as though the γ original read *for þe feste* with *for* marked for deletion. Note the γ reading in 167.

- †234. CpS₂DigS₁ To seruen loue . . .

Rest : To scornen loue . . .

Though *seruen* is certainly wrong, it is at first glance very plausible, and the two words are closely similar in form. The γ original may have first written *seruen*, and then corrected it to *scornen*.

253. CpH₁ And sith it may . . .
 S₂Dig And now sith it may . . . (Dig A *for* And)

Rest : Now sith it may . . .

Lines 250, 251, 252, 254 all begin with *And*. The γ original must have written *And*, and then corrected to *Now*.

- †272. ClCpS₂Dig His eye procede . . .
 (Cp sighte *for* eye ; S₂ Dig proceded)

Rest : . . . percede . . .

For further variants see p. 47. The error could easily arise from misreading an abbreviation.

497. ClAD Nor of his peyne . . .

Rest : Or of his peyne . . .

516. CpH₁S₂Dig + H₂ And held vs . . .

Rest : That held vs . . .

- †532. CpS₂DigA More than that folk of whos folie men
 ryme
 (S₂Dig the folk)

Rest : . . . þat fol . . .

(RCx a fool ; H₄Ph on of whos foly ; H₂ he of whos foly)

We must assume that D has corrected an obvious error.

539. CpS₂Dig . . . 3e me heete
Rest : . . . ye me byhete

†614. CpS₂Dig + GgH₅ + RH₄ For harmes myghten fallen . . .
 (H₄ that myht fallyn)

Rest : For harmes myghte folwen . . .

The Italian, *Che noia men potria seguire*, *Fil.* 2. 8, establishes *folwen* as the correct reading. The error is so easy a one that several scribes may well have fallen into it independently.

†767. ClCpH₁S₂Dig + J Dorstestow pat I tolde in hire eere
 (Cl telle *for* tolde)
 ADS₁RCxH₂Ph . . . that I tolde it . . .
 GgH₅H₃H₄ . . . pat I told hyre . . .

The context requires *hyre* rather than *it*: for the next line supplies a direct object for *tolde*. Apparently the γ original dropped *hire*. ADS₁ then wrongly emended the defective line by supplying *it*, the erroneous reading of H₂Ph and RCx. J has independently fallen into the γ error.

†984. ClA And yet . . .
Rest : As yet . . .

The agreement of Cl and A may well be fortuitous. Otherwise, we must assume that D has corrected an obvious slip.

In the list of readings just given the most frequent combination is that of Cp and S₂Dig; but we are not justified in arguing from this evidence for a closer relationship between any two of the units which make up the γ group. Rather we must assume that the γ original contained a number of corrections, and that in this line or that individual γ MSS. failed to incorporate the correction. These cases do not at any rate invalidate the evidence on which the existence of γ is based.

We have now to consider the MSS. belonging to the group which we have called β . They are: J, Gg, H₅, H₃, R, and Cx, all the MSS., that is, which have not previously been classified under α or γ . (With them, as will be seen presently, is occasionally associated H₄, a MS. which normally presents α readings.) These MSS. agree as against α in presenting the revised readings, and in avoiding the numerous errors of the α original, and agree as against γ in avoiding the readings which constitute that group. It will be remembered that in the case of several revised readings

γ incorporates only part of the revision. In these cases, then, β alone presents the correct revised reading. These cases, already fully discussed, are found in lines 45, 104, 143, 164, 167, and 259. If we have been correct in concluding that the β reading in these lines is the authentic revised text, we can, of course, lose no argument for the relationship of the β MSS. on these agreements. Apart from these lines, there are very few instances in which the β MSS. agree in a variant reading as against the rest. I have been able to find but a half-dozen, most of which are far from striking. The list of them follows.

JGgH₅H₃RCx (β)

60. Assegeden wel ten yer or they stente ($+ H_2^3$)

Rest: . . . neigh ten yer . . .

Note that H₂³ adopts the $\beta\gamma$ reading in 34, 57, 58, 564, where Ph and H₄ present an unrevised text. Perhaps, therefore, *wel* is a revision reading not incorporated by γ . The variation is so slight, however, that the substitution may well be due to scribal carelessness.

71. So when þat kalcas knew by calculynge
(H₅ þat whan; Cx *om.* þat)

Rest: . . . this Calkas . . .

347. And deme it harm by hir opynioun ($- Cx$)
(R *lacking*)

Rest: . . . yn hire opinyoun

361. And thought ay so on hir with outen lette ($+ H_4$)
(Gg so ay on hire; H₅ *om.* so)

Rest: . . . ay on here so . . .

(H₂Ph on her so ay; S₂Dig *om.* so)

- †585. Hath ben or this . . . ($- Cx, + D$)
(Gg *er for* or; H₃ *lacking*)

Rest: Hath ben or is . . .

(S₁ *his for* is)

719. . . . gyle ($- Cx$)

Rest: . . . wyle

These variants are of a very trivial sort, such as may easily occur independently in several MSS. In 347 R is lacking, and in

585 H₃. In 347, 585, and 719 Cx deserts the β reading. The evidence for a common descent of the β MSS. from some MS. other than Chaucer's revised original, if not negligible, is at least far from convincing.

Before seeking further evidence, it will be convenient to notice the close relationship existing between Gg and H₅, which is attested by the following selected list of agreements:

GgH₅

(Lines 1-70 are lacking in Gg owing to the loss of a leaf.)

†93. Unwyst of þis false & wekede dede (+ Cx)
(Gg Onwost)

Rest: Al vnwist . . .
(α Vnknowyng; D Al men wiste)

GgH₅ have changed the *Vnknowyng* of α to *Unwyst*, but have failed to add *Al*. Note that Cx shares the error.

176. As was Crisseyde folk seyde euerychone
(Gg fok)

Rest: . . . as folk seyde . . .
(α as þei seydyn)

186. Byholdynge alle þe ladyis . .

Rest: Byholdyng ay þe ladyis . . .
(H₄ om. ay)

197. I haue pardeux herd of ȝoure lyuyng
(Gg herd *inserted above line*; H₅ herd pardeux)

Rest: I haue herd told pardieux . . .
(H₂Ph om. pardieux)

280. . . his forme pleyinge chere
(H₅ formest; Gg pleynynge)

Rest: . . . his firste . . .
(H₄ his herte with iapyng cheer)

350. Now wel is hym . . .

Rest: Lord wel is hym . . .
(H₄ And wel)

†426. *Omit* She be

Rest: She be I not which þat ye do me serue
(H₂Ph var. See above, p. 56.)

498. But þanne felt þis troylys so meche wo
(Gg fel to *for* felt; H₅ so *inserted above later*)
Rest: . . . such wo
- †502. For þat cause he þouȝte his herte blede
(H₅ his herte ded blede)
Rest: For þat hym þought he felt his herte blede
(γ For which; J For þat cause; RH₄ he thought;
H₃Cx *lacking*)
- The GgH₅ reading is clearly wrong. In GgH₅ the construction requires the preterite *bledde*, but the rime words are *drede* and *hede*, with long close *e*. H₅ tries to emend by writing *ded blede*. Note that J shares in the error of writing *For þat cause*, but retains *he felte*. Cf. below, p. 77.
592. . . . god disport
(H₅ good; Gg *second writing of stanza good*)
Rest: . . . glad desport
- †611. . . . for now hast þou myn wo
Rest: . . . wostow . . .
(R I wot)
- †623. How del mayst þou bryngyn me to blyse
(H₅ dell)
Rest: How deuel . . .
(A *om.* deuel)
- †719. Gg And sey þou wilt it do for no gyle
H₅ And as þow wolist I do it for no gyle
Rest: And sithe þow wost I do it for no wyle
(JH₃R gyle; H₄ And weel thou wost I am with oute
wyle)
- †914. Gg And some wolde frete meche here mone alon
H₅ And some wolde frete and be hemself alone
Rest: And some wolde mucche here mete allone
(Cl wole; H₂Ph brede *for* mete; A he meten)
- †938. And neuere more wele iape whil I leue
(H₅ wole I iape)
Rest: And I shal neuere more whil I leue
(For a reading see p. 52.)
- Iape* is taken over from line 937.
(Lines 953–1029 are lacking in H₅.)

1032. þat myn lady I desyryn schulde
 (H₅ þat I my lady)

Rest: That to my lady I desiren sholde

(H₂Ph þow *for* to my, *om.* I)

(Lines 1044–1092 are lacking in Gg.)

The readings just given, the list of which might be considerably extended, make clear that Gg and H₅ are descended from a common ancestor, a lost MS. of the β type marred by a good many corruptions. Each, as may be seen from the variants given above, has independently attempted to emend the more obvious corruptions. Each has also introduced new corruptions of its own.

No other relationship, such as that which exists between Gg and H₅, can be established between any other MSS. of the β group. I at first suspected a closer relationship between R and Cx; but in support of such a relationship I have been able to gather no stronger evidence than that presented in the following list of agreements, which I give by way of contrast to the clear evidence for the relationship of Gg and H₅.

RCx

27. Han felt how þat loue . . .
 (Cx *om.* þat)

Rest: Han felt þat loue . . .

(α Fownde how love)

R and Cx retain *how* from the unrevised α reading. Cf. above, p. 36.

53. For now I wole gon . . .

Rest: For now wol I gon . . .

(H₂Ph For I will now go; H₄S₂Dig For I will go)

- †56. . . . or he deyde

Rest: . . . er she deyde

The context shows that the pronoun refers to Criseyde.

- †67. *Omit* þat (+ H₂³PhDig)

Rest: That in science so expert was þat he

165. *Omit* so (+ S₂Dig)

Rest: And namely so many . . .

(α And þat so meny)

375. *Omit* and*Rest* : Al were it wist but yn prys and vp born

849. . . . anon fortune . . . (+ Gg)

. . . fortune anoon . . .

(H₂Ph *om.* anoon)957. . . . & alwey hide (+ H₂Ph)*Rest* : . . . and ay wel hide(H₄ & ay weel yede)

The strange variant *yede* in H₄ suggests that *a* may have read *alwey*.

The evidence of this list is quite insufficient to support any argument for a relationship between R and Cx. In several cases the variant consists in retaining an H₂Ph reading. In every case the variant is so trifling that the error can well have been made independently by R and Cx, both of them copies which bristle with corruptions of a much graver sort. Moreover, this evidence, such as it is, is contradicted by that which we shall see in the next list.

If there is no clear evidence of relationships among the *β* MSS. other than that between Gg and H₅, there is, none the less, a considerable number of instances in which two or more *β* MSS. agree as against the rest. But, as in the case of the scattering agreements among the *γ* MSS. already recorded, the combinations are perpetually shifting. These scattering agreements must now be considered.

SCATTERING AGREEMENTS OF *β* MSS.86. H₃RCx . . . and openly was spokyn*Rest* : . . . and generally was spokenThe Italian reads *generalmente*, *Fil.* 1. 10.106. JR + H₂Ph . . . herde al day . . .*Rest* : . . . alday herde . . .109. JGgH₅H₃ In widewis habit blak of samyt broun*Rest* : In widewes habit large . . .

The contradiction between *blak* and *broun* would seem to mark this reading as an error. The Italian, *In abito dolente*, *Fil.* 1. 12, does not help us. The phrase *In widewes habite blak* is found in 170, where the Italian reads *in bruna vesta*, *Fil.* 1. 19.

144. $H_3CxGgH_5 + A$ For my matere . . .
Rest : Fro my matere . . .
 (α Of my matere)
195. $JGgCx + S_1$. . . she slepeth ful softe
Rest : . . . she slepeth softe
Ful has been anticipated from 196. The error may well have been made independently. Note that H_5 omits *ful*.
204. $H_3GgH_5 + H_2Ph$. . . caste vpe his browe
Rest : . . . þe browe
205. H_3GgCx . . . wele spoken
Rest : . . . wysly spoken
 Again H_5 has corrected the GgH_5 reading.
249. $GgH_5R + H_4$. . . most confortid & esed
Rest : . . . confortid most and esed
 (H_2 om. most; S_1 confortid and most esed)
399. $JRCx$. . . ye may it fynden heere
Rest : . . . he may . . .
 (H_3 lacking)
- †502. $JGgH_5$ For þat cause hym thought . . .
Rest : For þat hym þought . . .
 (γ For which; RH_4 he thought; H_3Cx lacking)
587. GgH_5Cx . . . swich a care
Rest : . . . so gret a care
Swich is repeated from 586.
- †603. $GgH_5RCx + S_2Dig$ Loue aʒens whiche . . .
Rest : Loue ayens þe which . . .
- †614. $GgH_5R + H_4 + CpS_2Dig$ For harmys myʒtyn fallyn . . .
 (H_4 that myht fallyn)
Rest : . . . folwen . . .
 (H_3 lacking)
- The Italian reads *sequire*, *Fil.* 2. 8. See above, p. 71.
- †630. $JGgH_5$ A fool may ek a wisman gyde
 (J kyde)
Rest : . . . a wys man ofte gide
 (Cl ek ofte a wys man; D eke may; H_3 lacking)
672. $GgH_5H_3CxR + H_4$ Omit yet (GgH_5 I can; Gg þat for þyn)
Rest : But to þyn help yet somewhat kan I seye

681. $\text{JH}_3\text{CxR} + \text{H}_4$ And tel me plat now what is thenchesoun
(J tenchesoun)

Rest : Omit now

(Cl pyn enchesoun ; AS_1Ph pe enchesoun ; Gg pyn
entencioun ; H_5 py sorowe soun ; Cp But *for* And)

Since *plat* is a monosyllable (cf. *Pardoner's Tale* 648, where it
rimes with *that*) the metre requires either *now* or *pe enchesoun*.
Probably *now* is a β correction not adopted by Gg H_5 .

737. $\text{JGgH}_5 + \text{H}_4 + \text{Cl}$. . . no worde . . .

Rest : . . . no thyng . . .

Worde is repeated from 736.

757. $\text{JGgH}_5\text{R} + \text{H}_4$ For oother cure . . .

Rest : Nor oþer cure . . .

(ACx Non ; $\text{H}_2\text{PhD Ne}$)

Line 756 begins with *For*.

767. $\text{H}_3\text{GgH}_5 + \text{H}_4$. . . I tolde her in hir ere

$\text{H}_2\text{PhRCxADS}_1$. . . y told it . . .

$\gamma + \text{J}$ Omit *first* her.

For a discussion of this line see above, p. 71.

- †768. JGgH_5 Omit pi self

Rest : Thi wo sith pow darst not pi self for feere

- †832. JH_3Cx . . . or pat I be ful longe

Rest : . . . or pat it be . . .

- †874. $\text{H}_5\text{Cx} + \text{H}_4$ Omit fo

(H_5 I-called)

Rest : Than is my swete fo called Criseyde

We must assume either that Gg has corrected the error, or, more
probably, that H_5 has independently made the same error as Cx
and H_4 .

- †907. JGgH_5 The sholde neuere in loue han tid thus fayre a grace

(Gg pere *for* The ; H_3 lacking)

Rest : Omit in loue

In loue is repeated from 906.

- †976. H_3 For this haue I ofte herde sey and lerede

Cx . . . herde seyð oft of lered

$\alpha + \text{R}$ For pis have y herd seyð of olde lered

$\gamma + \text{J}$. . . of wyse lered

Gg(H_5) . . . herd seyð of leryd

See the full discussion of this line on p. 52 above.

988. $H_3C_xGg(H_5)$. . . be al redy
Rest : . . . be ay redy
 (AD ay be ; H_2 al day be redy ; Ph alwey be redy)

1001. JR + S_1 . . . and moost his foos ay greue
Rest : *Omit ay*
 (ClCp H_1S_2 DigA hise foos to greue)
 For discussion of this line see above, p. 65.

1007. H_3C_x And strengest feithed as I vnderstonde
 (C x be as)
Rest : . . . feypled ben I vnderstonde

The β original must first have written *as* and then corrected to *ben*. H_3 has failed to notice the correction ; C_x has taken both *be* and *as*.

- †1024. H_3C_x Lest that the Churle falle owte of the mone
 (H_3 at *for* that)
Rest : Lest pat pe Cherl may falle out . . .
 (Cl wole *for* may ; H_2 Ph *om.* pat)
Cherl is properly monosyllabic. (O.E. *ceorl*.)

1057. JH $_3$ Til hir . . .
Rest : To here . . .

Of the various combinations recorded in the list just given that of JGg H_5 is the most strikingly attested. The combination is found in lines 502, 630, 737, 768, 907 ; and in all but the third of these instances the reading is manifestly corrupt. The combination of JGg H_5H_3 is found in 109, and JGg H_5R in 757. Moreover, both J and Gg H_5 are found in a number of other combinations. In 767 and 976 J is associated with γ . We have already noticed the tendency of Gg H_5 and of R to retain *a* readings. In one striking instance, line 640, an *a* reading is retained by JGg H_5 (see above, p. 50). Unless we are to assume a far-reaching process of contamination, an improbable assumption when the variants in question are for the most part so trivial in character, there is but one reasonable explanation of these phenomena. The β original must have been a MS. into which had been written a number of corrections. In many cases these corrections must

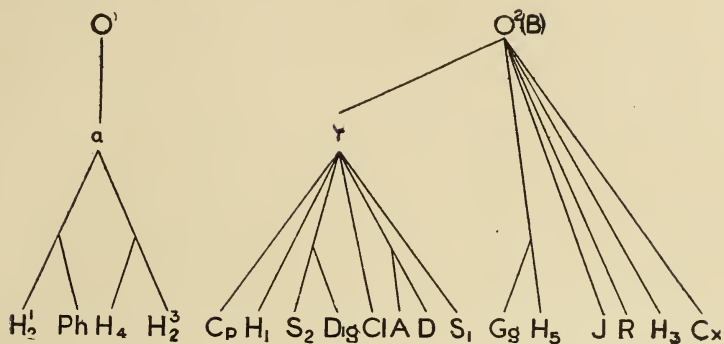
have been indicated in such a fashion that a careless scribe was in danger of overlooking them, and consequently of copying the erroneous readings. From this MS. are descended along independent lines of transmission the five units which compose β : GgH₅, J, R, H₃, and Cx. In one line an uncorrected reading was taken over by the ancestors of H₃ and of Cx, in another by the ancestors of J and of GgH₅, etc. To a confused reading in the β original may also be due some of the unique variants, found only in a single extant MS., which are so frequent in MSS. of the β group. Moreover, since individual units or combinations of units of the β group occasionally retain α readings, we must assume that these α readings were found in the β original, but corrected between the lines, or in the margin, to the normal β reading.

It will be remembered how few are the instances in which all six of the β MSS. agree in a reading against the rest. Indeed, the evidence on which we are justified in associating them into a single group is only that of the scattering agreements just given. It will follow, then, that the β original was so carefully corrected that, with its corrections, it presents a text virtually free from manifest corruptions. Such a successful correction must have been the work of a very careful and intelligent editor. All the facts can be best accounted for on the hypothesis—to be discussed later—that the β original was fundamentally an α MS. in which had been made all the changes required by the revision, and in which all the errors of its original scribe had been carefully corrected.

From this same revised and corrected β original was apparently derived also the γ original. γ , it will be remembered, fails at times to incorporate the whole of a revision, precisely as do individual units of β . In the list of γ readings will be found a number of instances in which the γ reading is shared by one or more β MSS. These instances are exactly analogous to those in which two or more of the β units agree in a variant reading as against the rest. It would appear, then, that the γ original is to be regarded, throughout Book I, as a β MS. This very important conclusion must be discussed at full length after we have had a chance to appraise the evidence furnished by the remaining books.

The conclusions at which we have arrived as to the relationship

of the MSS. in Book I may be graphically presented in the following form :



O¹ represents Chaucer's original autograph, of which *a* is a copy. O² represents a copy of the original autograph, carefully corrected, and then extensively revised.

The only serious evidence which tends to impair the correctness of this conclusion is found in the vagaries of H₄. Though H₄ shares in all the significant *a* readings, it shows a tendency, more marked in the latter part of Book I, to associate itself with MSS. of the *β* group. In the list of scattering agreements of *β* MSS. (pp. 76-79) H₄ agrees with two or more *β* MSS. in the following lines: 249, †614, 672, 681, 737, 757, 767, †874. In no case is the variant a very striking one; but the number of instances is considerable. Moreover, there are a number of lines in which H₄ agrees with a single *β* MS. against the combined testimony of all the remaining MSS. These cases are presented in the following table :

SCATTERING AGREEMENTS OF H₄.

†200.	H₄H₃	. . . the keypyng of dotances
Rest :		. . . which doutances
235.	H₄	The fredam of your herte to hym make thrall
	R	. . . hertes maken thralle
Rest :		. . . hertes to hym pralle

The reading of H₄ is a conflation of the normal reading and R.

386. H_4R And ouer al this ful moche more he thouht
(H_4 *om.* al)

γ . . . yet muche more . . .

Rest : *Omit* ful

(Ph *om.* al)

This line is discussed above, p. 62.

405. H_4Cl . . . may me so goodly thynke

Rest : . . . may to me sauory thinke

(R may me so sauery)

Note the connection with R. The substitution of *goodly* for *sauory* in H_4 and Cl must be regarded as an accidental coincidence.

498. $H_4H_2^3R$ *Omit* þis.

Rest : þis Troylus.

Cf. above, p. 59.

613. H_4Cx . . . I tolde it neuer to no mo

(Cx *om.* to)

Rest : . . . to mo

725. H_4Cx . . . he laide his ere

Rest : . . . he lente his eere

(H_2PhGg bent)

833. H_4 To peces ellis do me drawe & sethe honge

Cx And ellis to pecis do me drawe and honge

Rest : To pieces do me drawe and sithen honge

(A *om.* sithen ; Gg sythe me honge)

884. $H_4R + D$ Of hir estat ne gladder of hir speche

(D ne of hir speche)

Rest : . . . ne gladder ne of speche

(Cl ne a gladder ; H_2PhCx *om.* *second* ne ; H_1S_1 nor
for *second* ne)

889. H_4R A kyngis herte bi heris semyth a wrechche

Rest : . . . semeth by hires . . .

(H_2PhGgH_3A by her ; D to hir)

Though none of these variants is very striking, taken together they suggest some sort of a cross-relation between H_4 and R and H_4 and Cx. In the only case, line 498, where H_2^3 exists, it also goes with R, so that the relation may be assumed to involve the $H_4H_2^3$ parent. H_2^3 agrees with R in line 57 in reading *how*

instead of *how pat*, a trifling agreement, and with H_3 and S_1 in line 5 in reading *I parte you froye* instead of *I parte froye*. In both these cases H_4 is normal. For the present we must be content to record this cross-relation without an attempt at explanation.

CHAPTER III.

THE MANUSCRIPT RELATIONS IN BOOK II.

THE MS. relations in Book II present a problem of peculiar complication, much more difficult of solution than that offered in Book I. Though the variant readings in which two or more of the MSS. agree are very numerous, they are for the most part of a rather trifling character. Very few are the instances in which there is clear ground for regarding the variation as due to deliberate revision. Such clear revision readings as exist occur between lines 701 and 1113. Moreover, several MSS., notably GgH_5 and H_4 , alternate in their allegiance between H_2Ph on the one hand, and the β group on the other, to such an extent that the distinction between α and β is all but obliterated. Of the three main groups, γ alone maintains its integrity. It is represented by the same MSS. as in Book I, save that at about line 617 S_1 ceases to belong to the group, and that at line 1034, where a new handwriting begins, H_3 joins it.

It will be convenient, then, to begin by presenting the list of variant readings which characterize γ . It is as follows:

$ClCpH_1S_2DigAD [S_1] [H_3]$

(After line 617 S_1 ceases to be regularly a γ MS. Its occasional agreements with γ after that point are specifically noted. H_3 becomes regularly a γ MS. at line 1034.)

37. . . . or alwey o manere

Rest : . . . ne alwey . . .

(JH_3 nor alwey)

39. If $\beta at pei ferd yn loue . . . (+ Cx)$

($ClCx om. \beta at$)

Rest : Yif that men ferde . . .

84 *The Manuscript Relations in Book II.*

51. . . . blew and white and rede (— S₂DigS₁, + J)

Rest : *Omit first and.* (H₂Ph var.)

69. . . . Tireux . . .

(H₁ Tryeux ; A Cireux)

Rest : . . . Tereus . . .

(J Tereux ; H₃ Terous ; H₅ Terius ; H₂Ph Thereus)

†86. With al yowre faire bok & al þe companye

(Cp and al the faire compaignie ; S₁ om. al ; A the *for*
yowre)

Rest : *Omit faire*

(Cx om. *first* al ; R eek *for second* al ; H₅ youre *for*
þe ; H₄ & your companye)

A hypermetrical line in γ .

87. Ey vncle myn welcome . . .

(D A *for* Ey)

Rest : Ey vncle now . . .

(GgH₅H₄ om. now)

133. As help me god I not not what ye mene (— S₂Dig, + H₃)

(S₁ I wote nat ; A I not what it may mene ; D I not
what þat ye mene)

Rest : . . . I not what ye meene

(Gg as I not what ; R So helpe me god as I not what)

Since *not* is monosyllabic, the $\alpha\beta$ reading is metrically deficient.
Gg and R have attempted an emendation. Note the uncertainty
in γ .

176. . . . no more . . .

Rest : . . . no thing . . .

(GgH₅H₄ nou3t)

192. He myght haue wondred vpon Troylus

Rest : *Omit He*

γ has emended a nine-syllable line.

224. . . . þus faire an auenture (— S₂Dig)

(DS₁ so faire)

Rest : . . . so glade . . .

(H₅S₂Dig om. an)

†239 Y wys vncle quod she grant mercy (— S₂Dig, + H₃)

Rest : I wis my vncle . . .

272. There as . . . (— S_2 Dig)
Rest : Wher as . . .
283. But yf . . .
Rest : And if . . .
286. But right his verray sloupe . . . (— S_2 Dig)
Rest : . . . his owne slouth . . .
 The context favours *owne* rather than *verray*.
309. Now good Em for goddes loue I prey
 (Cp And *for* Now)
Rest : Now my good Em . . .
 (GgH₅ *om.* good)
 A nine-syllable line in γ .
383. But alwey good nece . . .
Rest : But good nece alwey . . .
- †406. Nece I bidde wisshe yow no more sorwe
Rest : *Omit* Nece
 A hypermetrical line in γ .
- †432. I se ful wel þat ye sette lite of vs
 (D on *for* of)
Rest : *Omit* ful
465. For myn estat lyth now in Iupartie
 (Cl now lyth ; H₁ in a Iupartye ; S_2 Dig in partye)
Rest : . . . lith in a Iupartye.
 (JGgH₅PhCx *om.* a)
491. But may I truste wel þerto quod he
 (Cl trust ; D wel trust ; A *om.* wel)
Rest : . . . to yow quod he
 (H₅ *om.* wel)
508. In with þe paleys gardyn . . . (— DS_2 Dig)
 (H₁ In whiche)
Rest : With in . . .
516. And I perafter gan . . . (— AD)
 JR And I afer gan . . .
 AD And after gan I . . .
 H₂Ph And yn a fere gan . . .
Rest : And I after gan . . .

Apparently JR alone retain the correct reading. See below, p. 119.

591. O mercy . . .

Rest: A mercy . . .

†597. . . . he was glad . . . (— AD, + H₂Ph)

Rest: . . . so he was glad . . . (A as he; Gg how he;
H₅ that he)

†617 For oþer weye is to the yate noon
(ClDig is þer to the yate)

Rest: . . . fro the yate non
(J is ther fro; H₄ fro the yates is there non)

The context makes clear that the correct reading is *fro*.

(After line 617, S₁ ceases to be normally a γ MS.)

†737 Of al þis ilke noble town þe þryftiest (— S₂Dig)
(A *om.* al)

Rest: *Omit* ilke.
(JRH₄ Of wommen in this world)

†745 Al wolde I þat noon wyste of þis þought
(S₂Dig Al 3if I wolde)

Rest: . . . no man . . .

801. And coye hem þey sey noon harm of me
(H₁ hym *for* hem; AS₂(Dig) hem that sey)

Rest: And coye hem þat they seyn . . .
(Gg *om.* they)

808. No þyng nacheueth . . .
(ClD ne acheueth)

Rest: No thing acheueth . . .
(H₂Ph eschewip)

†815. . . . þere made many a wente
(AD þere made þei; S₂(Dig) þer made she)

Rest: . . . they maden many a wente

816. Flexippe she . . . (+ S₁)

Rest: Flexippe and she . . .

91. The parfit blysse of loue why nay y wys (+ J)
(D we *for* why)

Rest: *Omit* why. (S₁ nay nay)

†904. The dayes honour and þe heuenes heighe (— AD, + R)
(CpH₁ heye; S₂(Dig) hye heucnes ye; R hye)

Rest: . . . the heuenes eye

937. . . . ful faste (+ S₁)

Rest: . . . so faste

943. . . . and seyde lord so ye swete (— AD, + H₂ Ph)

Rest: Omit so

947. They spedde hem fro þe souper vnto bedde (+ S₁)
(ClAD om. þe)

Rest: . . . and to bedde
(H₂Ph from her soper to her bed)

949. . . . vpon his way he spedde (— DS₂(Dig))

Rest: . . . him spedde
(H₃ here wey hem spedde; J spede)

†950 But Troilus poughte his herte bledde

Rest: But Troilus þat thought . . .
(H₂PhH₄GgH₅ om. But)

956. At short wordes pow shalt trowe me
(G₂ (Dig) And for At)

Rest: . . . truste in me
(H₂PhH₄ trust to me; RH₅ trust on me; Gg trostyn
in me; S₁ trusten me)

960. . . . I haue . . . (— AD, + H₃)

Rest: . . . haue I . . .

963. And also . . .

Rest: And therto . . .

†977. A pousand Troians who so þat me yaue (— AD)

Rest: A thousand Troyes . . .

The Italian reads: *se donate Gli fosser mille Troie, Fil. 2. 81.*

1005. Of myn owene hond write here right now (+ J)

Rest: Right of myn owne honde write her right now
(H₂PhH₄ write her now; Cx wryte to her now; S₁ to
hir; H₅ wryte hir as now)

1009. . . . wil . . . (+ S₁)

. . . shal . . .

(At line 1034, with a change in handwriting, H₃ becomes a
 γ MS.)

1055. Of here hond . . .
Rest : Right of hir hond . . .
 Cf. line 1005.
- †1109. . . . lok alwey ye fynde ($- H_3$)
Rest : . . . lok alwey pat ye fynde
 (GgR pat 3e alwey fynde)
1113. For which I come to telle yow newe tidynges ($- AH_3$)
 (CI I am come ; H_1 *om.* to ; DS_2 Dig and *for* to)
Rest : For which come I to telle yow tidynges
 (JH_4 For whi ; R For thy ; $H_3CxH_5S_1A$ I come ; H_3
 to bringe you tydynges ; H_5 and telle yow suche
 thingis ; R to telle new tydynges)
- If *telle* is given its full value as a dissyllable, the γ reading is hypermetrical. *Newe* has apparently crept into the line from 1112. The participation of R in the reading *new*, and the variations of the other MSS., suggest that the confusion lies back of the γ original, and point to an error, subsequently corrected, in the common original of β and γ . Note the uncertainty as to *I come* or *come I*.
1143. . . . pe grettest wonder
Rest : . . . pe moste wonder
 (*All but* H_4Gg *most*)
1202. And held hise hondes vp and sat on knowe ($+ S_1$)
 (CI honde ; D hond ; S_2 (Dig) vp his hondes)
Rest : . . . and fel on knowe
 (H_5 & knelid lowe)
1225. She wolde fayne . . .
Rest : She wolde ay fayn . . .
 (H_5 ay be fayen, be *inserted above*)
1240. But ye han played tyraunt . . . ($- AH_3 + S_1$)
Rest : . . . the tirant . . .
 (H_4 the ryrawnt)
1280. . . . but for hire lakked routhe ($- ADH_3$)
 (Dig *om.* lakked)
Rest : . . . hir lakke of routhe
 (H_4Cx *om.* hir ; R the *for* hir)

- †1291. And whi for shame and it were ek to soone (+ S₁)
 (H₃ eke it were)
Rest: And whi for speche . . .
 (H₂Ph For why; J *om.* ek; Cx eke it were; H₅ for
 speche yt were not to don; H₄ And whi for this
 & that dowey my downe)
 The context makes clear that *for speche* is the correct reading.
1316. Yf pow do forth with al pi besynesse (+ S₁)
Rest: So pat thow do forth with thy bysynesse
 (H₂PhGg *om.* with; H₄ weel *for* with; J al *inserted*
above by contemporary hand; R So thow thyself do
 forth thy bysynesse)
1344. . . . he wrot somewhat . . .
 JRCxS₁H₅ . . . he somewhat wrot . . .
 (J what *inserted above by scribe*)
 H₂PhH₄Gg . . . sumwhat he wrote . . .
1347. And after pat pese dees turnede on chaunces (— AD)
 (H₃ *om.* pat, fellen *for* turnede; Dig And after this is
 tornyd)
Rest: . . . his dees . . .
 (J hise; A dedes)
1387. And . . . (— H₃)
 (S₂Dig For . . .)
Rest: But . . .
 (H₄ As . . .)
1394. But Troylus yet telle me yf pe lyste (— AD)
 (S₂Dig *om.* yet; H₁ pat *for* yet)
Rest: . . . now telle me . . .
 (H₂PhS₁ *om.* now; Gg telle me now; AD telle now
 me; R *om.* me; S₁R if pat the lest)
1395. A ping now which pat I shal axen pe (— D, + S₁)
 (H₃ *om.* pat)
 H₂PhH₅ A thing which y shal axyn pe (H₅ at pe)
 Gg A pyng wich pat I schal axens pe (*axens corrected*
from a3ens)
 RCx A thing the which pat . . .
 J . . . which pat I schal now . . .
 H₄ . . . which I shal now . . .
 D . . . pat I shal now . . .

In this line and in 1394 we have characteristic examples of the confusion which is frequent in Book II. In each line we must assume that in the original of all the MSS. the position of *now* had been transposed, with the result that certain copies of this original adopted one order, others another, and that still others omitted the word altogether. In 1394 the γ original omitted *now* as did also H_2Ph . Yet is a correction written into the γ original and so transmitted to $ClCpH_1H_3$; the reading of AD seems to be a lucky emendation of the deficient line.

1426. No more to speke . . . (+ S_1)

Rest: No moore of this . . .

1429, 1430. But telle me, þat wost alle pis matere,

How I myght best auaylen, now lat se (+ S_1)

(H_1 me inserted above by scribe; S_1D of for alle;

A how þou wost of this matere; H_3 myght I)

Rest: But telle me how, thow woost of this matere,

It myght best auailen, now lat se

(H_2Ph how for þou wost; R how for thow knowest this; Cx But tel me for thou wost thys; Gg wolt for wost; H_4 om. of; R It myght her best; H_2Ph now auailyn; H_4 om. It; Cx I myght hyr best)

Since *myghte* is properly a dissyllable, the γ reading is slightly less metrical. The reading of A:

But telle me how þou wost of this matere

How I myght best auailen . . .

would indicate that the trouble in the γ original began by prefixing *How* to line 1430. The repetition of *how*, preserved by A, was then corrected by substituting *pou þat* for *how þou*. Note that DS_1 preserve *of* instead of *alle*. The parenthetical *thow woost of this matere* led in H_2Ph and R to a scribal insertion of *for*, and in Cx to the substitution of *for* for *how*.

1439. . . . to here cause . . . (+ S_1)

Rest: . . . in hir cause . . . (Cx om. in)

1493. . . . and forth gan for to wende (— H_3)

Rest: . . . and forth he gan to wende

(Cx om. and)

- †1504. But wel wot I þow art now yn drede ($- H_3$)
 (Cl yow *for* þow)
 H_2PhH_4RCx . . . in a drede
 (H_4 *om.* in; Cx *om.* now)
 $JGgH_5H_3S_1$. . . þat thow art now in drede

The γ reading is metrically deficient. Again we seem to have a correction made in the common original, a deletion of α and an insertion of *þat*, only partially incorporated in γ .

- †1585. To preyse a man and with prys hym reyse ($+ H_4$)
Rest: . . . and vp with pris . . .

The γ reading is metrically deficient.

1590. Herde al pis þyng Criseyde wel ynowh
 (S_2Dig thyngis)
Rest: Herde alwey this . . .
 (Gg *om.* þis; Cx Herd al this; H_4 This herde alwey)

1602. *Omit* it ($+ Cx$)

1624. To ben hire helpe . . .
Rest: To be hir frend . . .
 (H_2PhS_1 frendes)

- †1663. He wole me telle . . . ($- ADH_3$)
Rest: He wol yow telle . . .
 ($GgRH_4$ it *for* yow)

The context makes clear that *yow* is the correct reading.

1665. . . of þis entent ($- H_3, + S_1Cx$)
Rest: . . . of his entente

- †1669. And seyde ywys ye moste alweyes aryse
 (H_3 And seid always ye wüst ye must aryse)
Rest: . . . algate arise

The context shows that *algate* is correct.

1746. And þough . . .
Rest: That thogh . . .

In the list just given, a number of instances have been cited in which one or more of the γ MSS., notably AD and S_2Dig , fail to support the γ reading. A few other cases of partial γ readings, all of a trivial character, may be noted. In 221 $CpH_1S_2DigS_1 + J$ omit *and*. In 1013 CpH_1 substitute *it* for *ne* (omitted by H_3 and R). In 1181 $ClCpH_1D$ omit *hym*. In 1517 $CpH_1S_2DigH_8$

begin the line with *And*, ClAD + S₁ + H₂Ph with *So*, and the remaining MSS. with *Soone*. In 1649 ClH₁ omit *hym*.

Within the γ group, the close relationship of S₂ and Dig, already noted in Book I, has been illustrated by the variants given in the list of γ readings. From among a multitude of additional instances may be noted the following: In 57 S₂Dig omit *wyse*; in 225 omit *for loue of god*; in 449 read *dyed* for *starf*; in 653 omit *lo*; in 678 omit *good*; in 1116 read *Whiche þat* for *With þat*; in 1240 read *alle* for *neigh*; in 1311 read *And bourded thus* for *Yburyed þus*.

A close relationship within the γ group between A and D is attested by the following readings, in addition to those already cited among the variants in the list of γ agreements:

AD.

21. . . . wel juge . . . (+ Cx)
Rest: . . . Iuggen wel . . .
159. *Omit* þat (+ J)
185. . . . what he doth (+ H₄)
Rest: . . . þat he doth
189. Of men . . .
Rest: Of hem . . .
206. . . . frenshepe . . . (- S₁)
Rest: . . . felawship . . .
209. His leue tok . . . (+ S₁)
Rest: He tok his leue . . .
 (H₃Cx Toke of hem leue)
211. . . . very so soone (+ H₄)
Rest: . . . þus very soone
 (H₅ þus very so sone; H₂Ph werysom)
225. . . . for the loue of god . . . (+ H₄)
Rest: . . . for loue of god . . .
248. . . . fremde . . .
Rest: Lat be to me youre frende manere speche
 (Cl *om.* to me, frendly; Gg frendely; H₅ fraynyd;
 H₃ this freinde; S₁ fryend; H₄ freend this maner
 of speche; RCx *lacking*)

The context makes clear that *fremde* is correct. This reading, in which AD alone present the true form of the word, must be regarded as a happy emendation on the part of the AD parent MS. Th reads *fremed*.

267. . . . this . . .

Rest : . . . þus . . .

292. A . . . longer of it process make

D . . . of it lengere proces make

Rest : . . . lengere proces of it make

(RH₅ om. of it; H₂PhH₄H₃ to yow *for* of it; Cx
lacking)

347. *Omit* þat wight.

489. *Omit* Ne

497. Why nay . . .

Rest : Why no . . .

522. *Omit* hym

664. . . . that it was routhe (+ H₄)

(D is *for* was)

Rest : . . . it was a roupe

(H₂PhH₅ it were routhe; Gg it were a reuthe)

692. 3if it were so . . .

Rest : If it so were . . .

851. That is . . . (+ S₁)

Rest : This is . . .

905. . . . and þis . . .

Rest : . . . al þis . . .

(RH₄ and all this; R *has deleted* and)

1152. Ne wheþer . . . (+ S₁)

Rest : Or wheþer . . .

(ClCpH₁H₃ + J And wheþer)

1168. *Omit* so

1298. . . . monthes two (+ S₁)

(A monthes thre, *with change of rime in 1296*)

Rest : . . . yeres two

1312. . . . so help me . . .

Rest : . . . helpe me so . . .

1552. To ben here frend with al his ful myght (+ H₃)

Rest: To ben here fulle frend with al his myght

1755. Fully to day . . .

Rest: Fully to dye . . .

(H₂PhGgH₅ dethe)

1757. . . . may . . .

Rest: . . . shal . . .

The evidence presented above makes it clear that the conclusions arrived at in Book I as to the character of γ hold also for Book II: that the MSS. of this group are descended from a common ancestor, not Chaucer's original; that in this common ancestor had been made a number of corrections which individual MSS. of the group fail to incorporate; that none of the readings characteristic of the group is of such a character as to warrant us in assuming deliberate revision; and that within the group S₂Dig and AD constitute sub-groups. We may also notice the frequent cases in which S₁ or H₄ agree with AD, but an attempt to account for these agreements must be deferred till later.

The close relationship noted in Book I between H₂ and Ph is equally clear in Book II. It may be illustrated by the following selected list of representative examples:

H₂Ph.

14. *Omit out*

Rest: But out of latyn . . .

A nine-syllable line.

†26. H₂ *Line written by later hand in space left blank.*

Ph *Line written by later hand in margin.*

†29-35. Stanzas 5 and 6 follow stanza 7. This cannot be a correct order, since line 49, the last line of stanza 7, is clearly meant to conclude the proem and introduce the second book. The common original of H₂Ph may be descended from a MS. in which these stanzas were written in the margin. Were they, perhaps, a later addition? The sense is complete without them.

35. . . . no wondur thyng

Rest: . . . no wonderynge

- †51. That al flouris fressshyn grene and rede
Rest : That fresshe floures blewe white and rede
 (ClCpH₁AD + J blew and white)
- †60. Hit made his hewe al day ful grene
Rest : . . . a day ful ofte grene
 (R ful often pale & grene ; Cx ful oft a day grene)
- †130. Hit shold be some iape I trowe y-wis
Rest : . . . is pis
 (H₃CxA hit ys)
Hit shold be completes the sense of 129. H_2Ph was misled by the running over of the sense, and attempts to make a unit of 130.
147. To axen . . . (H₂ aske)
Rest : Nor axen . . . (RCx Ne axen)
170. But be myn heed . . .
Rest : But be my troupe . . .
305. . . . to 3ow be now as newe
Rest : . . . as now be to yow newe
 (H₄Cx be now as)
380. And couere 3ow . . .
Rest : And wre yow . . .
 (H₁ were ; *others* wry, wrye, wri, wrie)
408. And she bygan to wepe right anone
 (Ph. *om.* right)
Rest : . . . to brest a wep anoon
 (A a wepyng ; DCxH₅ to wep ; GgS₁ and wepe ; R on wepe ; H₃ to breste on and wepe)
- Though the H_2 reading is in every way a possible one, the omission of *right* by Ph suggests that *right* is an emendation by H_2 to repair a line made defective by the loss of *to brest*. Note that DCxH₅ read *to wep*.
- †421, 422. What is pis al pe ioy & al pe fest
 þat 3e of so made . . .
 (Ph *om.* pis)
Rest : What is pis al pe Ioye and al pe feste
 Is þis youre red . . .
 (Cl þat *for first* pis)

- †509. Line omitted by H₂ and space left blank. In Ph the line is added in the margin.
516. . . . rennyn . . . (Ph renne)
Rest : . . . rome . . .
- †663. . . . pauour . . . (Ph *corrected over erasure to fauour*)
Rest : . . . fauour . . .
- †729. Now set y a cas thus ywys
Rest : Now set a cas þe hardest is ywys
 (Cl wys *for* ywys; R *om.* is; H₄ Now I sette cas the hardest is this)
- †745. As wold y . . .
Rest : Al wolde I . . .
 (S₂Dig Al 3if I wolde)
- †816. . . . Tarke and Anteigne
Rest : . . . Tarbe and Antigone
 (ClCpH₁S₂(Dig) Tharbe)
850. And þankyð be þow god . . .
Rest : And þonked be ye lord . . .
 (JGgH₅R thow *for* ye; Cx the *for* ye; H₅ *om.* lord)
God is repeated from 848, where the pronoun is *yow*.
- †912. And voydyd were þo þat voyd shold out
 (Ph voydyn shul out)
Rest : . . . þat voyden oughthe
 (Gg wooldyn; H₅ voden *corrected to* volden; owth)
 The rime words in 914, 915 are *brought* and *poght*.
- †1083. Line written later in space originally blank, in H₂ by hand 3, in Ph by the scribe. For full discussion of this important line, see below, p. 110.
- †1104. What manere wynd gydith 3ow hidir here
Rest : . . . wyndes gydeth yow now here
 (S₂Dig of wyndes; H₄RCx wynd; D loue *for* wyndes
 H₄R now you; A *om.* yow; Gg *om.* now)
- †1105. *Omit* Ioly
Rest : Tel vs youre Ioly wo and youre penaunce
- †1130. . . . and seyð hym till
Rest : . . . and seyde scryt ne bille
 (H₄ shewith no bill; H₅ scryt *inserted above*)

1155. And in her bosom down þe lettre cast

Rest: . . . down the lettre he thraste
(γ GgH₅ þe lettre down; H₄RCx *om.* he; Dig caste)

The agreement of Dig with H₂Ph must be fortuitous. Note that H₄RCx omit *he*.

1196. How like ye þe lettre þat he wrote

Rest: How liketh yow þe lettre þat ye wot
(H₄ that ye of wot)

Either reading is intrinsically possible, and the Italian, *chente Ti par lo scriver dell' amico mio*, *Fil.* 2. 118, offers no clear guidance. The phrase *þat ye wot* is more in keeping with the general tone of Pandarus' insinuating manner. The rime word in 1197 is *I not*.

1286. Lete be 3our nycete . . .

Rest: Lat be youre nice shame . . .
(H₅ nycete shame; R nyce fare)

The conflate reading of H₅ (we must assume that the closely related Gg, which reads *nyse schame*, has corrected an obvious error) points to a common ancestor in which an original *nycete* was altered to read *nyce shame*. Perhaps *nycete* should be regarded as an authentic *a* reading.

†1347. And after þat his dees turnyd in good chaunces

Rest: . . . turnede on chaunces
(H₃ fellen; H₄ turned ascance)

†1434. Come vnto 3our hous her pleyntis to devise

(H₂ 3our *for* her)
Rest: Com vnto yow . . .

1513. . . . to nyght . . .

Rest: . . . ouer nyght . . .

1554. As to pray . . .

Rest: As for to bydde . . .

Pray is repeated from 1553.

†1621. . . . tarien

Rest: . . . varyen

Tarien is anticipated from 1622.

1677. . . . ful hertily

Rest: . . . right hertely
(H₄D *om.* right)

Of the 34 instances of H_2Ph agreements just given, by far the greater number are clear cases of error, for which the responsibility need not be traced back of their common ancestor. In seven cases (305, 850, 1083, 1104, 1155, 1286, 1677) the reading of some of the remaining MSS. suggests that the confusion lies further back. In some eight instances H_2Ph present a possible variant reading, but the variation is of a trifling character. The only instance in which we have anything which looks in the least like a revision reading is 1286.

Line 26, as we have seen, has been written by H_2^3 . The relationship of H_2^3 and H_4 , already noted in Book I, is attested in this line by the reading *And did as well*, where the remaining MSS. read *And sped as well*.

It will be convenient to present next the evidence for the continued relationship in Book II of Gg and H_5 . This relationship is attested by the fact that GgH_5 appear together in certain combinations to be discussed later, and by a considerable number of agreements in error, of which the following list gives a representative selection.

GgH_5 .

(Lines 1-84 are lacking in Gg.)

- †97. It is of loue . . .
Rest : Is it of loue . . .
139. . . . ne in pe toun of troye
Rest : . . . yn al pe toun . . .
154. . . . & pe grekys 3erde
Rest : . . . and grekes yerde
- †221. *Omit* yet
- †246. . . . I schal 3ow beseche
Rest : *Omit* schal
- †307. *Omit* þyng
- †461. What men wolde of it don . . .
Rest : . . . deme . . .
- †663. *Omit* most.
- †839. . . . onworpi . . .
Rest : . . . vnwery . . .

- †840. Gg þat euere was with harm vice disteyned
 H_5 þat euere was and lest with vice disteynyd
 Rest : . . . and lest with harm desteyned
 ($CIH_1AH_3H_2Ph$ disteyned ; H_4 disseynd)
 Gg has incorporated a correction, but in most clumsy fashion.
- †856. . . . þow he fele in his herte distres
 Rest : . . . yn it distresse
- †1024. I wot þou nylt dyneleche ne mystileche endite
 . . . it digneliche endite
 (J clerkissly ; R papally ; H_4 clergaly, *om.* it ; Cx
 clerkly)
- †1265. *Omit* all
1598. . . . hem pouzte . . . (H_5 though)
 Rest : . . . hem oughte . . .
- †1687. . . . quod þe quene elyne
 Rest : . . . quod Eleyne þe queene
 (R heleyne tho the queene)

The rime word in 1686 is *sustene* which GgH_5 and other MSS. spell *susteyne*.

For the relationship of the γ MSS., of H_2Ph , and of GgH_5 , the evidence is clear and unmistakable, despite the not infrequent cases in which the work of a corrector has intervened to confuse the characteristic readings. But beyond these three relationships nothing is clear. Various relationships, based on community of readings, seem to establish themselves, only to be demolished by the evidence of other agreements which flatly contradict the hypotheses. The more one attempts to educe order from the chaos, the greater becomes the confusion ; so that in the end one is compelled to regard this confusion itself as the most important evidence on which to build any theory of ultimate relationship. Such a theory I shall presently venture ; but for the moment I wish the reader to recognize the extent of the confusion. To this end I shall present a number of tables to illustrate the more striking examples of apparent relationship.

Besides the three units, γ , H_2Ph , and GgH_5 , there remain the following MSS. : H_4 , J , R , Cx , S_1 (normally included in γ up to line 617), and H_3 (normally included in γ from line 1034). We must deal, then, with eight units, and between lines 617 and

1033 with nine units. With nine units, the number of possible combinations of two, three, or four units is 246; and of this number of possible combinations a large proportion actually occurs; but certain combinations are much more frequent than the rest. We shall begin by illustrating certain combinations in which H_2Ph constitute one of the units, since here, if anywhere, we should expect to find traces of *a* readings. The combination H_2PhH_4 , so strikingly attested in Book I, may be illustrated by the following list of readings—

H_2PhH_4 .

5. . . . pis . . . (+ D)
Rest: . . . pe . . . (H_3 *om.* pe)
20. Ne wondrip not . . .
Rest: No wonder is . . .
22. . . . pis . . .
Rest: . . . pat . . .
33. And penkyth pus . . .
Rest: And penketh so . . .
35. . . . me semith it . . .
 (H_4 *om.* it)
Rest: . . . but it is me . . .
 (H_3H_5 to me; Cx unto me it is; GgR *lacking*)
40. . . . in opyn delyng . . .
Rest: . . . in opyn doying . . .
Delyng seems to be a preferable reading.
46. . . . al is done . . . (+ Th)
Rest: . . . al is seyde . . .
48. . . . as y have begun
Rest: . . . syn I haue begonne
 (H_3 sithen it is begonne)
57. This Pandare . . .
Rest: That Pandarus . . .
217. Whil pat pei two had . . .
Rest: Whil they two hadde . . .
 (Cl Whil pat pey hadde)

292. . . . processe to yow make (+ H_3)
Rest : . . . proces of it make
 (RH₅ om. of it; A of it process; D of it lengere
 proces)
- †330. *Omit* whiche (+ H_3)
 (Cx om. pat)
- †349. *Omit* pere (+ Cx + Cp)
 (JGg ne for pere)
376. . . . pank & pris . . . (+ A)
Rest : . . . prys and pank . . .
398. To late y was ware . . .
 (Ph was y ware)
Rest : To late ywar . . .
454. . . . eke pat might fal . . . (+ J)
Rest : . . . pat myghte ek fallen . . .
 (H₅A om. ek)
512. So aftir pat . . .
Rest : Soone after that . . .
588. þat mighty god . . . (+ H_3)
Rest : Ther myghty god . . .
 (H₅Cx All my3ti god)
675. To like hym po . . . (+ Th)
Rest : To lyke hym first . . .
713. H₂ Now were y a fole . . .
 Ph Now were y not wys . . .
 H₄ I were not wis . . .
Rest : Now were I wys . . .
 (R Were I than wis)
- †758. *Omit* yf
783. . . . sit wepe & think (+ Cx)
 (H₄ sitte & wepe or thynke)
Rest : . . . wepe and sitte and þynke
 (Gg or for second and; A these words in much later
 hand)

1005. . . . write her now (+ Cx)
(Cx to her)

Rest: . . . write here right now
(S₁ to hir; H₅ as *for* right)

On this line cf. above, p. 87.

1189. . . . come for to byhold (+ Cx)
Rest: . . . gan for to byholde
(GgH₅A *om.* for)

- †1399. . . . or oures prires twelve
Rest: . . . er owres twyes twelue

1500. Leve not . . . (+ RCx)
Rest: Lat not . . .

1696. And had . . . (+ S₁Cx)
Rest: And fond . . .

The readings noted above present in every case variations of a very trifling sort, in striking contrast to the clear revision readings of H₂PhH₄ in Book I. Though among these variant readings there are few cases of unmistakable error, the H₂PhH₄ reading is nearly always inferior. It will be noted that nine of the 27 instances noted fall within the first 57 lines, and that all but five fall before line 1000.

In the list of H₂PhH₄ readings just given there are a number of instances in which Cx shares in the variant reading. We may next consider a number of instances in which a variant reading is presented by H₂Ph and Cx.

H₂PhCx.

- †354. *Omit* alle
677. Made love wipin her hert for to myne (+ H₃ + S₂Dig)
(Ph to enclayne; Cx in *for* wipin)
Rest: *Omit* hert
(R in her inwardly)

Without *hert*, the line is possible, though somewhat halting, if we give full dissyllabic value to *made* and *love*. With a properly dissyllabic *herte*, *made* and *love* must be read as monosyllables. The reading of S₂Dig must be attributed to contamination.

- †899. *Omit* here

- †964. H_2 Algate sumwhat y have lessid pi sorow
Cx Algate one foote is lissed of thy sorowe
Rest: Algate a fot is hameled of pi sorwe
(H_5 shortid *for* hameled)

Note that Ph does not share the error. The agreement of H_2 and Cx in reading *lessid* or *lissed* may be coincidence.

1429. . . . how for pou woost . . . (+ R)
(Cx *om.* how; R knowest)
 $JGgH_5H_4 + A$. . . how thow woost . . .
 $\gamma(-A)S_1$. . . pow pat wost . . .

See above, p. 90.

1442. . . . her othir frendis sustenaunce (+ R)
Rest: . . . gouernaunce
(H_1 generaunce)

1452. . . . bothe o tyme & oper
Rest: . . . o tyme and ek oper
(Cl ek and; H_4 ofte tyme & othir)

1519. And be . . . (+ A)
Rest: And lye . . .

1561. But god & Pandare wist non what this mente (+ R)
(H_2Ph it ment; R she mente)
Rest: . . . al what pis mente
($ClH_1AS_1H_4$ what al; GgH_5 he ment)

In three of the instances just given R agrees with H_2PhCx .
In the following lines we find agreements of H_2Ph and R.

H_2PhR .

- †425. *Omit* fyn
649. Cryseyd anon gan al his chere aspyen
(H_2Ph þe chere)

Rest: Cryseyde gan . . .

Cryseyde is regularly four syllables.

694. . . . hert . . . (+ $JH_3 + S_2Dig$)
Rest: . . . pought . . .

1546. H_2Ph . . . he held alwey þe wise
R . . . alwey his gyse

Rest: . . . he held forth ay þe wyse

(H_5 all *for* ay; DH_3 *om.* ay; Cx forth his guyse)

Note the cross connection between R and Cx.

Much more significant than the agreements between H_2PhH_4 , H_2PhCx , and H_2PhR , are those existing between H_2Ph , GgH_5 , and (usually) H_4 . These agreements are recorded in the following list.

$H_2PhGgH_5H_4$.

15. neiper have . . . (Gg lacking)

Rest: haue neyper . . .

†64. H_2 The swallow Songe with a sorowful lay
(Songe by hand 3 in space left blank)

Ph The swallow proygne . . .
(proygne later in space left blank)

H_5 The swalwe morning . . .
(Gg lacking)

H_4 The swalwe song . . .

Rest: The swalwe proigne . . .

In the common original of these MSS. the name *Proigne* must have been illegible. H_2Ph left a blank, later filled in H_2 by the scribe of H_2^3 from an exemplar closely related to H_4 (see above, p. 60, for the relationship between H_4 and H_2^3), and in Ph by the original scribe from an independent source. The reading of H_4 (and H_2^3), *Song*, is a guess on the part of the scribe, as is also *morning* of H_5 (presumably shared by Gg from which the leaf has been cut out) suggested apparently by the word *sorowful*. Note, however, that both *Song* and *morning* bear some resemblance to the correct reading, *Proigne*, a fact which points towards the presence of an illegible form of the word in the common original. In 65 H_2PhH_4 read *his waymenting*, though in 66 all the MSS. correctly give the feminine pronoun, *she*.

83. . . . al þe geest (Gg lacking)

Rest: omit al

85. Ma dame quod Pandare . . . (+R)

Rest: Quod Pandarus ma dame . . .

*115. 3e make me by Iovis sore adrad
(H_5 Iouas)

Rest: By god ye make me right sore adrad

We seem to have here a case of deliberate revision; but note the more pagan tone of *Iovis*. In 113 all MSS. read *god forbede*.

139. And 3e wist it . . .

(H_4 wiste not)

Rest : And ye it wyste . . .

178. As he þat is . . . ($- H_4$)

Rest : Than he þat is . . .

190. 3e sey right wele . . . ($- H_4$)

(H_5 om. right)

Rest : Ye sey right soth . . .

226. Shal y now wytyn . . .

Rest : Shal I not wete . . .

†291. Takip it . . . ($- H_4$)

(Gg Tache it ; H_5 Take hitt)

Rest : Cache it . . .

Take is repeated from 289.

331. . . . þat noble worpi knyght

(Gg nobele & worpi ; H_4 worthi nobil)

Rest : . . . þat noble gentil knyght

(Cx om. gentil)

384. Omit So

†411. H_2Ph Alas what shold straunge folk to me don

GgH_5 . . . straunge men . . .

Rest : Allas what shulde straunge to me done

(H_3CxR a strange ; H_1 folke *inserted above later*)

The H_2PhGgH_5 readings are hypermetrical.

458. And men be cruel . . .

Rest : As men ben cruel . . .

*478, 479. Ne love a man þat can no wight ne may

A3ens his wille . . .

(H_2PhGg Ne love no man)

Rest : Ne loue a man ne kan I not ne may

Ayens my wil . . .

(AR om. *second* ne ; D nor for *third* ne ; Cx his wyl)

Note that Cx retains *hys* in 479.

500. For love of god . . . ($- H_4$, + JR)

Rest : For his loue . . .

(H_4 For the loue)

The reading *For his loue* gives a nine-syllable line.

503. H₂Ph Kan he wel speke of love y pray
 Gg Can he wel speke of loue I 3ow preie
 Cx . . . quod she I yow prey
Rest : Kan he wel speke of loue quod she I preye.
 (H₄ *om.* wel)

Apparently Gg presents an original reading (altered in H₅). *Loue* is to be read as dissyllabic, the normal elision being prevented by the pause in sense. This was then revised for the sake of greater clearness by introducing *quod she* and omitting *3ow*. H₂Ph has incorporated only half the alteration. Cx has kept both *quod she* and *yow*. The revision must have been made in the original before the H₂Ph and the Cx ancestors were written.

510. So for to spekyn . . .
 (H₄ Lo; H₂ forth we *for* for to; Gg fer)
Rest : Right for to spoken . . .

- †521. Omit now (+ RCx + A)
 †592. Omit nought (—Gg, + Cx)

597. 3e lord . . . (— H₄)
Rest : And lord . . .
 (H₃RCx A lorde)

598. . . . & neuere she ne stent (— H₄)
 (H₂Ph *om.* ne)
Rest : . . . no lengere she ne stente
 (D anone *for* no lengere; H₃ wolde sche stynt)

603. And wax sumdele astonyed . . . (+ Th)
Rest : And was somdel astonyed . . .
 (R sumdele was; A somewhat)

646. Whan he so herd þe peple on hym crien (+ Th)
 (H₄ herde so; Th upon)
Rest : Whan he þe peple vpon hym herde cryen
 (Cx crye vpon hym herden; S₂Dig on *for* vpon; A
originally wrote Whan to þe peple on hym herde
cryen, then deleted to and inserted so before on)

664. . . . it were . . . (— H₄)
Rest : . . . it was . . .

667. . . . how might þis be (— H₄)
Rest : . . . how myght it be

670. . . . neuere mot he the (+ RS₁)
 (H₅ evill *for* neuere)
Rest: . . . mot he neuere pe
679. He wan her love . . . (+ Th)
Rest: He gat here loue . . .
 (H₁ gaf)
701. $H_2PhH_4 + JR$ She þoght ferst þat . . . (+ Th)
 GgH_5 Sche þouȝte ek þis . . .
 γH_3CxS_1 She þought wel þat . . .
- *703. H_2PhGgH_5 And seyð þus al were it not to done
 (H₅ þis *for* þus)
 γH_3CxS_1 And thus she seyde al were it nought to
 done
 JRH_4 And also thought it were not to doone
 (J nere naught)
721. $H_2PhGgH_5 + \gamma H_3CxS_1$ Seth hit is so . . .
 JRH_4 Yif it be so . . .
- *731. $H_2PhGgH_5 + \gamma H_3CxS_1$ What dishonour were it vnto
 me this
 (H₂PhA to *for* vnto; D þat *for* it; Cx *om.* it)
 JRH_4 What dishonour to myn estat is this
- *734, 735. H_2PhGgH_5 Men lovyn wymmen al þis toun about
 Be they þe wors why nay wipoutyn dout (+ Th)
 (Gg þour al; H₂Ph *om.* why)
Rest: Men louen women al bysyde hire leue
 And whanne hem leste nomore lat hem leue
 (ClJR a woman; J no lengere *for* nomore; γS_1 byleue
for second leue; A *has the* H_2PhGgH_5 *reading in a*
late hand over erasure)

We have here a clear case of revision. That the H_2PhGgH_5 reading is the earlier is suggested by the Italian:

*Io non conosco in questa terra ancora
 Veruna senza amante, e la più gente,
 Com' io conosco e veggo, s'innamora,
 Ed io mi perdo il tempo per niente;
 E come gli altri far non è peccato,
 E non può esser da alcun biasimato. (Fil. 2. 70.)*

The revised reading brings the lines into closer relation with 732. With 735 compare l. 686. The cynical tone of the revised reading may have led to the alteration noted in A.

*736, 737. $H_2PhGgH_5 + \gamma H_3CxS_1$:

I thenk eke how he able is to haue
 Of al this noble toun the thriftyest
 (H_2PhGgA able he is; H_5 he is abyll, And *for* I; Cx
om. eke; $GgH_5CpH_1H_3S_1$ for to haue; γ þis ilke
 noble town)
 JRH_4 Ek wot I wel he worthy is to haue
 Of wommen in this world the thriftyeste
 (H_4 Yit *for* Ek)

Again a clear case of revision. Note that in 736 $H_2PhGgH_5 + A$ transpose *able*.

*738. H_2PhGgH_5 That woman is so she her honour save
 (H_5 þat sche) (+ Th)
 γH_3CxS_1 To ben his loue so she . . .
 (A he *for* she)
 JRH_4 As ferforth as she may . . .

We have here three distinct readings, all of which seem authentic. Note that the γH_3CxS_1 reading stands midway between the other two.

*760, 761. $H_2PhGgH_5 + \gamma H_3CxS_1$:

And þogh þat y myn hert set at rest
 Vpon þis knyght þat is the worthiest
 (H_5 to reste; Cx in rest; Ph *om.* the)
 JRH_4 Vnwist to hym þat is þe worthyeste
 (J of hym)

The reading of JRH_4 gains some sanction from the Italian:

Io sarò saggia, e terrò sì celata
La voglia mia, che non sarà saputo
Ch'io aggia mai nel cuore amore avuto (*Fil.* 2. 69);

but as it stands it makes poor sense. Possibly we should read *Vnwist, on hym þat is þe worthyeste*; but I am inclined to regard the reading as not authentic, and the Italian parallel, which is, after all, not very close, as a coincidence.

- *792. $H_2PhGgH_5 + JRH_4$ How oft tyme may men rede &
se (+ Th)

(H_4 *om.* tyme)

γH_3CxS_1 How ofte tyme hath it yknowe be

(Cl knowe)

The rime word in 794 is *se*, so that the reading of H_2 , etc., makes an identical rime.

813. $H_2PhGgH_5 + \gamma H_3CxS_1$ Adoun pe staire . . .
 JRH_4 And down . . .

825. $H_2PhGgH_5 + JRH_4$ Gan on a troian lay to syngyn
clere

(H_5 *om.* on ; R to *for* a ; H_4 Gan of a troian say and
synge elier)

γH_3CxS_1 . . . a Troian song . . .

(A *om.* a)

859. $H_2PhGgH_5 + \gamma H_3CxS_1$. . . for . . .
(H_5 so)

JRH_4 . . . lo . . .

896. $H_2PhGgH_5 + H_4RCx$. . . if it be foul in hell
(Gg *3if* if it be ; H_4 if oult faile in hell)

Rest : . . . is it foule yn helle

(Cl ful)

- *897. $H_2PhGgH_5 + JRH_4$ Cryseyd perto no ping her an-
swerde

(H_2Ph her no ping ; H_4 *om.* her ; JH_5 no thing therto ;
 H_5 ne *for* her)

γH_3CxS_1 Criseyde vnto pat purpos nought answerde

(S_1 lyte *for* nought)

- *908. $H_2PhGgH_5 + JRH_4$ And white pingis gan to wexe
donne

(H_2 whit ; H_5 And w^t pyng gan waxe dym & dunne)

γH_3CxS_1 And white pynges wexen dymme and donne

Note the conflate reading of H_5 .

910. $H_2PhGg + H_4Cx$. . . home went . . .
(H_2 went home)

Rest : . . . in went . . .

Note that H_5 deserts the reading of Gg.

*922, 923. $H_2PhGgH_5 + JRH_4$:

Of love which pat made his herte gay

Hym herkenyd she . . .

(H_5 om. pat ; H_2Ph her hert, Her *for* Hym ; Gg That
for Hym *by corrector over erasure*)

γH_3CxS_1 Of loue pat made hire herte fressh and gay

That herkened she . . .

(H_3 om. hire ; S_1 full fressh)

His in the first reading refers to the bird who is singing his lay ; *hire* in the second refers to Criseyde. H_2Ph change the reference.

945. $H_2PhGgH_5 + JRH_4Cx$ omit hym

950. $H_2PhGgH_5H_4$ Troylus pat pought . . .

Rest : But Troilus pat poughte . . .

(γ om. pat)

A nine-syllable line.

1018. $H_2PhGgH_5 + JRH_4$. . . be ware pat pow eschewe

γH_3CxS_1 . . . be war and faste eschuwe

*1083. H_2Ph line omitted

GgH_5H_4 But pat was infenit for ay & o

(Gg enfeyned ; H_5 Infynyth)

JR But pat was endles for ay and o

γH_3CxS_1 But pat was endeles with outen ho

In H_2 *And* was written at beginning of line by scribe and rest of line left blank. In this blank hand 3 has written the reading of H_4 . In Ph the γ reading has been written later by original scribe in space left blank.

*1084. $H_2PhGgH_5 + JRH_4$ And how he wold . . .

(H_5 om. how ; H_4 But how)

γH_3CxS_1 And seyde he wolde . . .

*1085. $H_2PhGgH_5 + H_4R$ And his adew made and gan it folde

(H_4 And thus an eend made ; R he made ; Ph to *for* it)

$\gamma H_3CxS_1 + J$ And radde it ouer and gan pe lettre folde

This line and the two preceding offer peculiar complications. The variations seem clearly to be due to revision. In 1083 the omission of the line by H_2Ph points to a confused reading in the original of their common ancestor ; and JR present a reading half

way between that of Gg and that of γ . In 1085 J leaves RH_4 and gives the γ reading. It should be noted that from line 1034 H_3 is regularly a γ MS.

- *1093. $H_2PhGgH_5 + JRH_4$ This Pandare vp perwip & pat be tyme
 (H_5 tho with)
 γH_3CxS_1 This Pandarus tok pe lettre and pat by tyme
 (H_3 om. pe lettre ; Cx right *for* and pat)

The γ reading is nearer the Italian. The Moutier ed. reads: *Pandaro presa la lettera pia N'ando verso Griseida. Fil. 2. 108.* In the Paris ed. of 1789 the passage reads: *Pandaro prese lo scritto d' amore, E corse tosto ver Griseida (3. 41).* This greater approximation to the Italian may well be accidental.

- *1095-1097. $H_2PhGgH_5 + JRH_4$:

And seid slepe 3e and it is pryme

And gan to iape & seyde þus myn hert

So fressh is it thogh love do it smert

(J slepe ye yit and; H_4 thus a myn herte; J it is;

H_5 om. it; H_2Ph om. do; H_4 do me sterte)

γH_3CxS_1 And faste he swor þat it was passed pryme

And gan to Iape and seyde ywys myn herte

So fressh it is alþough it soore smerte

(Cl þat is was passed; H_1 Ioye *for* Iape; Cl so *for*
 soore; S_2 alle 3if ; Dig alle þof)

We have here a clear case of revision; but there are no certain grounds for determining which is the more original version. The H_2Ph reading, with its direct discourse, is more dramatic and vigorous.

1108. $H_2PhH_5 + RS_1$. . . as $\text{pogh her herte brest}$
 (H_2Ph hert to-brest)
 GgH_4 . . . & þou3te . . . (H_4 shouht)
 $\gamma H_3Cx + J$. . . it pought . . .
 (DCx hir pought)

The confusion is of a sort plainly due to scribal carelessness; and the change is so easy that the agreements may well be fortuitous. The H_2Ph reading seems to be correct.

1113. $H_2PhGgH_5 + \gamma H_3CxS_1$ For which . . .
 JRH_4 For whi . . .
 (R For thy)

(After 1113 the agreements of JRH_4 abruptly cease. In the rest of this list the reading first given is again that of $H_2PhGgH_5H_4$, unless otherwise specified.)

1119. Of his wordis . . .

Rest : Of þat he spak . . .

(Cl þey spoke)

A nine-syllable line.

1120. He seyð þus . . .

Rest : He seyð here þus . . .

(A And seide)

1142. H_2 Pandare þan bygan for to stare

Ph Pandare gan þan for to stare

GgH_5H_4 Pandarus gan vpon hire for to stare

Rest : This Pandarus gan on here for to stare

(R *om.* for)

1156. And seyð cast it now away anone

Rest : And seyde here cast it now away anoon

(γ now cast it ; H_1 *om.* it ; J *om.* now ; R cast it not
away ; Cx caste it fast away ; H_3 alwey ; Cl or noon)

This variant is exactly like that in 1120.

†1201. . . . þe medis . . .

Rest : . . . to medes . . .

1211. . . . at þis tyde . . . ($-H_5 + J$)

Rest : . . . at þis tyme

1321. Lord oft . . . ($+J$)

Rest : But ofte . . .

1352. . . . was alwey . . . ($+A$)

(H_4 was ay)

Rest : . . . alwey was . . .

1356. H_2PhGg *om.* for rouþe

1383. H_2PhCx . . . fal at ones

Gg . . . falle al at onys

Rest : . . . come al at onys

Fal is repeated from *fallyng* in 1382. H_5 has corrected.

1399. *om.* Now ($+J$)

1455. H_2Ph . . . vs more help to craue
 $GgH_5H_4 + J$. . . his helpe more craue
(H_5 *om.* his, helpis; H_4 to craue)

Rest : . . . his helps for to craue
(Cx his help now for to craue)

1754. $H_2PhGgH_5 + RCx$ *om.* ryght

- †1755. Fully to dethe . . . ($-H_4$)

Rest : Fully to deye (dye)

An error due to confusion of p and y .

In the long list of readings just given we may note the following significant facts :

(1) That there is only one trivial case before line 64, and that after 1211 the cases are very few and not very striking. In four of the agreements beginning with 1211 J shares.

(2) That beginning at 701 and extending through 1113 there are a number of striking cases in which the MSS. divide into three groups: H_2PhGgH_5 , JRH_4 , and γH_3CxS_1 ; and that these three groups pair off, two against one, in all three of the possible combinations. Within this area fall nearly all the cases of clear revision readings.

(3) That in very few instances do $H_2PhGgH_5H_4$ present a reading that is manifestly corrupt.

Explanation of these facts must be deferred till further evidence has been presented.

We shall next consider a series of readings in which H_2Ph agree with γ .

$\gamma H_2Ph.$

21. A blynde man . . . ($+H_4Cx$)

Rest : A blynde wight . . .

22. Ye knowe . . . ($-S_1 + H_4$)

(A He knew)

Rest : I knowe . . .

31. . . . wole deuyse ($+H_4$)

Rest : . . . can deuyse

110. Do wey youre barbe . . . ($+H_4$)

Rest : Do wey yowr wympel . . .

Either word fits the metre, and the sense is identical (cf. N.E.D. s.v. *barb*). *Barbe* seems to be the less common word, occurring only here in Chaucer, and therefore is presumably authentic.

124. γ Cx I am of Grekes so ferd *pat* I deye
 (Cx the Grekis)
 H_2PhH_4 *om.* so (H_2Ph *pe* grekis ; H_4 afferd)
 JGgR . . . fered so . . . (Gg aferid)
 H_5 . . . so of Grekis aferd . . .

The confusion as to *so* points to a correction in the common original of all the MSS.

438. ClCp H_1 AS $_2$ Dig If *pat* I mente harm or ony vylonye
 H_2PhS_1 If y ment harme or eny vilany
Rest : Yif *pat* I mente harm or vilenye
 (H_4 *om.* *pat* ; D vices *written and deleted before* vilenye)

γ has combined the reading of H_2Ph and of J, etc., and consequently presents a hypermetrical line, which S_1 corrects by dropping *pat*, and D by dropping *ony*. Note that H_4 omits both *pat* and *ony*.

636. . . . so weldy semed he (+ H_4S_1)

Rest : . . . so worthy . . .

Weldy, as the more uncommon word, is presumably correct.

1026. . . . or craftily pow it wryte (+ S_1)
 (H_3 *om.* it)

Rest : . . . ne craftiliche thow wryte
 (R *om.* thow ; Cx it *for* thow)

1068. . . . þese loueres . . . (+ S_1).

Rest : . . . ye louteris . . .
 (J the *for* ye)

1314. . . . sent right now . . . (- D, + R)
 (H_3 now ryght send)

Rest : . . . right now sent . . .

1517. ClAD H_2Ph + S_1 So after *pat* . . .
 (D so afterwarde)

Cp H_1S_2 Dig H_3 And after that . . .

Rest : Soone aftir *pat* . . .

1616. Vpon here fo . . . (+ $S_1 Cx$)
Rest: Vnto hir foo . . .
 (GgH₅ On to)
Vpon is clearly the correct reading.
1665. And pey pat no þing knewe . . . (+ Cx)
 (H_2 þe *for* pey; Cx she *for* þey)
Rest: And they pat knowen no thing . . .
 (R knew; H_4 know; S_1 knewe)
 The γH_2 reading is better metrically.
1705. . . . into an herber grene (+ S_1)
Rest: . . . and in an herber grene
 (Cx and into)
Into is clearly correct.

It is to be noted that in a number of cases in the list just given $\gamma H_2 Ph$ preserve a correct reading where the other MSS. have fallen into error. This would seem to point to some relationship between GgH₅, J, R, Cx , H_4 , and H_3 . Repeatedly, too, we find two or three of these six units agreeing in a variant reading against all the rest. These agreements must now be illustrated. We may begin with the combinations involving H_4 , R, and Cx .

$H_4 RCx$.

- †2. $H_4 Cx$ *omit* o wynd.
 †14. $H_4 Cx$ + H_5 . . . I write
Rest: . . . it write
 (A I it write)
- †96. $H_4 R$. . . tell vs
Rest: . . . telle it vs
143. $H_4 RCx$ *omit* pat.
 305. $H_4 Cx$. . . be now as to you new
Rest: . . . as now be to yow newe
 ($H_2 Ph$ to 3ow be now as newe)
462. $H_4 Cx$. . . wisly forto pley
Rest: . . . slelyly for to pleye
 (R sleightfully; H_1 sleughteay)
- †508. RCx . . . gardyn paleys . . .
Rest: . . . paleys gardyn . . .
 ($H_2 Ph$ paleys in a gardyn)

116 *The Manuscript Relations in Book II.*

†585. $H_4R + D$ omit þan

Rest : . . . þan is . . .

(H_2Ph is þan)

589. H_4 Nay nay therof speke not a ha quod she

R Nay nay there of ne spake not I quod sche

Rest : Nay þerof spak I not ha ha quod she

(H_2 om. Nay ; Cl om. ha ha)

597. $RCx + H_3$ A lord . . .

γJH_4 And lord . . .

H_2PhGgH_5 3e lord . . .

†644. $H_4Cx + H_3$ omit And

†653. H_4R omit right

†724. H_4R omit certeyn

†752. H_4R . . . in lusti ese

Rest : . . . in lusty lese

864. H_4Cx . . . to looke . . .

Rest : . . . to se . . .

†905. H_4R . . . & al this

(R has deleted and)

Rest : . . . al þis . . .

(AD and þis)

1162. RCx No than wol I so that ye wol endite

(Cx om. second wol)

Rest : No þanne wole I quod he so ye endite

(H_2H_4 so þat 3e ; S_1 quod he wole I ; A so ye wol endite)

†1280. H_4Cx omit hire ; R the for hire.

†1286. H_4Cx omit second youre.

1455. H_4R She nedith not . . .

H_2PhCx So nedith not . . .

Rest : It nedeth nought . . .

1546. RCx . . . gyse

Rest : . . . wyse

1644. $RCx + S_1$ Crysseide anon my lady . . .

Rest : omit anon

†1715. H_4R . . . my ladies tweyne

Rest : . . . my lordes tweyne

Ladies is repeated from 1714.

1741. H_4 Sekirly . . .

Cx And sikerly . . .

Rest : Secundelich . . .

(H_5 Sertaynly)

In the list of readings just given there are two instances, lines 597 and 644, in which H_3 is associated with Cx . The following list presents a series of other instances in which H_3 and Cx are in agreement. Of these all but the last come before the point (line 1034) where H_3 becomes a γ MS.

H_3Cx .

130. . . . som Iape I trowe it is (+ A)

Rest : . . . is þis

(H_2Ph ywis)

154. That was the wal of Troie . . .

(H_3 tho wal)

Rest : That was þe townes wal . . .

593. . . . that helmed is with stele

Rest : . . . of stel

(R in stele)

†613. *Omit* right

924. That at the last . . . (+ Cl)

(H_3 tho last)

Rest : Til at the laste . . .

945. . . . go we where the liste

Rest : . . . do we as þe leste

(GgH_5H_4R 3e *for* þe ; S_1 whan the leste ; D you *for* þe)

†978. . . . god so me wisse and saue

Rest : . . . god so wys me saue

(H_5 so wisse me and saue, *om.* god ; JR god so my soule saue)

980. . . . oute sterte (+ H_5)

Rest : . . . to sterte

- †1398. Ywys my dere brother Deiphebus quod he
(Cx Deiphebe, *om.* quod he)

Rest : omit dere

This list of H_3Cx agreements, and also the preceding list of H_4RCx agreements, could be much extended ; but the examples given serve to illustrate sufficiently the character of the variations. They are all of a trivial character, and might be regarded as accidental were they not so numerous.

In the following list are presented a few instances in which Cx agrees with S_1 . They are confined to the latter part of the book, and are not numerous.

S_1Cx .

1079. And preyde hir . . .
Rest : And pat she sholde . . .
(Gg But pat ; H_5 Besechyng hir ; ClJ wold)
- 1672, 1673. . . . she gau disport
As she best coud of sorowe him to confort
Rest : . . . to recomforte
As she best kowde she gan hym disporte
(Cp H_1ADH_3 to disporte)
1701. S_1 He preyde tham bothe . . .
Cx He prayed hem bothe anon . . .
Rest : He preyede hem anoon . . .
(Gg H_5JH_2 preied hem faste)
1712. S_1 Into þe chambre on hie and pat in hye
Cx Vnto the chambre aloft and that on hy
Rest : Into þe grete chambre and pat yn hye
(H_5 on *for* yn)

We have already recorded a series of striking agreements of JRH_4 found between lines 701 and 1113 (see above, pp. 107–111). We must now present a list of agreements, more trivial in character but fairly numerous, between J and R, in which H_4 does not share.

JR.

253. . . . hir look down for to caste (+ H_3)
(H_3 *om.* for to)
Rest : . . . hire eyen down to caste
(H_2PhD *om.* to ; A adoun hire eyen caste ; Cx
lacking)

403. . . . growe . . . (+ γ)
Rest: . . . waxen . . .
 (H₂Ph wox)
516. And I afer gan romen to and fro
 (J gan for to romen ; R affer)
 H₂Ph And yn a fere . . .
 GgH₅H₄H₃Cx And I aftir . . .
 γ — AD And I þerafter . . .
 AD And after gan I rome . . .

In this line JR alone preserve the correct reading. That *afer* is correct is clear from the context. The metre, moreover, demands that the stress fall on the second syllable. The Italian, in Moutier's ed., reads, *Io non gli era vicin*, *Fil.* 2. 57. (The Paris ed. presents at this point a very different text, which materially alters the details of Pandaro's story.) It is hard to see why all the remaining MSS. should have bungled so simple a line. The corruption must have been introduced by "Adam Scriveyn" in his first copy of the poem from Chaucer's autograph.

- †568. . . . þat neuere sith . . .
Rest: . . . neuere sith þat . . .
 (H₄H₅ om. þat)
- †656. And with that worde . . .
Rest: And wip þat þought . . .
 (H₂Ph And for þat þoght)

The context makes clear that *þought* is the correct reading.

745. . . . my thought
Rest: . . . þis þought
- †751. . . . of myn estat
Rest: . . . after myn estat
 (Cx for *for* after)
775. . . . by oother folk . . .
Rest: . . . in oþer folk . . .
814. Into hir gardyn with hir neces thre
Rest: Into þe gardeyn . . .
 (H₂Ph a gardyn)
864. . . . on hym . . .
Rest: . . . on it . . .

925. . . . right ther . . .

Rest : . . . right þo . . .(Cx *om.* þo)

†978. . . . god so my soule saue

Rest : . . . god so wys me saue(H₃Cx god so me wisse and saue; H₅ so wisse me
and saue)

A hypermetrical line.

1083. . . . endles for ay and o

GgH₅H₄(H₂Ph) . . . enfeyned for ay & oγH₃CxS₁ . . . endeles with outen ho

For a discussion of this line, see above, p. 110.

1091. And seide I wis a blisful destyne

Rest : And seyde lettre . . .

(Gg And seyde a blysfyl desteny parde)

A possible reading. Since 1090 reads: *He kiste þo þe lettre*, the repetition of the word *lettre* is quite unnecessary.

1147. To yow a lettre wolde I brynge or take

Rest : Wold I a lettre to yow brynge or take(H₄ Yf I wolde a letter; Cx And I a lettre; γ vnto.)

It may be noted that, save for the first two instances, and in those instances other MSS. share the reading, all these agreements are in the parts of Book II written by the third hand of R. But, though this hand writes from 1114 to the end of the book, the agreements stop with 1147. In 1526 JR read *she shal the fully ther conferme*, where γ omits *the*, GgCx omit *ther*, H₂Ph read *fully the*, omitting *ther*, and H₅ reads *þere þe fully*. Here the confusion must have arisen from the mistaking of *þe* for a contracted *pere*, and the mistake must lie back of any immediate common original of J and R.

Beginning with line 1210 there is a considerable number of instances in which J agrees with GgH₅; and in four of these agreements H₄ also shares. Earlier in the book occur two instances of JGgH₅ + R.

JGgH₅.

551. . . . he for loue was pale and wan (+ R)

Rest : . . . for wo . . .*For loue* is repeated from 550.

- †1164. And Pandare gan at hym self to Iape faste (+ R)
(R at hymself gan Iape faste)

Rest: And he gan . . .

(H₄ And she gan eek himself iape faste)

Apparently a gloss has been taken into the text. The reading of JGgH₅ is hypermetrical; but R presents a satisfactory line. Note that the corrupt H₄ also omits *to*.

1210. Now for the loue of god . . .

Rest: Now for þe loue of me . . .

1292. To graunt hym yit so grete a liberte (+ Cx)

Rest: To graunten hym so gret a liberte

(H₂PhA graunt; H₄ *line entirely corrupt*)

1333. Right so encresseth hope . . . (+ D)

Rest: . . . encrees of hope . . .

(H₄ thencrees)

1383. . . . makith it . . .

(H₅ makit hym)

Rest: . . . doth it . . .

Though JGgH₅ agree in reading *makith*, later in the line Gg agrees with H₂PhCx in reading *falle* instead of *come*. See above, p. 112.

1433. And preyen . . . (+ H₄)

Rest: To prayen . . .

1455. . . . hise helpis moore craue (+ H₄)

(Gg helpe; H₅ *om.* his; H₄ to craue)

H₂Ph . . . vs more help to craue

Rest: . . . his helpes for to craue

(Cx . . . his help now for to craue)

1550. To ben good frend . . .

S₁ To ben good lord . . .

Rest: To ben a frend . . .

1596. But for o fyn . . . (+ H₄)

Rest: For for o fyn . . .

(H₁ *glosses* quia propter. H₂Ph For o peyn; Cx for al is for a fyne)

1688. . . . yif it yowr wille be (+ S₁)
(H₅ *om.* it)

Rest : . . . and it youre wille be
(Cx yit *for* it)

1691. JR Yif þat ye vouch sauf . . .
GgH₅ 3if þat pou vouche saf . . .
(H₅ *om.* þat)

Rest : If that she vouche saf . . .

1701. . . . faste . . .

Rest : . . . anoon . . .
(S₁ bothe ; Cx bothe anon)

†1733. O nece . . . (+ H₄)

Rest : Nece . . .

Finally, we must record a number of scattering agreements, which may serve further to illustrate how confused are the relationships which the MSS. bear to one another.

SCATTERING AGREEMENTS.

21. (Gg)H₅H₄ . . . demyn . . .

Rest : . . . Iuggen . . .
(R *lacking*)

117. H₃ It sat me wel bette ay ben in a caue
Cx It sit me wel bet to ben in a caue
H₄ It sat me ay weel bet to be in a caue
H₅ It sit me bet ay to ben in a caue (*a inserted above*)

Rest : It sat me wel bet ay in a caue
(Cp satte ; H₁J sate ; R sat to me ; ClH₁J *om.* a)

The reading of γH₂Ph, etc., is metrically satisfactory, if we give proper dissyllabic value to the subjunctive *satte*. *Ben* is not required by the sense, which runs on to the next line.

†141. GgH₅H₄ . . . wel more . . .

Rest : *Omit* wel

159. γ(- S₂Dig)JR . . . al vertu . . .

Rest : . . . euery vertu . . .
(S₂Dig euere ; Gg vertu euery *corrected to* vertu euere)

296. H₃H₄ + AD *omit* wel
(Gg 3it *for* wel ; Cx *lacking*)

357. Gg þour myn a bek
 H_5 . . . advice
 R . . . doying
 Cx . . . counsayl
 H_2Ph . . . abettyng
Rest : . . . abet
 (H_4 habit ; JD abit)

These may well be independent attempts to emend a rare word not understood by the scribe.

434. JRH $_4$ H $_3$. . . were . . .
Rest : . . . is . . .

461. H_4S_1 . . . wil deeme of it . . .
Rest : . . . wolde of it deme . . .
 (Cl of it wold deme ; Cx wyl it deme ; GgH $_5$ don)

466. $H_4Cx + Ph + Cl$ And eek myn emys lyf lith in
 balauns
 (H_4 loue *for* lyf)
 H_2GgH_5R . . . lyf in a balaunce
 (H_2 *om.* a)
Rest : . . . lif is in balaunce
 (S_2 Dig is now in balaunce)

Lith has been repeated from 465, *For myn estat lith in (a) Iupartye*. Either Ph has introduced the word independently or, more probably, H_2 has dropped it because of its similarity to *lyf*. It is just possible that we have here the traces of an authentic revision. The reading of GgH $_5$ R is entirely possible.

485. GgS $_1$. . . þis mater . . .
Rest : . . . þis proces . . .

Since H_5 does not share the Gg reading, one must conclude that the agreement of GgS $_1$ is due to coincidence in independent error.

- †535. H_4H_5 . . . grounded
 Gg . . . foundit
Rest : . . . Isounded
 (Ph woundid ; A Iswounde)

- †640. GgH $_5$ R . . . with swerdis & with macis
Rest : omit second with

751. GgH $_5$ H $_4$ Omit it

†1487. GgCx . . . in his owene propre persone
 H₄H₅ . . . in his awyn persone

Rest : . . . yn his propre persone

Owene is repeated from 1486. H₅, and probably also H₄, have corrected a hypermetrical line by omitting *propre*.

1553. JRS₁ But swich a need was it
 (R that *for* it)

ADCx . . . a nede it was

Rest : *Omit* it

†1666 H₄RCxH₅ *omit* pei
 Gg sche *for* pei

Gg has corrected the GgH₅ reading preserved by H₅.

Unless we are to assume a most thoroughgoing process of contamination, which the comparatively trivial character of most of the variations makes improbable, but one explanation can be given for the phenomena of Book II. In Book I, it will be remembered, the β MSS. present evidence to prove that they are descended, each along its independent line of descent, from a common original which contained a great many corrections and alternative readings. Such an hypothesis can alone explain the manifold and baffling interrelations of Book II. If we find H₂Ph agreeing in this line with GgH₅, in the next with γ , in the next with R or Cx or J, we are forced to assume that each of the units, H₂Ph, GgH₅, γ , H₄, J, R, Cx (and H₃ and S₁ when not included in γ), is derived independently from a MS. whose readings were confused by repeated corrections and alterations. In this MS., then, were present in many lines alternative readings; and the text was in such a condition that a scribe might easily, through inattention, copy the cancelled reading instead of the substitute, or might incorporate into his copy part of the original reading and part of the correction. Of such conflate readings we have seen many examples in the lists given above; and every conflation of this character is evidence in support of the hypothesis just presented.

But, though virtually all possible combinations of the several MS. units are illustrated, there is one combination which is more strikingly attested than the others, that of H₂Ph with GgH₅ (during the first 1200 lines of the book); and with H₂Ph and GgH₅ is frequently found H₄. We have seen that in Book I H₂Ph and H₄ present earlier, unrevised readings; in the later

books we shall find GgH_5 associated with H_2Ph in presenting unrevised readings. Up to line 1200, then, where the character of its readings is changed, GgH_5 derives from the common parent of all MSS. at a stage in its existence not far removed from that at which H_2Ph is derived. That is to say, H_2Ph and GgH_5 are both derived before the parent MS. received all of its corrections and alterations. We must conceive of this parent MS. as subject to a continuous process of minor corrections and alterations coincident in time with the period during which the various existing MS. units were successively derived.

Through the greater part of the book these corrections and alterations are of a very trivial character. Only in one restricted portion of Book II, *i. e.* between line 701 and line 1113, are there any cases of extended revision; but within these four hundred lines the instances of deliberate revision are both numerous and striking. They will be found on pp. 107–111 above.

The readings of these four hundred odd lines present the most baffling problem which the writer of this study has encountered; and he cannot pretend to any satisfactory solution. He must perforce content himself with stating the situation, and suggesting a not impossible explanation.

There are over a score of readings, of which most are striking cases, which point to deliberate revision. On the basis of these readings the MSS. divide sharply into three groups: H_2PhGgH_5 , γH_3CxS_1 , and JRH_4 . It is to be noted that S_1 ceases to be a γ MS. after line 617, and that H_3 does not become a γ MS. until line 1034. Through the whole passage, then, γ has the independent support of S_1 and Cx , and through three-quarters of the passage of H_3 as well. We cannot assume that S_1 , H_3 , and Cx incorporate through some accident or contamination readings of γ origin; for a glance will show that the γH_3CxS_1 readings in this passage are not at all of the colourless sort which throughout the poem characterize the γ original, and which point consistently towards scribal corruption rather than authentic revision.

In one couplet, lines 734, 735, H_2PhGgH_5 present what seems to be an unrevised reading as against all the rest. In two instances, lines 703 and 738, there are three separate readings which characterize respectively H_2PhGgH_5 , γH_3CxS_1 , and JRH_4 , with the γH_3CxS_1 reading occupying a place midway in character between the H_2Ph and the JRH_4 readings. Somewhat similar is

the situation in line 1083, where, however, H_2Ph omit the line and JR occupy a place midway between GgH_5H_4 and γH_3CxS_1 . In lines 721, 731, 736-7, 760-1, 813, 859, 1113, JRH_4 agree in a variant reading as against all the rest. In lines 701, 792, 825, 897, 908, 922-3, 945, 1093, and 1095-7 γH_3CxS_1 agree in a variant reading as against all the rest; and to this list may be added line 1085 in which J agrees with γH_3CxS_1 . It is this last set of readings which makes the problem so difficult. Were it not for them, we should have a situation not unlike that in Book III, where the latest revised state of the text is represented by JRH_4Cx , and where γ is generally in accord with α . We should say that H_2PhGgH_5 represent the earliest state of the text; that after these units were derived a certain amount of revision took place, and that these revisions are found in γH_3CxS_1 ; that, further, after these units also were derived, other revisions were made which are found only in the MSS. of latest derivation, *i. e.* J, R, and H_4 .

But if we turn to the lines in which γH_3CxS_1 present the variant, we shall find that the γH_3CxS_1 reading seems to be the later revised reading. In 792 a bad rime is avoided; in 908 there is an added idea. In general the γH_3CxS_1 reading is preferable; in a few instances, *e. g.* 897, 922-3, it seems to be a second thought, not completely fused with the context. Even though in line 1093 the γH_3CxS_1 reading is somewhat nearer the Italian, this cannot alone counterbalance the presumption that H_2PhGgH_5 represent an earlier state of the text.

If the γH_3CxS_1 readings represent a later, revised text, how is one to explain the fact that they are not found in JRH_4 ? We must assume that a revised reading, made after the derivation of H_2PhGgH_5 , is adopted by γ , by H_3 , by Cx, by S_1 , and is then rejected by J, by R, by H_4 . For outside of this passage there is no evidence that J, R, and H_4 are related by descent from any common original other than the common original of all the MSS. In some way, then, these revisions must have been cancelled or lost in the common original before J, R, and H_4 were derived. How or why, I cannot say. Since there seems to be no reason for a deliberate, authentic cancelling of the revisions, one will look for some mechanical cause. Since the phenomenon we would explain occurs nowhere else in the poem, we must find a mechanical cause which should deprive the parent MS. of its

revision readings during these four hundred lines, and nowhere else.

It is to be noticed that all of the lines concerned fall within the space of sixty stanzas; that is to say, of six leaves with five stanzas to the page, or five leaves with six stanzas to the page. The loss of the $\gamma H_3 Cx S_1$ revision readings by JRH_4 may have happened in some such way as this: From the common original and archetype which Chaucer kept in his own possession were derived $H_2 Ph$ and $Gg H_5$. Next, certain revisions were made in the margins or between the lines, and these revisions were incorporated in γ , in H_3 , Cx , and S_1 . Then an accident to the MS. caused the destruction or loss of five or six leaves containing stanzas 100–159, lines 694–1113. Their place was then supplied in the archetype by reference to a copy of the poem, not otherwise represented by any existing MS., which had been derived later than $H_2 Ph$ and $Gg H_5$ (since it must have contained the revised reading in 734, 735), but before the $\gamma H_3 Cx S_1$ revisions were made. In this substituted copy new revisions were made in lines 731, 736–8, and perhaps also in 703 and 760, 761, though in these two cases I suspect that we have rather a scribal corruption in the MS. from which the substituted leaves were copied. The JRH_4 readings in 721, 813, 859, and 1113 would surely be regarded as of merely scribal origin. Line 1085, in which J shares the $\gamma H_3 Cx S_1$ reading in a striking variant as against $H_2 Ph Gg H_5 + H_4 R$, and 1083 where H_4 agrees with $Gg H_5$, would be regarded as cases of contamination.

The explanation just given is pure hypothesis. All that can be said for it is that it explains the facts and is not inherently improbable. All that I should care to assert is that JRH_4 have failed to get the revision readings in this passage, and that after the fashion just suggested a plausible explanation can be devised.

CHAPTER IV

THE MS. RELATIONS IN BOOK III

THE MS. relations in Book III present a striking contrast to those in Book II. In the early part of the book, to be sure, the confusion of the preceding book continues; traces of deliberate

revision are very scanty, and the boundaries between α and β are hard to trace. But from about line 400 to the end of the book we have a clear division between α , represented by H_2PhGgH_5 , and β , represented by JRH_4Cx , illustrated by a long list of striking divergences, many of which are unmistakably due to deliberate revision. In these instances γ , as we shall see, usually gives α readings; but not infrequently it stands with β . H_3 and S_1 are sometimes found with β , sometimes with $\alpha\gamma$.

It will be convenient, however, to defer consideration of these more important readings until we have established for Book III the familiar groups γ , H_2Ph , and GgH_5 .

γ includes, as always, MSS. $ClCpH_1S_2DigAD$. With γ are repeatedly associated H_3 and S_1 ; but since these two MSS. show many striking characteristics of the β group, they cannot be regarded as an integral part of γ . In the list of γ readings which follows, their adherence to γ is in each instance specifically stated. It is to be noted that the fragmentary *Dig* ends at line 532.

$ClCpH_1S_2DigAD(\gamma)$.

†49. To which who nede hath god hym brynge (+ H_3)

Rest : To which gladnesse . . .

A clear case of error; γ is metrically deficient.

84. . . . is . . . (+ H_3)

Rest : . . . was . . .

90. His resones . . . (+ H_3)

Rest : Hise wordes . . .

(GgH_5R His werkis)

Wordes is certainly a better reading. Cf. 97 and 100.

†101. As feythfully . . . (+ H_3)

Rest : As ferforthly . . .

(JGg ferforthlich)

The context makes clear that *ferforthly* is correct.

†110. If with my deth youre herte may apese
(+ $H_3S_1 + Cx + H_2$)

(H_2 y may 3our hert apese)

Rest : . . . yowre wreththe may apese

(Ph 3our wrath may y apese; Gg 3oure wrepe I may apese)

The γ reading is clearly erroneous. *Herte* is repeated from 109.

But note that Cx, as well as H_3S_1 , read *herte*. The agreement of H_2 I regard as coincidence, since Ph reads *wrath*. H_2PhGg (but not H_5) read *y may* or *may y*.

111. But syn þat ye . . .

Rest. For sithen ye . . .

(H_3R For syn that)

The context strongly favours *For* rather than *But*.

†119. . . er þat ye wende (+ H_4)

Rest: . . er ye wende

(J er we wende; Cx or we hens wende)

A hypermetrical line.

130. . . som tyme frendly on me se (+ H_3 + H_4)

(H_1 freshly)

Rest: . . . frendly somtyme . . .

(H_2PhH_5 om. frendly; H_2 on me rue and se; Gg
frenli sumtyme)

The omission by H_2PhH_5 (corrected by Gg) suggests that the confusion already existed in the original of all the MSS.

†136. *Omit* I (— AD)

158. . . but seyde hym softly (+ H_3)

(H_3 ful softly)

Rest: . . . but seyde hym sobrelly

(Gg sekyrly)

188, 189. With outen hond me semeth þat in þe towne

For this merueyle I here eche belle sowne (— AD)

(S_2 Dig Of pis marvelle I here þe belles soune)

Rest: . . . þat in towne

For this miracle . . .

I see no reason to regard *merueyle* as a deliberate revision. It is a simple case of scribal substitution. Since AD read *myracle*, we must assume that the reading was corrected in the γ original.

203. . . right as I yow deuyse (+ H_3)

JGg . . . right as thow wolt deuyse

H_5 . . . right as I woll deuyse

H_2PhCx . . . right as y devise

H_4 . . . right as thei deuyse

R . . . right as I the deuyse

The common original of all the MSS. must have been confused in this line.

230 . . . mery chere (+ H_3)

Rest : . . . blisful cheere

*256. Al sey I nought þow wost wel what I mene (+ H_3S_1)

R Al seye I nought thow wost what I wolde mene

Rest : Thow woost thi seluen what I wolde meene

(H_2Cx what þat y wold mene)

We have here apparently a revision reading not adopted by JH_4Cx . Note that R agrees with γ only in the first half of the line. The reading *wel what I mene* must be regarded as merely a γ variant.

301. Al seyde men soth . . . (+ H_3S_1)

(AD *lacking*)

Rest : Thogh men soth seide . . .

319. That ȝet bihyghte hem neuere . . . ($- Cl, + H_3$)

(AD *lacking* ; H_3 There thai behight hem)

Rest : That neuere yit behight them . . .

(Cx That neuer yit in earnest nor in game)

354. . . . liketh . . . (AD *lacking*)

Rest : . . . listeth . . .

†412. *Omit* me

427. . . . his gode gouernaunce (+ H_3S_1)

Rest : . . . his wyse gouernaunce

438. This . . . ($- A$)

(D *omits line*)

Rest : That . . .

459. Wolde of hem two . . . (+ H_3)

H_2PhGgH_5 Wold in þis speche . . .

$JRH_4(Cx)S_1$ Wolde on this thing . . .

(R of *for on*)

For discussion of this line see below, p. 148.

461. . . . grace . . . (+ $H_3S_1 + R$)

Rest : . . . space . . .

The context favours *space*. See below, p. 148.

132 *The Manuscript Relations in Book III.*

512. . . . þat . . . (+ H₃S₁)

Rest : . . . which þat . . .

(JGgH₅ om. þat)

(With line 532 Dig ends.)

535. . . . gret ordenaunce (+ H₃S₁)

Rest : . . . his ordenaunce

(Gg his puruyaunce)

536. . . . and þerto his aray (− AD, + H₃)

(H₃ ther to and; S₂ þare with his Aray)

Rest : . . . and therto al the aray

(Cx and eke al the aray)

Though the reading *his* in this line seems intended to compensate for the loss of *his* in 535, ADS₁ which read *gret* in 535, read *al the* here. *Gret* does not seem appropriate to the context.

537. Yf þat he were myssed . . .

Rest : That yif þat . . .

(H₃ And yf that; H₄ That yif he)

558. Ne lengere don him . . . (+ H₃)

(H₃ Ne lenger hym doon)

α Ne done hym lenger . . .

βS₁ Ne make hym lenger . . .

For discussion of this line see below, p. 148.

589. He swor hire yis . . . (+ H₃S₁)

(Cl om. hire)

Rest : He swor hir this . . .

(Cx tho *for* this; H₂PhH₄ om. this)

The confusion between *yis* and *pis* is very easy. Either word suits the context.

†623. At the goddes wyl . . . (− AD)

Rest : Omit At

At makes the line hypermetrical, and disturbs the sense. *The goddes wyl* is the subject of *execut was* in 622. The scribe of the γ original regarded *al* as the subject.

636. For be my trouthe . . .

H₃S₁ And by my trowth . . .

Rest : Now by my trowth . . .

For is repeated from 635.

692. . . . wight . . . (+ $H_3S_1 + R$)

Rest: . . . man . . .

†722. *Omit* O ($-H_1$)

In S_1 the interjection, O, which begins a stanza, is made a two-line illuminated initial. Apparently the γ original planned for such an initial which was never executed. Hence the loss of O, corrected, however, by H_1 .

†758. *Omit* thus (+ $H_3 + R$)

810. . . . perof . . . (+ $H_3S_1 + R$)

Rest: . . . of þat . . .

(H_5 of þis)

†838. Thow mysbeleued and enuyous folye ($-AD$)

Rest: *Omit* and

859. How þis candele in þe straw is falle (+ Cx)

(CpD the *for* þis; A þis *for* þe; Cx dyde falle)

Rest: How is this candel in the straw I falle

(GgH_5H_3 falle)

A nine-syllable line in γ .

880. But of malis if þat I shal nought lye (+ H_3S_1)

(H_1 of *for* if)

Rest: *Omit* þat

A nine-syllable line in $\alpha\beta$.

913. Ne . . . (+ H_3S_1)

Rest: And . . .

†931. A dulcarnon . . .

(Cl At *altered* to A)

Rest: At dulcarnoun . . .

(H_2Ph Bulcarnon)

1073. . . . and . . .

Rest: . . . or . . .

1119. And . . .

Rest: So . . .

1153. She bad hym þat to telle . . .

(H_1 Sho bad him for to tel þat)

α þat badde sche him to telle . . .

(Gg *om.* hym)

βH_3S_1 This bad she hym to telle . . .

(H_3 Thus; Cx *lacking*)

134 *The Manuscript Relations in Book III.*

†1157. Hym . . . (—ClD)

Rest: He . . .

An obvious error corrected by Cl and D.

1165. For by þat god þat bought vs boþe two (+H₃)

Rest: . . . wrought vs . . .

1192. . . . hym . . . (—Cl)

(S₂ hir)

Rest: . . . it . . .

1202. But . . .

Rest: And . . .

1203. . . . the blysfyl goddes seuene (+ S₁)

Rest: . . . the bryghte goddes seuene

†1268. . . . þat lest kowde deserue

(A beste)

Rest: . . . þat coude lest . . .

The transposed order in γ injures the metre.

†1291. CpH₁S₂ As thus I mene 3e wol 3e be my steere

(H₁S₂ fere)

ClPh(H₂) . . . þat ye wole be my stere

(Ph þat *inserted above*; H₂ *lacking*)

GgH₅ADS₁ . . . he wil 3e ben myn stere

(Gg *om.* he)

JRCx . . . he wol þat ye ben my steere

H₃H₄ As thus he wyll how that ye be my stere

Line 1290 reads: *Syn god hath wrought me for I shal yow serue*, which requires the reading *he wol* in 1291.

1373. Lord trowe ye a coueytous or a wrecche (—A, + J)

(J or a *by corrector*; D *lacking*)

Gg *omits* or

AH₅RH₃ *omit* or a

Ph(H₂)H₄CxS₁ . . . trowe ye that a coueytous wrecche

(S₁ a wrecche)

The correct reading is not easy to determine. If we read *a wrecche*, *coueytous* must be regarded as a noun, which seems unlikely; but *a coueytous wrecche* is unmetrical unless we read *coueytouse*. The final *e* is found in none of the MSS., and cannot be grammatically justified after the indefinite article. Perhaps the correct reading should be: *Lord trowe ye that coueytouse wrecche*,

which is perfectly suited to the context and the metre. Note that PhH_4CxS_1 read *that a*.

1394. . . . of whom . . . (— A, D *lacking*)

Rest : . . . of which . . .

1402. Of any þing . . . (— A, D *lacking*)

Rest : Of any wo . . .

1422. . . . al my plesaunce (— Cl, + S_1)

Rest : . . . and my plesaunce

†1482. Syn þat desir ryght now so biteth me
(Cl brenneth ; H_1 bitleth)

Rest : . . . streyneth me

The Italian reads : *Sì mi strigne il disio*, *Fil.* 3. 46. The Cl reading, *brenneth*, seems to stand midway between *streyneth* and *biteth*.

1486. Were it so . . .

Rest : Yit were it so . . .

(Cx Yf it were so)

A nine-syllable line in γ .

1488. . . . so fermely

(A fermently ; D feruently)

Rest : . . . as fermely

(H_5 fervently)

1524. And with swych wordes as his herte bledde

Rest : And with swich voys as though his herte bledde

(J thoght, blede ; H_5 *om.* though)

1525. He seyde farewel my dere herte swete

(Cl myn herte and dere swete)

Rest : *Omit* my

(H_5 has γ reading, but whole line is written over erasure.)

1595. An hondred sithe he gan þe tyme blysse

(Cl A hondred ; ClD and gan)

α An hundrid tymes and gan þe tyme blesse

(Gg H_5 tyme *for* tymes)

$\beta\text{H}_3\text{S}_1$ A thousand tyme and gan the day to blisse

(H_4CxS_1 tymes ; H_3 gan he day blisse ; S_1 þe day gan blysse)

For discussion of this line see below, p. 172.

1617. . . . he hym answerde

Rest : . . . he thus answerde(H₃ and thus him answerd)Note the conflate reading of H₃.1660. . . . that Troilus (— ClA, + S₁)*Rest* : . . . this Troilus†1675. *Omit* ek (— A, + H₃S₁)†1702. *Omit* allas (— S₂A)†1708. . . . don here sacrifice (— A, + S₁)*Rest* : . . . don hym sacrificise

The pronoun refers to the sun. All MSS. correctly read *hym* in 1707.

1723. . . . was of hym . . . (+ S₁)*Rest* : . . . of hym was . . .1748. Loue pat knetteth lawe of companye (+ H₃S₁)(H₁ knetteth; H₃ kennyth; H₁S₂ and *for* of)*Rest* : Loue pat enditeth . . .

(H₅ endith; Cx endueth; R endythy *written and deleted before* endytyth; H₂ *omits entire passage*; Ph *has the γ reading, but entire passage later on inset leaf.*)

The original of this line is the *Hic fidis etiam sua Dictat iura sodalibus* of Boethius, Book 2, Metre 8. But the next line of Chaucer, *And couples doth in vertu for to dwelle*, translates *Hic et coniugii sacrum Castis nectit amoribus*, which in the Latin immediately precedes. Chaucer translates the passage thus: *This Love . . . knitteth sacrament of mariages of chaste loves; and Love endyteth lawes to trewe felawes*. Here we have both *knitteth* and *endyteth*. The γ reading cannot, therefore, be dismissed as a scribal corruption. Both *knetteth* and *enditeth* must have been written by some one familiar with the source, and this person can hardly be other than Chaucer himself. Apparently Chaucer first wrote *knetteth* and then changed to *endyteth*, which is the proper word in the context. The scribe of the γ original copied *knetteth*.

1754. Holden a bond perpetuely durynge (+ $H_3S_1 + H_4$)
(H_3A aboute *for* a bond ; H_3 doying)

Rest : Holde in a bond . . .

(H_2 *lacking* ; Ph Holdyn yn a bonde, *passage later on inset leaf*)

That the γ reading is correct is proved by the Latin, *Foedus perpetuum tenent*, Boeth., Book 2, Metre 8. The error of $\alpha\beta$, however, is of a sort very easy to fall into.

Within the γ group the same sub-groups are maintained that we have already noted in Books I and II. Up to the point where Dig ends, line 532, its close relation to S_2 continues unbroken. By way of attestation I have selected the following typical cases :

S_2 Dig.

57. . . . gan his hert . . .

Rest : . . . his herte gan . . .

- †231. To cule . . .

Rest : To tale . . .

(DCx To talke)

- †300. . . . be alle abbe

Rest : . . . ben a labbe

(H_2 Ph blabbe ; H_4 to labbyn)

- †306. . . . vertew

Rest : . . . vntrewe

- †311. Me to loue and sey . . .

Rest : Here loue and seyth . . .

(Cx And sayth certeyn)

- †400. Be . . .

Rest : But . . .

The relationship of A and D is strongly attested by the fact that both omit lines 295–364. This omission of ten stanzas points to the loss of a leaf in the common ancestor of A and D. In A the gap is in the middle of a page ; fol. 45^b contains lines 274–294, 365–378 without any indication of the omission. In D the gap exactly corresponds to a leaf. Line 294 is at the bottom of fol. 41^b and 365 at the top of 42^a, but the quire has its full quota of eight leaves. The relationship is further evident in the fact that in a number of instances, recorded in the list of γ

readings, AD together depart from the γ reading. But this is not all. In D there is a second gap of ten stanzas, lines 1345–1414, without any corresponding mutilation in the MS. Fol. 54^a contains lines 1309–1344 and 1415–1418, with no indication whatever that anything is missing. Obviously a ten-stanza leaf was missing in D's original. In A the ten stanzas are found regularly in their proper place; but during these stanzas the character of A's text changes. In these seventy lines there are three clear γ readings, lines 1373, 1394, 1402; but in none of these γ readings does A share. (See above, p. 134.) Moreover, in this same passage A shares in α readings in lines 1348, 1389, and 1390. (See below, p. 154.) In 1351 AH₅ omit *Ioye*, and in 1365 AH₅ read *neuere* for *nought*. It is plain that the ten stanzas were missing also in the original of A, but that the scribe of A, discovering the loss, supplied them from a MS. of the α type closely related to GgH₅.¹

Further proof of relationship is given in the list of readings which follows, in which is also illustrated a connection between AD and S₁ and AD and H₃. With line 1709 begins the second hand of A; but there is no corresponding change in the character of the text.

AD, S₁, H₃.

- †16. AD omit þat
33. AD + H₂Ph . . . may . . .
Rest: . . . kan . . .
- †124. ADH₃ + H₂Ph omit þanne
- †160. ADS₁ omit And
 (Cl But for And)
193. AD . . . 3ow . . .
Rest: . . . pe . . .
200. A . . . 3e may haue layser . . .
 S₁ . . . may 3e haue leiser . . .
Rest: . . . haue ye a layser
 (H₄ om. a)

¹ Between the two lost leaves in the AD ancestor intervened fourteen leaves; so that the loss might conceivably be the first and last leaves of a quire of 16.

242. AS₁ For sorewe . . .
Rest : For loue . . .
263. AH₃ . . . ful nygh . . .
Rest : . . . wel nygh . . .
 (R *om.* wel)
- †450. AD That in þis mene while . . .
 αγ That in þis while . . .
 βS₁ This mene while . . .
 AD present a conflate reading.
- †462. ADS₁ . . . þis þing . . .
Rest : . . . here speche . . .
 (H₃ hire Porpos)
- †503. ADS₁ . . . me lyst . . .
Rest : . . . hym lyst . . .
- †690. DS₁H₃ . . . daunce
Rest : . . . traunce
 (H₂ taunce)
756. DH₃ . . . rise to here . . .
Rest : . . . ryse and heren . . .
 (H₄ *ne for* and)
799. AD . . . wordes . . .
 ClS₁ . . . þynges . . .
Rest : . . . wonder . . .
884. ADS₁ . . . þerwith shal ye . . .
Rest : . . . ye þerwith shal . . .
1096. AD . . . and . . .
Rest : . . . but . . .
1137. AH₃ . . . syke mennes . . .
Rest : . . . syke folkes . . .
1156. AD . . . soothly . . . (A soth)
Rest : . . . shortly . . .
- †1174. ADH₃ *omit first* þat
1183. DH₃ + H₂Ph . . . dere herte
Rest : . . . swete herte
1308. DS₁ But . . .
Rest : And . . .

140 *The Manuscript Relations in Book III.*

1451. AS₁ . . . hid . . .
 Rest : . . . stole . . .
1526. D . . . saue and sound . . .
 H₃ . . . sounde and sauf . . .
 Rest : . . . sound and soone . . .
 (H₅ son and sownd ; Gg *om.* sound and)
- †1531. AD *omit* hard
1744. AH₃ . . . se and erth . . .
 (H₃ see and of erthe)
 Rest : . . . erþe and se . . .
- †1754. AH₃ Holden aboute . . .
 Rest : Holden a bond . . .
 (GgH₅JRCx[Ph] Hold in)
 þe wey
1768. A . . . no wight ne oute wyste
 H₃ . . . they wey no wyght ne oute wyste
 Rest : . . . no wight þe weye out wyste
 (Cx out þe wey wyste)
- A clear proof that H₃ is deriving from a MS. like A. In A *þe wey*, originally omitted, is written above *no wight* without further indication. Note also *ne oute*.
1778. A . . . all to terede . . .
 D . . . all tered . . .
 Rest : . . . altered . . .

As in Books I and II, there is also a series of scattering agreements between two or three of the γ MSS., which points to the presence of corrections or alternative readings in the γ original. The more important of these agreements are given in the following list:

SCATTERING AGREEMENTS OF γ MSS.

91. ClCpH₁ I yow wole telle . . .
 Rest : I wol yow telle . . .
- †258. CpH₁ . . . gentileste . . .
 Rest : . . . gentillesse (*or* gentilnesse)
259. CpH₁ . . . ben shal . . .
 Rest : . . . shal ben . . .

293. CpS₂Dig Han euere thus . . .
H₁H₃ Han euere this . . .
Rest : Han euere yet . . .
(H₂ *om.* yet; β *varies*)
- †450. CpH₁S₂Dig . . . which . . .
Rest : . . . while . . .
- †527. ClCpS₂Dig From . . .
Rest : Of . . .
- †558. CpH₁ . . . cape
J . . . kape
Rest : . . . gape
585. CpH₁ . . . whiche as . . .
Rest : . . . whiche pat . . .
(R *om.* pat; H₅ the whiche)
- †595. ClAD . . . vnto pe souper . . .
Rest : . . . to soper . . .
- †699. CpH₁S₂ As stille as stoon . . .
Rest : And stille as ston . . .
- †827. CpH₁ . . . 3e woot . . .
Rest : . . . he wot . . .
- †876. CpH₁S₂ + H₂Ph *omit* pat
928. CpH₁S₂A . . . grace hadde . . .
(A *passage written by later hand in space left*)
Rest : . . . hadde grace . . .
1291. H₁S₂ . . . fere
Rest : . . . stere
- †1419. ClAD + GgH₅ . . . afterward . . .
(D after pat)
Rest : . . . estward . . .
1552. CpH₁ . . . she . . .
Rest : . . . he . . .
1621. CpH₁S₂ + Gg . . . take now nat a grief
Rest : . . . tak it . . .
1805. CpH₁S₂ + Cx . . . Ire Enuye . . .
Rest : . . . enuye Ire . . .
(AS₁J enuye and ire; D *om.* Ire)

Of the combinations noted above, the commonest are CpH_1 and CpH_1S_2 (Dig); but several other combinations are present. It is to be noted, however, that AD enters into combination only with Cl.

From the evidence presented it is clear that the γ MSS. are descended from a common ancestor, not Chaucer's original; that this original was frequently corrupt; that in it had been written a number of corrections, not incorporated by all of its descendants; that AD frequently desert the readings of this original; and that H_3 and S_1 spasmodically have γ readings. The variant readings which characterize γ are, when not cases of manifest error, of a trifling sort, so that in only two or three cases at most have we any ground for regarding them as due to authentic revision.

We must now consider the agreements of H_2Ph . The instances I have collected are very numerous; but I shall give only the most striking cases. Though lines 1079-1638 of H_2 are by hand 2, the close relationship with Ph is not broken.

H_2Ph .

- †13. And in þis wîrk . . .
 Rest: And in þis world . . .
 (CIAS₁ word)
- †98. . . . mercy my dere hert
 Rest: . . . mercy swete herte
 A hypermetrical line.
- †137. . . . eke to al myn offence
 (Ph vnto al)
 Rest: . . . egal to myn offence
- †199. . . . þer y-now
 Rest: . . . þer with he lough
- †220. That yaf ful lightly of þe pace
 Rest: That gan ful lyghtly of the lettre passe
 (H_1 ful lightly gan; H_3 lightfully; GgH_5 þis lettere;
 H_4 That tenquire aftir the lettre was desirous)
- †265. . . . help her out of blame
 Rest: . . . kep hire out of blame
304. . . . þe tyme þat y was born
 Rest: . . . þe day . . .
 (GgH_5 þat euere; JH_4 þat day)

†349. And al þe rehetyng of his sikes sore

Rest : . . . þe richesse . . .

(H_4 tresour ; Cx thoughtis)

The Italian reads : *I sospir ch' egli aveva a gran dovizia, Fil. 3. 11.*

391. Right as thyn own . . .

Rest : Right as pi sclauē . . .

(GgRH₄ knaue ; H₅ as I can ; A felawe ; Cl knaue,
kn *corrected*)

†468. . . . al þogh he come late

Rest : . . . þat loue al come it late

501. . . . lettre . . .

Rest : . . . epistel . . .

(GgH₅ pistil)

†571. And seyð y suppose that he were there

$\gamma S_1 + J$ And seyde Nece I pose þat he were

GgH₅ And seyde what I pose that he were

(Gg *by corrector* ; H₅ And he sayde, suppose)

H₃Cx And seyð nece I pose that he where there

H₄R And seide nece I pose that he ther wer

(H₄ I suppose he ther were ; R *om.* seide)

There must have been confusion here in the common original.
Note that GgH₅ read *what* for *Nece*. Line 569 reads : *And axed
hym yf Troylus were there.*

†593. . . . Mancalus . . .

Rest : . . . Tantalus . . .

†656. . . . an honge payn

Rest : . . . an huge rayn

†671. Goth yn anone . . .

Rest : The wyn anon . . .

(H₅ Let all alone ; Cx The wyn was brought ; H₃ To
wyñ anon)

766, 767. Your wymmen all y dare vndirtake

Slepe þat for hem men myght pis house myne

Rest : Youre wommen slepen all I vndertake

So þat for hem the hous men myghte myne

(H₅ I dar vndirtake ; R this hous ; A *om.* the hous ;

H₃ *transposes* 767 and 768)

The reading of H₅, *I dar undirtake*, suggests that the H₂Ph reading may originally have stood in the common ancestor of H₂Ph and GgH₅; but the H₂Ph text of 766 is metrically deficient, and can hardly be authentic. We must assume that Gg has omitted *dar* for the sake of the metre.

882. Ye done hym neiper good ne gentilnesse
Rest: Ye neyþer bounte don ne gentilesse
 (H₅ bote; JRH₄ wisdom; Cx Neyther 3e wysely don)

†946. . . . quod Pandare . . .
Rest: . . . quod he . . .

1062. . . . comith . . .
Rest: . . . folweth . . .

1063, 1064. . . . and eke men rede in story
 þat aftir sharp shoures is oft victory
Rest: . . . and reden ek in storyes
 That after sharpe shoures ben victories
 (With line 1079 begins the second hand of H₂. There
 is a noticeable change in spelling; but there is no
 break in the close relationship of H₂ and Ph.)

†1136. þis liȝt nece I ne serueþ here of nouȝt
 γH₃S₁ This lyght nor I ne seruen . . .
 Gg þis liȝt ne I seruyn . . .
 H₅ This lygth ne seruit . . .
 β I nor this candel seruen . . .
 (R me thynk this candel serueth; Cx *lacking*)

†1187. He hir in hise armes to him fast hent
Rest: He here in armes faste to hym hente

†1251. Ph omits line. In H₂ line added later by hand 3

†1261. Bemenyng loue þou holy god of þingis
Rest: Benyngne loue thow holy bond of thynges
 (H₅ Beyng, O holy bond; H₄ Hemane loue)

†1283. . . . is felt perynne
Rest: . . . is felt in me
 (Gg by me *by corrector*; H₅ in me *corrected*)

Apparently GgH₅ originally had the corrupt reading of H₂Ph. The rime word in 1285 is *benygnite*.

(Lines 1289–1428 are lacking in H₂)

†1465. Wel mowen manye men þee dispise
(Ph *om.* mowen, ow₃t *inserted later before mony*)
Rest: And seyde o fol wel may men þe dispise
(Cx *om.* o)

1504. . . . herte . . .
Rest: . . . brayn . . .

†1600 . . . þe fry feende of helle
Rest: . . . flood . . .
(With line 1639 begins again hand 1 of H_2 .)

†1679. . . . hem two . . .
Rest: . . . hem boþe . . .

1744–1771. Troilus's song to love is omitted by H_2 and added later on an inset leaf in Ph. For discussion of this passage see p. 155.

1779. Out of Troy an haukyng wold he ride
Rest: In tyme of trewe . . .
The Italian reads: *Ne' tempi delle triegue egli uccellava, Fil.*
3. 91.

†1783. Felt his lady fre her wyndow down
Rest: Ful ofte his lady from hire wyndow down

†1818. Me my boke now ende y in pis wise
Rest: My pridde book . . .
(H_3 fierde)

The list of H_2Ph readings might be indefinitely extended. Those given above serve to show that the two MSS. are descended from the same corrupt original. Usually the characteristic reading is manifestly erroneous; never have we clear grounds for regarding the variant as authentic.

In the following list are given representative readings to establish the continued relationship in Book III of GgH_5 .

GgH_5 .

†74. . . . quod he . . . (+ R)
Rest: . . . quod she . . .

†171, 172. 3e schal no more han soveraynte of me

In loue . . .

(Gg seurete)

Rest : Ye shul nomore haue soueraynte

Of me in loue . . .

(H₂Ph Of my love)

277. . . . wolde on it gaure & crie

(H₅ on pat)

Rest : . . . wolde vpon it crye

(γ vpon it wolde ; H₄ wolde on me pleyne & cry ; R
wolden on yt)

357. þat gladere was þan ony man in troye

(H₅ of troye)

Rest : That gladder was þere neuere man yn Troye

(H₄ wight *for* man ; H₂ none *for* man)

†457. . . . al day & swich a fere

Rest : . . . alwey and in swych fere

683. Gg . . . & low & gan to loute

H₅ . . . and lowe gan to lowte

Rest : . . . and gan ful lowe lowte

(H₂Ph to lout)

756. Let hem not rysyn . . .

Rest : Lat no wight rysen . . .

†970. Of deynte . . .

(H₅ As deynte)

Rest : Of duete . . .

†1071. . . . so streynede him . . .

Rest : . . . to streyne hym . . .

(Cx straynith *for* to streyne)

†1123. . . . whan he bet to a wake

(H₅ bet to wake)

Rest : . . . whan he gan bet a wake

(H₁ *om.* bet)

†1202. . . . al hot . . .

Rest : . . . al hool . . .

†1413. It ny was be set . . .

(H_5 ner)

Rest : It was byset . . .

†1565. Gg For þat 3e ben . . .

H_5 For suche þat 3e ben . . .

Rest : Fox þat ye ben . . .

†1768. . . . hond . . .

Rest : . . . bond . . .

During the early part of Book III GgH_5 continue, as in the latter part of II, to associate with now this, now that, MS. of the β type. Thus in 90 they read *werkis* with R instead of *wordes* ; in 178 $JGgH_5H_3$ read *al my ful myght*, where the rest omit *ful* ; in 266 $JGgH_5Cx$ read *kepe* for *saue* ; in 391 GgH_5R_4 read *knaue* for *sclaue*. But about line 400 (with one earlier instance in 243) begins a very striking series of readings in which GgH_5 agree with H_2Ph . To this combination we must give very careful attention ; since it is of great importance to determine the character of these H_2PhGgH_5 readings.

$H_2PhGgH_5(a)$.

243. . . . with al my wit . . .

Rest : . . . with al my myght . . .

399. Hit is not one . . . (+ J)

Rest : It is not so . . .

(Cx It is not bawdry)

401. . . . as þe lest (+ H_4)

Rest : . . . what þe lyst

433. From eche in that as ferre as is the cloude

He was . . .

(H_5 From whiche)

Rest : From euery wyght . . .

The a reading, though awkward, is at least defensible *In that* must refer to *þis matere* of 432.

439. . . . þe most parte . . . (+ RCx)

Rest : . . . þe more part . . .

- *459. . . . in pis speche . . .
 (H₅ his)
 βS₁ . . . on this thing . . .
 (R of)
 γH₃ . . . of hem two . . .

We have here one of the rare instances in which α, β, and γ present three distinct readings. The γ reading, however, I regard as a scribal corruption, since all MSS. read *or to it ley an eere* in the second half of the line, and in γ this *it* must go back for its reference to line 456.

461. . . . space . . . (+ JH₄)
 Rest: . . . grace . . .
 (Cx *lacking*)

The context favours *space* as the correct reading. It is also the *durior lectio*.

524. Ne . . .
 (H₅ Nor)
 Rest: And . . .

And is clearly preferable; but *Ne*, though awkward, is not impossible.

- *543. Or þat the god ouȝt spak out of the tre
 (H₂Ph *om.* ouȝt)
 Rest: Er þat Apollo spak out of the tre
 (A ought *for* out; H₄ that tre)

This seems to be a deliberate revision. The name *Apollo* is mentioned in 541 and 546; so that the revision, if it is one, is hardly necessary.

549. Lo sone vpon þe chaungyng of the mone
 (H₂Ph vp chaungyng)
 Rest: Right soone . . .

558. Ne done hym lenger . . .
 γH₃ Ne lengere don hym . . .
 βS₁ Ne make hym lenger . . .

The γ reading seems to be a simple case of transposition. The *Rest*, if any, is between αγ and β.

- *598. And of her wymmen wele a nyne or ten
(H_2Ph om. of ; GgH_5 om. a)
Rest : And opere of here wommen nyne or ten
(D om. opere ; H_3 of hir fayr wommen)
599. But who is glad . . .
Rest : But who was glad . . .
- *601. Thurgh out an hole wip yn a litil stewe
(Gg of a lityl stewe ; H_5 a lytyll hole of a stewe)
Rest : Thurgh out a lytel wyndowe in a stuwe
(Cx om. out ; D fewe for stewe)
612. . . . pat best coupe devise (+ H_3)
Rest : . . . that koude best deuyse
The $\beta\gamma$ reading is metrically better.
621. I mene it now for she gan home to hye
(H_5 om. to)
Rest : This mene I now for she gan homward hye
(CIAD om. now ; D can hem ward)
- *626. pat madyn such a reyne fro hevyn a vale
(Gg heue)
Rest : That swych a rayn from heuene gan a vale
629. At which Pandare lough . . .
Rest : At which pandare po lough . . .
(R that logh ; Cx lough tho)
642. $H_2 + D$. . . frendly wip a frendis chere
Ph . . . prevy . . .
 $Gg H_5$. . . frely . . .
Rest : . . . gladly . . .
651. . . . seth pat 3e wolyu dwell (+ J)
(Gg syn 3e wele with me dwelle ; H_5 om. seth)
Rest : . . . syn pat yow lyst to dwelle
(Cx om. to)
694. And . . .
Rest : But . . .
696. Whan pat he wist . . .
Rest : Whan pat he sey . . .

699. . . . more let
Rest : . . . lenger lette
 (H₄ any lett)

712. Now seynt Venus . . .
Rest : Yit blisful Venus . . .
 (H₄ *om.* Yit ; Cx That *for* Yit ; D Ye *for* Yit)

In 705 $\alpha\gamma H_3$ read *Now blysful Venus*, while βS_1 read *Now seint Venus*.

- †717. . . . cumbrid or let . . .
 (H₅ encumbryd)
Rest : . . . combust or let . . .
 (Cl combest ; A combrest)

That *combust* is the correct reading is proved by Chaucer's *Astrolabe*, Pt. 2, § 4, 33. *Cumbrid* is apparently due to the suggestion of *let*.

751. . . . seid . . . (+ R)
Rest : . . . asked . . .

776. I mene as love a nothir in pis while (+ H₄R)
 (Gg wyse *for* while)
Rest : I loue as loue an oper in pis mene while
 (S₁ *om.* pis ; DCx *pe for* pis)

The reading of $\gamma H_3 S_1 J C x$ is clearly wrong. The introduction of a second *mene* before *while* is a very easy mistake. It is just possible, however, that we have here a revision bungled by the scribe. *As loue an oper in pis mene while*, would suit metre and context perfectly. The corruption must have existed in the common original, but apparently not till after $H_2 Ph G g H_5$ were derived from it.

819. . . . long here
 (Gg longe here *by corrector*)
Rest : . . . alwey here

821. . . . how so . . .
Rest : . . . or how . . .
 (R *om.* how)

857. Hit nedith more . . .
 (H₅ þe more)
Rest : Wel more nede is it . . .
 (ClR *om.* Wel ; H₁ now *for* nede ; Cx myster *for*
 nede ; R nede it is ; H₃ is nede hit ; A *om.* it)
875. I pray to god y neuer more have ioy (+ H₃)
 (H₃ *om.* to ; neuer moot ; Gg neuermore haue I)
Rest : I biddle god I neuere mot haue Ioye
 (S₁H₄ þat I ; H₄ neuermore ; Cx neuer more haue I ;
 R I haue neuere Ioye)
889. Is nedeles . . .
 (H₅ endles)
Rest : Is causeles . . .
922. . . . tho . . . (+ J)
Rest : . . . þanne . . .
924. . . . for . . .
Rest : . . . syn . . .
933. . . . clepid . . .
Rest : . . . called . . .
934. . . . wrecchis nel hit lere
 (H₂Ph here *for* lere)
Rest : . . . wrecches wol not lere
953. This Troylus on knees sone hym set
 (Gg kneis ; H₅ kne)
Rest : . . . ful sone on knes hym sette
 (H₁ knowes ; J knowe ; R *om.* hym)

The *a* reading is metrically deficient unless one reads a dissyllabic *kneës* or *knowes* ; but in *Troil.* 3. 1592 the word has dissyllabic value in all the MSS. (CpH₁AJ read *knowes*, GgS₁ *kneis*, ClH₃CxH₄R *knees*, and H₅ *know*). Cf. also *Prioress's Tale* 1719 and *Franklin's Tale* 1025. In Gower the word is regularly monosyllabic, *knes*. It is a monosyllable in 1080.

957. H₂Ph And þogh she shold anon have be dede
 H₅ And þow she anon shulde haue ben ded
 Gg *Leaves line blank.*
Rest : Ne pough men sholden smyten of here hed
 (S₁ pough þat)

The α reading as given by H_2Ph and by H_5 is metrically indefensible. The deliberate omission of the line by Gg would indicate that the scribe found it marked for correction in his exemplar. If we supply *þat* after *pogh* and adopt the order of words given by H_5 , the line becomes admissible; but I am strongly of the opinion that the α reading is a scribal corruption, and that the $\beta\gamma$ reading is alone authentic.

- †962. H_2GgH_5 And seyð nece how wel lord can he knele
 Ph And seyð lord how longe wil 3e knele
 Rest : And seyde nece se how this lord kan knele
 (H_3 om. se; H_1 om. kan; H_4 doth knele)

Again the α reading is corrupt. The clumsy attempt of Ph to improve upon it indicates that the scribe found it unsatisfactory. It is possible that the line originally stood: *And seyde nece how wel this lord kan knele*, and that it was then revised to read as in $\beta\gamma$. Note that H_3 omits *se*.

989. . . . no wight . . .

Rest : . . . no man . . .

- †1014. . . . her . . . (— Ph)

Rest : . . . his . . .

Ph has corrected an obvious slip. The pronouns *he* and *hym* are found in all MSS. in 1013, and *hym* again in 1015. All refer to *Ielosye*.

1041. . . . clepe . . .

Rest : . . . calle . . .

Cf. line 933.

1046. Wheper ye wil . . .

(H_2Ph Wher ye wil; Gg wolde)

Rest : Wher so yow lyste . . .

(Cx Whether so; R Wher so euer; A om. yow)

The $\beta\gamma$ reading is preferable; but the α reading is possible.

1063. Folk sene . . .

Rest : Men sen . . .

(H_3 For men seyn)

The reading of H_3 looks like a conflation, with *Folk* changed to *For*.

1067. Eke it poght hym . . .

Rest : For it poughte hym . . .

1079. . . . his heede (+ H_3R)

Rest : . . . þe hed

1082. . . . sche þat schulde hise daies liȝt

(Gg he)

Rest : . . . his sorwes lyghte

(H_3 *om.* lyghte)

Though the α reading is not impossible, I suspect that it is due to a scribe.

†1084. þus seide he ȝet god woot of þis game

(Gg god wot ȝit)

Rest : Than seyde he þus god wot þat of þis game

(H_4R *om.* þat ; Cx grame)

The omission of *þat*, which H_4R share with α , is certainly an error.

†1086. Therwith for sorwȝ so his hert swette

(H_2Ph þat *for* so ; H_2 swelt ; Gg schette ; H_5 swett)

Rest : Ther with þe sorwe so his herte shette

(A *om.* þe ; Cx of *for* so ; H_3 so in his herte ; D soo his sorow of his herte ; R his sorwe to his herte)

The context makes clear that *shette* and not *swette* is the correct reading. Note that Gg has emended to *schette*. The reading *for* is, however, entirely possible.

1127. Wole Troillus do þus allas for schame

Rest : What Troylus wol ye do þus for shame

(A *om.* ye ; H_4 thus fy for shame)

The $\beta\gamma$ reading, with its direct address, is more effective ; but the α reading is perfectly satisfactory.

1153. þat badde sche him to telle . . .

(Gg *om.* him)

γ She bad hym þat to telle . . .

(H_1 for to tel þat)

$\beta S_1 H_3$ This bad she hym to telle . . .

(H_3 Thus)

I regard γ as a mere scribal variant of α . The difference between α and β is trivial.

154 *The Manuscript Relations in Book III.*

1163. . . . answeride him . . .

Rest : *Omit* him.

1250. Hir snowe whit þroote . . . (+ H₃R)
 (H₂Ph On hir)

Rest : Here snowysssh þrote . . .

†1288. *Omit* heyghe. (— Gg, + H₃)

Gg has corrected a defective line. The omission by H₃ suggests that the word had been added later in the common original of all the MSS.

1348. . . . we ben . . . (H₂ *lacking*) (+ A)

Rest : . . . ye ben . . .

(D *lacking*)

†1388. . . . as longe . . . (H₂ *lacking*) (+ H₄)

Rest : . . . al so longe . . .

1389. As hadde myda for his coueytise (H₂ *lacking*) (+ A)

Rest : . . . ful of coueytise

(D *lacking*)

The *a* reading is distinctly preferable. Cf. lines 1390, 1391.

1390. . . . as hote & as stronge (H₂ *lacking*) (+ AH₄)

Rest : . . . as hoot and stronge

(H₃D *lacking*)

1406. *Omit* For (H₂ *lacking*) (— Gg)

1512. For I am 3oures . . . (— Gg)

(H₅ youre)

Rest : For I am þyn . . .

1554. At suche a plizt . . . (— H₅)

Rest : In swych a plyt . . .

1595. An hundrid tymes . . .

(GgH₅ tyme)

γ An hondred sithe . . .

βH₃S₁ A thousand tyme . . .

(H₄CxS₁ tymes)

I regard γ as a scribal variation of α ; but see below, p. 172.

- *1643. . . . al day þis þing . . . (+ A)
 (H₅ al wey ; GgA þis þyng al day)
Rest : . . . þis matere ofte . . .
 (H₄ ofte this mater)
1707. H₂PhGg + A . . . so to rise
 H₅ + H₃ . . . for to ryse
Rest : . . . þus to ryse
1793. . . . he lorn had euery wight
 (Ph he loue had of euery ; H₅ he lorn hald)
Rest : . . . he lost held euery wyght

Besides the agreements noted above, instances of H₂PhGg, without H₅, are found in lines 175, 186, 338, 901, and of H₂PhH₅, without Gg, in 75, 159, 870, 1049, 1132. These cases are all trivial.

An examination of the readings recorded in the long list just given makes clear the following facts :

(1) There are a few cases, indicated by a *, where the character of the variants is such as to justify the hypothesis that H₂PhGgH₅ present an unrevised authentic reading.

(2) In a majority of the 65 cases the H₂PhGgH₅ reading is in every way possible, and *may* be an unrevised authentic reading.

(3) In a number of cases, indicated by a †, the H₂PhGgH₅ reading is clearly corrupt ; and in several other cases it is probably corrupt.

From these facts we must conclude that H₂Ph and GgH₅ were derived from the common original of all the MSS. in its unrevised, *a* state. The few corrupt readings in which they share, most of them of a trivial character, can best be explained as errors in Chaucer's own archetype copy which had escaped correction at the author's hand. Were H₂Ph and GgH₅ descended from a common ancestor, other than Chaucer's archetype, we should expect to find, as in the case of the γ MSS., a much greater degree of corruption. We should, moreover, on such a theory, expect GgH₅ to agree with H₂Ph in omitting the Boethian hymn to love, a discussion of which must next concern us.

TROILUS'S HYMN TO LOVE.

The most striking *a* variant in Book III is one in which GgH₅ do not share, the omission, namely, of the four stanzas, lines 1744–

1771, which contain the triumphant song of Troilus in praise of love, the ideas of which are taken from Boethius, Book II, metre 8. In H_2 the stanzas are omitted without any indication of their loss. In Ph they have been added later, though by the original scribe, on an inset leaf with proper indication of their place in the body of the text.¹ The source from which Ph has drawn the stanzas is clearly a MS. of the γ type closely related to H_1 . In 1748 Ph reads *Knyttith* with γ instead of *enditeth*; and in 1755 *rosy carte* with H_1 instead of *rosy day*.

Since these stanzas are omitted only by H_2 Ph, we should at first glance regard the omission as due to the carelessness of the scribe who wrote their corrupt common ancestor. But it is hard to see how precisely these four stanzas should have been overlooked. There is nothing in the context to mislead the scribal eye into a sin of anticipation; nor with a loss of four stanzas can we suppose the careless turning of a leaf. Moreover, line 1743, *And þan he wold syng in þis manere*, clearly requires that the actual words of the song follow. It is inconceivable that so beautiful a passage should deliberately have been omitted. The probabilities favour the hypothesis that the passage did not yet exist in Chaucer's original at the time the H_2 Ph ancestor was derived.

This probability is greatly strengthened by an examination of the sources. In this part of Book III Chaucer is following closely the text of *Filostrato*. In stanza 73 of Book III Boccaccio says that Troilo began, *Lietamente a cantare in cotal guisa*, and there follows a song in honour of love, which in general character is a good deal like the song which Chaucer puts in the mouth of his Troilus. But the song in *Filostrato* Chaucer had already used for the proem to Book III, and plainly it could not again be used here; so its place was supplied by adapting a hymn to love out of the second book of Boethius. Apparently this substitution did not immediately occur to him; and for a time line 1743, *And þan he wold syng in þis manere*, was followed by a blank space. During this state of the text the ancestor of H_2 Ph must have been derived.

If so, how are we to explain the presence of the passage in GgH_5 ? Two explanations suggest themselves. Either the ancestor of GgH_5 supplied the omission later from another source, as does Ph before our eyes; or the passage had been added in

¹ See *The MSS. of Chaucer's Troilus*, Plate XVIII.

Chaucer's original before the GgH_5 ancestor was derived. As between these two explanations the evidence does not permit of any decision. In 1751 GgH_5 have the corrupt reading *vstable* of JH_4 instead of *stable*. This would point towards the first explanation. That Gg was derived later than Ph is shown by their treatment of the free-choice soliloquy of Book IV.¹ This would furnish corroboration for the second hypothesis. In either event it seems clear that Chaucer's text existed for a time without the Boethian hymn to love.

READINGS CHARACTERISTIC OF β .

The most important series of divergent readings in Book III is that which characterizes β , readings in which JH_4RCx agree as against α and γ . With these β MSS. are sometimes associated H_3 and S_1 , which in other lines, as we have seen, are associated, now one, now both, with γ . So varying are H_3 and S_1 in their allegiance that it will be necessary to specify their readings in each of the instances presently to be discussed.

The most significant β variant has to do with the position of two stanzas, numbered 190 and 191 (lines 1324–1337) in Skeat's edition. In $JRCx$ they are moved down to a position between stanzas 202 and 203 (according to the standard numbering), that is to say, they become lines 1401–1414. In this arrangement H_3 and S_1 agree. H_4 has the two stanzas in *both positions*. In these two stanzas, as we shall see, there are a number of distinctive β readings. H_4 has the two stanzas in the $\alpha\gamma$ position with $\alpha\gamma$ readings, and then repeats them in the β position with β readings. Moreover, $JH_4RCx + H_3S_1$ give a variant reading of line 1415 which suits it to a position immediately after the transposed stanzas, and $JH_4RCx + H_3$ a variant reading of 1323 which immediately precedes the stanzas in $\alpha\gamma$. In S_1 the stanzas have been moved, but 1323 has not been revised. In H_4 , which has the shifted stanzas in both positions, 1323 has the β reading. These revisions of individual lines are discussed in due place in the list which follows. They bear important evidence to the deliberate nature of the shift. What motive may have led to this shifting of the stanzas is not clear. They contain the author's reflections on the story, and in either position interrupt the flow of the narrative. That the $\alpha\gamma$ position is the earlier is shown by the echo of *telle*

¹ See below, pp. 216–221.

from line 1323 to the first line of the shifted passage. Moreover, had the β text been the original, there would have been no occasion for revising line 1415.¹

We must now give the variant readings which characterize the β group. It will be noticed that they are much more frequent after line 400.

$JH_4RCx(\beta)$.

58. JCx . . . and sor for to sike (Cx sore)

R . . . and often sore sike

H_4 . . . gan ofte forto sike

H_3 . . . and short gan to syke

Rest : . . . and short for to syke

The β original must have been confused, since its descendants are so uncertain of the reading.

80. . . . to hir seye ($- H_4$)

Rest : . . . to it seye

82. . . . he was . . . ($- J$)

Rest : . . . he wex . . .

*269. For neuere was there wight I dar wel swere

($- R, + S_1 + GgH_5$)

(Cx yit *for* ther ; H_5 pat *for* ther ; H_4 Ne neuer was
ther wiht I durste swere)

Rest : For pat man is vnore dar I swere

(Cp I dar wel swere)

A clear case of revision, in which, however, R retains the earlier reading. GgH_5 do not become definitely α until about line 400 (see above, p. 147).

*293. Han writen or this as yit men teche vs yonge

(J men yit ; H_4 alwey *for* or this)

Rest : Han euere yet prouerbed to vs yonge

(H_2 *om.* yet ; Ph prouerbyd $\text{\textit{zet}}$; H_1H_3 this *for* yet ;

CpS_2 Dig thus *for* yet ; S_2 Dig pise $\text{\textit{zonge}}$)

¹ One is tempted to seek for some connection between the shifting of stanzas 190 and 191 by β and the loss in the AD ancestor (see p. 138) of lines 1345-1414. But no such connection seems to exist. The loss in the AD ancestor is of a single leaf with ten stanzas. Eleven stanzas intervene between the two positions of the shifted stanzas. The loss of lines 1289-1428 in H_2 is due to mutilation of the existing MS.

371. . . . man . . . ($- H_4$)

Rest : . . . wyght . . .

379. But rather wolde I dye . . . ($+ S_1$)

(J That *for* But ; H_4S_1 die I wolde)

Rest : That rapier deye I wolde . . .

(Gg(H_5) What *for* That)

Note that J reads *That* with $\alpha\gamma$ and that H_4S_1 keep the $\alpha\gamma$ word-order.

396. . . . doost me . . . ($- H_4, + S_1$)

(Cx hast me)

Rest : . . . me dost . . .

*442. I nyl nat seyn that thogh he laye ful softe ($+ S_1$)

(J *om.* ful ; S_1 though þat ; Cx *lacking*)

Rest : Nyl I nought swere al þough he lay softe

The $\alpha\gamma$ reading is unmetrical unless we read *laye*, a dissyllabic subjunctive. This form, *laye*, is found only in J, which departs from β by omitting *ful*.

444. And . . . ($+ S_1$)

(Cx *lacking*)

Rest : Ne . . .

448. This . . . ($+ H_3S_1$)

(Cx *lacking*)

Rest : That . . .

449. And . . . ($+ S_1$)

(Cx *lacking*)

Rest : But . . .

*450. This mene while . . . ($+ S_1$)

(Cx *lacking*)

Rest : That in þis while . . .

(Cp H_1S_2 Dig which *for* while ; AD That in þis mene while)

Note the conflate reading of AD.

*455. In euery thing . . . ($+ S_1$)

(Cx *lacking*)

Rest : So as þey dorste . . .

459. Wolde on this thing or to it leye an eere (+ S₁)
 (R of *for* on ; H₄ thynges ; Cx *lacking*)
 a Wolde in þis speche . . .
 γH₃ Wolde of hem two . . .

The γ reading can hardly be authentic, since, with the plural *hem two*, it must refer back to line 456.

461. As Cupido wolde hem a space sende
 (J Cupide ; R hem a grace wold sende ; Cx *lacking*)
Rest : As þat Cupido wolde hem space sende
 (H₅ And þat ; γH₃S₁ grace)

For the reading *grace* see above, p. 148.

468. . . . hir thoght . . .
 (Cx *lacking*)
Rest : . . . she þoughte . . .
 (Cp he thought)

484. . . . this fir (— Cx)
Rest : . . . þe fyr

489. . . . wight . . . (+ S₁)
Rest : . . . man . . .

- *490. Ne bar hym bet to don his frend to spede
Rest : Ne bar hym bet þan he with outen drede
 The β reading is distinctly preferable.

492. That euery word or look or sonde or cheere
 (R That euere looke or euery sond or chiere ; Cx *om.*
second or)
Rest : . . . or sonde or lok or chere
 (H₂Ph sond or word or loke ; GgH₅ soun ; Gg *om.*
first or ; H₃ *om. second or*)

- *503. An hondred vers . . .
Rest : Neigh half þis bok . . .

A clear case of revision in the interest of accuracy. *Neigh half þis bok* is a long limit for even a love letter.

508. As I haue seyð . . . (+ S₁)
Rest : As I haue told . . .

512. . . . alwey . . .
Rest : . . . euere . . .
 (H₅ *om. euere*)

- *518. Hadde as hym thought . . . (+ S₁)
Rest: Hadde out of doute . . .
 (Gg Lad *for* Hadde; H₅ And *for* Hadde)

525. That thoughte he . . . (+ S₁)
 (Cx He thought)
Rest: That wyst he . . .

528. Thus . . . (+ S₁)
Rest: Now . . .

529. . . . bothe wild and tame (+ H₃S₁)
Rest: . . . bope fremed and tame
 (H₂PhGg frend)

This substitution of a familiar for a less familiar word looks like a scribal corruption, perhaps due to the incorporation of a gloss. However, the change may be due to authentic revision.

544. To telle hym whan the grekis sholden fle
 (J pat *for* the; H₄ om. the)
Rest: To telle hym next whan grekes sholden fle
 (H₂Ph whan pat þe grekis; Gg whi þe grekys; DS₁
 whan þe grekes)

The readings of H₂Ph and Gg suggest that the line may first have stood: *To telle hym next whan þe grekes sholde fle*. This was then emended by γ by dropping þe (note, however, the reading of DS₁), and later by β by dropping *next*.

- *546. But prey appollo þat he wolde hym spede
 (R wel *for* wolde; H₄ wil *for* wolde)
Rest: . . . helpen in þis nede
 (H₂PhD help hym in his nede; H₃ that he helpe;
 H₅ to helpen)

554. Whan he was there . . . (+ S₁)
Rest: Whan he was come . . .
 (Cl whanne)

555. . . . at hym self . . . (+ S₁ + D)
Rest: . . . of himself . . .

558. Ne make hym lenger . . . (+ S₁)
 α Ne done hym lenger . . .
 γH₃ Ne lengere don hym . . .
 (H₃ hym doon)

I regard the γH₃ reading as a scribal transposition of α.

- *568. And she agayne gan to hym for to rowne
 (H_4 Cx *om. first* to ; H_4 on game *for* agayne)
Rest : Soone after þis she gan to hym to rowne
 (Cl to hym she gan ; Cp H_1 S $_2$ A H_3 she to him gan ;
 S_1 Soon after that she gan unto him rowne ;
 H_2 Ph H_5 H $_3$ D *om. second* to)
573. . . . men sholde . . . (+ S_1)
Rest : . . . men myght . . .
578. . . . soth therof . . . (+ H_3 S_1 +AD)
 (H_4 there *for* therof ; S_1 AD a soth)
Rest : . . . therof soth . . .
 (Cl pere *for* therof ; H_5 *om.* therof)
- *579, 580. But pat she graunted with hym for to go
 Withoute awayt . . . (+ S_1)
 (Cx Wythoute nayeng)
Rest : But pat with outen awayte with hym to go
 She graunted hym . . .
 (H_2 Ph But þerwith out with hym to go, Ph *inserts*
 more *after* out ; H_5 withowte more ; H_1 *om.* outen ;
 Gg H_5 it *for second* him)
- *588. . . . for I do as yow liste
 (J pat yow liste)
Rest : . . . and do now as yow lyste
 (H_1 *om.* and ; Gg riȝt *for* now ; H_5 ye luste)
591. . . . fel and boones (+ H_3 S_1)
Rest : . . . soule and bones
 Fel and boones seems a much more appropriate reading. *Soule*
 is apparently an error of "Adam Scriveyn" not corrected till β .
- *593. . . . what shold I lenger dwelle
 (J longe telle)
Rest : . . . what sholde I more telle
 Note that J only partially incorporates the β reading.
- *604. But now to purpos . . . (+ S_1)
Rest : But to þe poynt now . . .
 (Gg *om.* now)

†607, 608. And after to the soper alle and some
 Whan tyme was to soper they hem sette (+ S₁)
 (R And afterward to souper . . . Whan it was tyme
 faste they hem sette ; H₄ tyme it was ; Cx they be
 sette)

Rest : And after to þe souper alle and some
 Whan tyme was ful softe þey hem sette
 (Cl hym *for* hem ; D And after þat to souper, hem
 þei ; GgPh *om.* þe)

A clear case of error. β has recreated *soper*. Note the emendation of R.

635. For Nece this is yowre owen hous parde (+ S₁)
 (J *om.* is)

Rest : For whi . . .

659. . . . shal . . .

Rest : . . . wol . . .

*668. And al with Inne shal yowr seluen be (+ S₁)

Rest : And þere I seyde . . .
 (Gg þere be sydyn ; H₅ þere he seyde)

A revision in the interest of greater clearness.

*672. Than is it tyme for to gon to reste (+ H₃S₁)
 (R *om.* for ; H₄ That it is tyme for you goth to rest)

Rest : So go we slepe I trowe it be þe beste
 (A To go ; H₂Ph *om.* So ; H₅ and trowe *later altered*
 to y trowe ; H₂ it is)

673. There was no moore . . . (+ S₁)

Rest : There nys no more . . .
 (H₂PhH₅AD is)

*677. And alweye in this meene while it ron (+ S₁)
 (S₁ so it roon)

Rest : And euere mo so sternelych it ron
 (Gg to sterneliche ; D stronglich)

702. Of al this thing . . .
 (H₄ *om.* Of)

Rest : Of alle þis werk . . .

- *705. Now seint venus thow me grace sende (+ S₁)
(R Now Venus pray I pat thow)

Rest: Now blysful Venus . . .

In 712 α reads *seynt venus* where γ and β read *blisful Venus*.

- *759 Here at this litel trappe dore . . . (+ S₁)
(R a *for* this; J lite)

Rest: . . . secre trappe dore . . .

773. That for to holden longe a man in honde (+ H₃)
(RCx a man longe)

Rest: . . . holde in loue . . .

- *800, 801. Gan therwith al aboute hir herte colde
And with a sik she sodeynly answerde (+ S₁)
(Cx *om.* al; H₄ al hir herte to colde)

Rest: Gan sodeynly aboute her herte colde
And with a syk she sorwfully answerede
(H₁ *line* 800 *over erasure*; D *om.* *line* 800; H₂PhCl
ful *for* she)

- *820 O brotel wele of worldly Ioye vnstable (+ S₁)
(JRH₄ o wordly Ioye)

Rest: . . . of mannes Ioye . . .

- *882. Ye neyther wisdom don ne gentilesse
(Cx Neyther ye wysely don)

Rest: . . . bounte . . .
(H₅ bote; H₂Ph Ye done hym neiþer good ne)

The reading *wisdom* is a distinct improvement, serving as it does to balance *folie* of 879.

- †922. *Omit* pat (— J)

- *937. . . . and this matere on honde (+ S₁)
(Cx & haue this mater in hande)

Rest: . . . and pat we han on honde
(GgH₃ 3e han; H₅ we be; A in honde)

Note the conflate reading of Cx.

952. . . . al be . . .

Rest: . . . ben alle . . .
(S₁H₅ *om.* alle)

958. She myghte . . . (+ S₁)

Rest: She kowde . . .

971. But wel wot I . . .
 (Cx But wele I rede)
Rest: But wel fynde I . . .
 (H₃ I fynde)
1011. So causeles . . . (+ S₁)
Rest: Thus causeles . . .
1019. And he pat . . . (+ S₁ + Δ D)
 (R *om.* he)
Rest: And who pat . . .
 (GgH₅ And ho at)
1096. . . . alwey at the laste (+ H₃S₁)
Rest: . . . certeyn at þe laste
 (Ph *om.* þe)
- 1101, 1102. I wis yowr owen Troilus is lorn
 Allas . . . (+ H₃S₁)
Rest: Allas yowre owne Troylus is lorn
 I wys . . .
 (H₂ oure ; Gg *om.* owne)
1115. They gan to frote and ek his templis tweyne (+ H₃S₁)
 (Cx *lacking*)
Rest: . . . and wethe his temples tweyne
- *1136. I nor this candel seruen here of naught
 (R Me thynk this candel serueth ; Cx *lacking*)
Rest: This lyght nor I ne seruen . . .
 (H₂Ph nece *for* nor ; H₃ and *for* nor ; Gg þis liȝt ne I
 seruyn ; H₅ þis lygth ne seruit)
1141. . . . his candele . . . (- R, + H₃ + Gg)
 (Cx *lacking*)
Rest: . . . þe candele . . .
1153. This bad she hym to telle . . . (+ H₃S₁)
 (H₃ Thus ; Cx *lacking*)
 α þat badde sche him to telle . . .
 (Gg *om.* him)
 γ She bad hym þat to telle . . .
 (H₁ Sho bad him for to tel þat)
- I regard γ as a scribal variant of α .

*1163, 1177. Criseide answerde . . . (+ H₃S₁)

(Cx *lacking in 1163*)

Rest: And she answered . . .

Precisely the same variation is found in 1163 and 1177.

1214. . . . al day . . . (+ H₃S₁)

Rest: . . . often . . .

Lines 1212–1246 are written twice in R, once in their proper place on fol 57^a, and earlier, between lines 1099 and 1100 on fols. 54^b and 55^a. In the earlier occurrence line 1214 has the *ay* reading.

1218. . . . now his cure (– H₄, + H₃)

Rest: . . . al his cure

1225. . . . when it comth to the nede (+ H₃S₁)

(H₄RCx *om. the*)

Rest: . . . yf it comth to þe nede

(H₁ *of for yf*; Cl come; H₅ to com to nede)

1239. . . . and tolde al hir entente (+ H₃S₁)

(H₄ & told him al hir entente)

Rest: . . . and told hym here entente

(Gg tok)

Note the conflate reading of H₄.

1245. Is . . . (+ H₃)

Rest: Was . . .

1258. And nexte yow ymeneus I the grete (+ H₃S₁)

(Cx *om. yow*; H₃ *om. I*)

Rest: And next þat . . .

(Cl *þe for þat*)

Yow must refer to Love and Venus, addressed earlier in the stanza; but the construction is, to say the least, awkward, and I suspect that the β reading is corrupt.

1260. . . . þat . . . (+ H₃)

Rest: . . . which . . .

1264. And . . . (+ H₃)

Rest: For . . .

1280. . . . whom . . . (+ H₃S₁)

Rest: . . . whiche . . .

1283. . . . this . . . (+ H₃)
(H₄ thos)
Rest : . . . pat . . .
- *1284. That am vnworthy to yow lady bright (+ H₃)
(H₃ vn to you ; Cx to yow my lady)
Rest : . . . to so swete a wyght
1295. Ne do no thing pat do yow displesaunce (+ H₃S₁)
(H₄ I *for* Ne ; R thing vnto 3owr displesaunce)
Rest : . . . pat yow be displesaunce
(Gg pow be *over erasure* ; H₅ be to yow)
1307. For this suffiseth which pat seyde is heere (+ H₃S₁)
(H₄ *om.* pat ; Cx is sayd)
Rest : For it suffisith pis pat seyd is here
(Gg vnfaceþ ; Ph pat pat is seyd ; H₂ *lacking.*)
1316. They felte in loue . . . (— R, + H₃)
Rest : Felten in loue . . .
(R Felten the loue)
- *1323. That is so heygh pat no man kan it telle (+ H₃)
(H₃ so high is ; Cx *om.* it)
Rest : . . . al ne kan I telle.

The revision is connected with the shifting of stanzas 190 and 191 in β .¹ Line 1323 is the last line of stanza 189. In $\alpha\gamma$ it is immediately followed by the line, *But soth is pough I kan not telle al*, which echoes *al ne kan I telle*. Note that S₁, though it shifts the stanzas, does not alter this line ; and that H₄ has the β reading though it has the two stanzas here as well as in their β position.

- *1324. But how al thogh I kan nat tellen al (+ H₃)
(J thoght)
S₁ But al be it pat . . .
Rest : But soth is pough . . . (+ H₄ *first copy*)
(H₁ pat thought)

This is the first line of the shifted stanzas. Note that the first copy in H₄, in the $\alpha\gamma$ position, retains the $\alpha\gamma$ reading.

¹ See above, p. 157.

168 *The Manuscript Relations in Book III.*

- *1327. . . . the gret of his sentence (+ H₃S₁)
 Rest: . . . al hoolly his sentence (+ H₄ *first copy*)
 (Ph as *for* al; H₂ *lacking*)

The revised reading is a more accurate statement of the fact.

1329. . . . any thing . . . (+ H₃S₁)
 Rest: . . . ony word . . . (+ H₄ *first copy*)

- *1334. And putte hem hool in yowr discrecioun (+ H₃,
 (J & *for* in; Cx And I putte)
 S₁ And put tham alle . . .
 Rest: And putte it al . . . (+ H₄ *first copy*)
 (A in al ȝoure)

Note the conflate reading of S₁.

1348. That this . . . (- Cx, + H₃)
 Rest: That it . . .
 (Gg *om.* it)

1354. . . . this wo (+ H₃)
 Rest: . . . swych wo
 (A al þe wo)

1360. And wel a thousand tymes gan he sike (+ H₃S₁)
 (J thouusand)
 Rest: . . . an hundred tymes . . .

The Italian reads *mille sospiri*, *Fil.* 3. 37. This would seem to mark the β reading as more original; but since the overwhelming weight of evidence points the other way, the closer approximation of β to the Italian must be regarded as fortuitous.

1362. For sorwe . . . (+ H₃)
 Rest: For wo . . .

1367. . . . hir auenture (+ H₃)
 (H₃ her *inserted above later*)
 Rest: . . . þis auenture

1382. . . . clepyn . . . (+ H₃)
 Rest: . . . callen . . .

*1392, 1393. To techen hem þat couetise is vice

And loue is vertu thogh men halde it nyce

(H₃ *lacking*)

Rest: To techen hem þat þey ben in þe vice

And loueres nought al pough þey hold hem nyce

(PhH₅ *om. first* þey; H₁ *han for* ben; S₁ pough þat
men holde; Ph wyse)

Note that S₁ incorporates part of the β reading in 1393. A striking case of revision in the interest of greater clearness.

1395. . . . ful assured . . . (+ S₁)

(Cx fully; R assented)

H₃ . . . bothe assured . . .

Rest: . . . wel assured . . .

1399. . . . al þat heuynesse (+ H₃)

(H₃ *their besinesse*)

Rest: . . . al swych heuynesse

*1415. Whan þat the Cok . . . (+ H₃S₁)

(R *om. þat*)

Rest: But whanne þe kok . . .

The Italian reads *Ma poich' e' galli . . . udiro Cantar, Fil. 3. 42*, which marks the $\alpha\gamma$ reading as more original. The change was dictated by the shifting of stanzas 190 and 191, which in the β position immediately precede this line. The last line of stanza 191 (line 1337) reads in all the MSS.: *But now to purpos of my raper speche*. It was necessary, therefore, to avoid the repetition of *But*.

1418. . . . and oute hir stremes throwe (+ H₃)

(J *stremyes*)

Rest: . . . bemys . . .

(H₁ *bemye*)

Either word is possible. See Skeat's glossary *s.v. stream*.

1431. . . . thy blake weede (+ H₃S₁)

Rest: . . . þi derke wede

Only two lines before occurs the phrase *O blake nyght*; so that the repetition of the word in β is not very happy.

- *1437-1439. Thow rakel nyght ther god makere of kynde
 For thow so downward hasteth of malice
 The corse and to oure emysperie bynde (+ H₃)
 (R *om.* so, the hastef, he the bynde; H₄Cx Thi cours)
Rest: The for þyn hast and þyn vnkynde vice
 So faste ay to oure hemyspere bynde
 (Cp *om. second* þyn; D and for þin; H₂Ph vn to 3oure
 emyspery)

I have not recorded the many spellings of *hemyspere*. Note that H₄Cx misunderstand *corse* (= curse), and regard *Thi cours* (= course) as the object of *hasteth*. Such a reading does not allow for the following *and*.

1440. That neuer mo . . . (- Cx, + H₃S₁)
 (R euermo)
Rest: That neuere more . . .
- *1441. For thorough thy rakel hying out of Troye (+ H₃S₁)
 (J lying; S₁ with *for* thorough)
Rest: For now for þow so hyst out of Troye
 (H₂Ph For now þou higest so; Gg *om.* so; H₅ For
 be cause þou so fast hiest)
1451. . . . loue and nyght . . . (+ H₃)
Rest: . . . nyght and loue . . .
1455. . . . what sekist thow in this plase (+ H₃)
 (J *om.* in; R here *written and deleted before in*)
Rest: . . . why sekestow þis place
1464. . . . wolde he chide (+ H₃S₁)
Rest: . . . gan he chyde
1466. That hast al nyght the dawynge by thy side (+ H₃)
Rest: . . . þe Dawyng al nyght . . .
1470. I prey to god . . . (+ H₃S₁)
 (H₃ And *for* I)
Rest: I bidde god . . .
- *1473. The verray roote . . . (+ H₃S₁)
Rest: The welle and rote . . .
 (H₂ þe well of roote; A wile)

1479. . . . may . . . (+ H₃S₁)

Rest : . . . shal . . .

1492. . . . thus anon (+ H₃S₁)

Rest : . . . right anoon

(GgH₅ and þat anon)

1496. And euerich egle ben the haukes feere (+ H₃)

(R an haukys)

Rest : . . . þe dowues fere

(Ph a dowves)

The antithesis between dove and eagle is so much more obvious, that at first sight one is inclined to regard the hawk as due to scribal blundering. But the eagle and the night-hawk are also traditional foes. Pliny says, *Nat. Hist.*, 9. 24, "Nocturnus accipiter . . . bellum internecivum gerit cum aquila, coherentesque sæpe prenduntur." Since clearly justifiable, the *durior lectio*, *hawkes*, has every claim to be regarded as authentic. The reading *dowues* may be either Chaucer's first writing of the line, or an error due to "Adam scriveyn," not corrected till after the derivation of α and γ.

1514. . . . or now . . . (+ H₃)

Rest : . . . er pis . . .

1538. But slepe ne may noon in his herte synke (— J)

(Cx *om.* ne ; H₄ ther *for* ne)

S₁ . . . ne may þere non . . .

Rest : . . . ne may þere . . .

(H₂Ph No sleep may þere ; H₅ there ne may)

Note the conflate reading of S₁. H₃ and J have the αγ reading.

*1561. That som of vs for god our hede may ake (+ H₃)

(J hir hede ; H₃ his hede ; Cx That somme of vs our hedis ought to ake)

Rest : . . . I trowe here hedes ake

1563. This bright morwe . . . (+ H₃)

Rest : This mery morwe . . .

(ClCp murye ; Cp mury ; H₂ mey)

Though all the β MSS. read a monosyllabic *bright*, we must assume the weak form *brighte*, which is grammatically correct and necessary for the metre.

1576. . . . which nedeth naught to seye (+ $H_3 + D$)
 (J naugh ; R which is not goodly for to seye)

Rest : . . . chargeth . . .

1582. . . . hoolly . . . (+ H_3)

Rest : . . . fully . . .

*1595. A thousand tyme and gan the day to blisse (+ H_3S_1)
 (H_4CxS_1 tymes ; H_3 gan he day blisse ; S_1 þe day gan
 blysse)

α An hundrid tymes and gan þe tyme blysse
 (Gg H_5 tyme ; H_2Ph blesse)

γ An hondred sithe he gan þe tyme blysse
 (CID and gan)

I take the γ reading to be a scribal emendation intended to avoid the repetition of *tyme* in α . In β the same purpose is attained by substituting *day to* for the second *tyme*. The change to *thousand* is characteristic of β . Cf. above, line 1360.

†1600. H_4 contoun ; R coichyton ; Cx Cochita ; H_3 conciton ;
 J flagitoun, flag *over erasure*.

Rest : Fro Flegiton the fery flood of helle

(H_5 om. Fro ; H_1 flagitoun ; Cp flegtoun ; A fletyon ;
 H_2Ph feende of helle)

The various readings of the β MSS. seem to be variations of *Cocytus*. Note that in J the word has been corrected, so that we are justified in inferring that J originally read some form like that in R or H_3 . Phlegethon is peculiarly the "fiery flood," so that Cocytus is hardly correct. Moreover, the β MSS. make the word end in *n* rather than *s*. This is the only instance in Chaucer in which either river is mentioned. Styx is mentioned in *Troil.* 4. 1540, as the *put of helle*. It is possible that the mistaken change may be due to Chaucer.

1621, 1622. God help me so but take it naught a grief

For loue of god be war of this myschief (+ H_3S_1)

(R at grief ; H_3 on greefe, For the love ; R tak hede
 of this)

Rest : That I shal seyn be war of this myschief

(Cl of of *for* of this ; A such *for* this)

The revision¹, if it is such and not a scribal corruption, is not a

very happy one, since *take it naught a grief* seems to need the *ay* reading to complete its meaning.

1632. Thou art at ese holde the now theryn ($-J, +H_3$)
(H_3 And holde ; H_4 now hold the ; R *writes and erases*
a w before now)

Rest : . . . and holde þe wel þer Inne

Note that H_3 retains *and*, and that R started to write *wel*. J keeps the *ay* reading.

1639. . . . god biforn ($-Cx, +H_3$)

Rest : . . . god to forn

- *1645. By god . . . ($+H_3S_1$)

Rest : God wot . . .

1665. This tale was ay . . . ($+H_3S_1 + AD$)
(Cx alwey ; H_3 euer)

Rest : This tale ay was . . .

(H_2Ph *om.* ay ; H_5 was euer)

- †1685. J drede ; RS_1 wo ; H_4 ioie ; Cx care

Rest : Agon was euerly sorwe and euerly fere

(H_3 *om.* *second* euerly)

The β MSS. are uncertain in their reading. Note that H_3 omits *euery*. It is clear that in the β original the word *sorwe* was either lacking altogether or had become totally illegible.

1720. . . . ay withouten drede ($+H_3$)

Rest : . . . alwey out of drede

1746. Loue which þat with an holsom alliance ($-Cx$)

Rest : Love þat with . . .

(H_5 þat which with)

1795. . . . by right ($-J, +H_3$)

Rest : . . . of right

(A a right)

The list of β readings has been a long and tedious one; but it was necessary to record it in its entirety, trivial cases with striking cases, because only so can the character of this important group be determined. A study of the list reveals the following significant facts.

(1) Of the 129 instances recorded, a large number seem to be due to deliberate revision. I have marked with an asterisk 36

cases which seem to me clearly of this character; but the presumption must be in favour of deliberate revision in every case where the β reading is not obviously corrupt.

(2) In a number of instances one of the four regular β MSS. gives the $\alpha\gamma$ reading, where the other three present a β variant; but this phenomenon is not found in the case of any of the striking readings of the sort which I have marked with an asterisk.

(3) In a few instances one of the four regular β MSS., or H_3 , or S_1 , presents a conflate reading combined of $\alpha\gamma$ on the one hand and of β on the other. The most striking instance of this is the fact that H_4 has the shifted stanzas (190 and 191) written twice, in the $\alpha\gamma$ position and again in the β position.

(4) In a very few instances, lines 608, 922 (?), 1600 (?), 1685, the β reading is corrupt.

(5) S_1 shares in a majority of the β readings throughout Book III, but less consistently in the latter part of the book. H_3 shares only occasionally in β readings before line 1096; after that it shares in nearly all of them.

For such a series of facts there is but one probable explanation: JH_4RCx are descended from a common original, which must have been a MS. originally of $\alpha\gamma$ type extensively altered by corrections and revisions in the margin and between the lines. In individual cases a single β MS. has failed to incorporate one of these revisions, and has instead copied the original unrevised reading which would still be perfectly legible on the page. In this MS. there remained uncorrected a few, though a very few, scribal errors.

Of the nature of the participation of H_3 and S_1 in the readings of β we can more profitably speak in another place (see p. 181).

Within the β group no sub-group can be established. With the exception of J all of the β MSS., including H_3 and S_1 , are full of careless errors involving sense or metre, such as simple cases of transposition or the omission of single words. When two MSS. are continually guilty of this sort of carelessness, it is inevitable that in the course of 1800 lines there should be not infrequent cases in which they coincide in the same trivial error, particularly when the same basis of error, an imperfect understanding of Chaucer's metre, is present in each. We consequently find agreements in trivial errors of R and Cx , of H_4 and Cx , of H_4 and R , and less frequently agreements involving the carefully written J . Especially frequent are such agreements between H_3 and Cx . No

useful purpose would be served by recording these trivial agreements in full. In the following list I have given a few specimens of these agreements, including the few instances which may be regarded as at all significant.

SCATTERING AGREEMENTS OF β MSS.

64. H_4Cx . . . that he wepte . . .
 Rest : . . . as he wepte . . .
131. H_3Cx And that ye souffren . . .
 R And that ye vouche sauf . . .
 H_4 And if that ye agreue . . .
 H_2Ph And þat ye agreyn . . .
 Rest : And þanne agreen . . .

We have here a variant reading which is certainly not coincidence. Clearly there is some connection between H_3 and Cx in this line. Note also the reading of R . The reading *þat ye* instead of *þanne*, as in $\gamma S_1 JGgH_5$, is an α reading preserved by certain β MSS., a phenomenon already illustrated in another list.

185. J O mortal god . . .
 H_4 Thou mortal god . . .
 GgH_5 O inmortal god . . .
 Rest : Inmortal god . . .

Note the connection between J and GgH_5 . Later in the line H_4R read *thou maist* where the rest read *þat mayst*.

242. H_3Cx . . . euer more
 Rest : . . . alwey more
273. H_4Cx . . . bothe in fere (Cx I fere)
 Rest : . . . eke yfere
302. H_4Cx For tonge . . .
 Rest : O tonge . . .
354. RCx . . . for to pleye
 Rest : . . . best to pleye
367. H_3H_4 . . . to the to be wrey
 Rest : . . . to þe by wreye

176 *The Manuscript Relations in Book III.*

526. H_3CxS_1 And dredles . . .

Rest: *Omit* And

627. $RCxH_5$. . . euery man & womman . . .

Rest: . . . euery maner womman . . .

724. H_4R . . . with thi rede cope

Rest: . . . with pi bloddy cope

831. H_4Cx . . . sekirnesse . . .

Rest: . . . selynesse . . .

968. H_3CxH_4 *om.* here.

1211. H_3RH_5 . . . I had not now ben here (H_3 nad not)

Rest: . . . I were now not here

(CxA not now)

1313. H_3H_4 In suche gladnesse . . .

Rest: Of swych gladnesse . . .

1383. H_3H_4 . . . I shal a rede

Rest: . . . I shal yow rede

(Cx I shal now rede)

†1534. RCx *om.* real.

1548. $JRH_3 + Gg$. . . the selue wyse

Rest: . . . þe same wyse

1605. $RCxS_1$ Was . . .

Rest: Saw . . .

1642. H_3H_4R . . . wrathin . . .

Rest: . . . greuen . . .

1643. H_3CxRS_1 . . . stere

Rest: . . . tere

Stere seems to be the correct reading, though it is found only in these four MSS. *Tere* must be explained as an error of "Adam scriveyn," not corrected till after *a* and *γ* had been copied. Note that JH_4 read *tere*.

†1647. H_3Cx *om.* first.

1649. $H_4Cx + H_5$. . . I owe . . .

Rest: . . . I shal . . .

1694. H_3Cx . . . that aney hert may thynke
Rest: . . . þat herte may by-penke
1820. H_3Cx . . . lady swete
Rest: . . . herte swete

The various combinations of β MSS. recorded in the foregoing list make clear that the individual MSS. of the group are, barring possible contamination in this line or that, descended independently from their common ancestor. Such agreements of two or more in a variant reading as cannot be attributed to accidental coincidence must be explained as due to the fact that the β original was a corrected and revised MS., and that consequently it offered to the eye of a scribe many alternative readings. That the β original was of such a character is further proved by the fact that not infrequently an α reading is retained by one or more β MSS., as has already been shown in the list of characteristic α readings given on pp. 147–155. Not only do we find α readings reproduced in β MSS., but, in a considerable number of instances, we discover H_2Ph readings (not shared by GgH_5) reappearing in β MSS. Illustrations of this phenomenon are given in the following list. As we should expect, the cases are more frequent in the earlier part of the book, before GgH_5 become α MSS. There are, however, not infrequent cases throughout the book.

H_2Ph AND MSS. OF THE β GROUP.

5. $H_2Ph + H_4CxH_3$ *om. ay* (*R lacking*)
53. $H_2Ph + H_4R$. . . myn hert dere
Rest: . . . my lady dere
 Compare line 1820, where H_3Cx substitute *lady* for *herte*.
- †65. H_2Ph Aha god help quod Troylus so rewfully
 Cx A ha god quod Troylus so sorowfully
Rest: A ha quod Troylus so rufully
84. $H_2Ph + Cx$. . . hert . . .
Rest: . . . wit . . .
- †116, 117. $H_2Ph + Cx$ *transpose lines 116 and 117 to the detriment of the sense*

178 *The Manuscript Relations in Book III.*

146. $H_2Ph + H_3CxS_1$ Receyve in gre . . .

Rest : Receyuen wel . . .

(H_4 Receyuyn I wil)

168. $H_2Ph + H_4RCx$. . . no lenger þat 3e pleyne

Rest : . . . no lengere ye ne pleyne

193. H_2Ph . . . aiorne . . .

Cx . . . adiourne . . .

H_4 . . . adiure . . .

Rest : . . . coniure . . .

205. $H_2Ph + H_3CxS_1$ *om.* right.

†228. $H_2Ph + H_4Cx$. . . blyve . . .

Rest : . . . lyne . . .

Blyre has been repeated from 225.

277. $H_2Ph + JRCx$. . . al þe peple . . .

Rest : . . . al þe world . . .

280. $H_2Ph + JRCxH_3S_1$. . . fordone . . .

Rest : . . . for lost . . .

(H_4 forlorn)

*282. $H_2Ph + JH_4RCx$ þe pray y eft alpogh þow shuldest dey
($PhCx$ thogh)

Rest : Yet eft I þe byseche and fully seye

(H_5 *om.* eft, *om.* þe ; D fully preye)

A clear case of revision, in which $GgH_5\gamma H_3S_1$ present the revised reading, while all four of the regular β MSS. retain the unrevised reading of H_2Ph . It is possible that the return to the original reading was deliberate, since this reading is distinctly preferable.

303. $H_2Ph + JH_4RCx$ Hath made ful meny a lady . . .

(J *om.* a)

Rest : Hastow made many a lady . . .

Line 302 reads : *O tonge allas so often here byforn.* The reading of H_2Ph , etc., can be justified only if we take *O* not as exclamatory, but as the numeral, one. Otherwise there is no

subject for *Halh*. H₄Cx read in 302 *For tonge*, and so obviate the difficulty.

329. H₂Ph + H₃ . . . wyse men . . .

Cx . . . wyse folk . . .

Rest : . . . wyse . . .

487. H₂Ph + R . . . went

Rest : . . . was sent

571. H₂Ph + H₃Cx . . . that he were there

H₄R . . . that he ther wer

(H₄ *om.* that)

Rest : . . . þat he were

737. H₂Ph + R Art þow a gast lest she wole þe byte

Rest : . . . so þat she wole . . .

(H₄ for that)

†786. H₂Ph + Cx *omit* right

797. H₂Ph + JRCxH₃ How þat 3e sholden love on hatte
horaste

(H₂Ph shold, hat ; H₃ atte ; Cx *om.* hatte)

Rest : . . . on þat hatte Horaste

The reading *on þat hatte* gives a hypermetrical line. *þat* is not necessary to the sense, but the scribes may well have felt that it was necessary.

915. H₂Ph + H₄Cx Ye know wele eke he is 3our own
knyght

(H₄ weel eek how he is)

Rest : Ye knowe ek how it is youre owne knyght

(Gg he is ; H₅ 3e tweyne ek he ys ; R *om.* owne)

Note that the reading *he* for *it* is shared by GgH₅. Note also the conflate reading of H₄.

930. H₂PhH₅ + R . . . wit . . .

Rest : . . . mynde . . .

1009. H₂Ph + H₃ . . . good hert myn . . .

Cx + D . . . good hert . . .

Rest : . . . good myn . . .

(Cl loue for myn *by corrector*)

1094. $H_2Ph + H_4CxH_3$ For al was hust but . . .
 (H_2Ph schitt *for* hust ; H_3 And *for* but ; H_4 *for for* but)
Rest : But al was hust and . . .
 (Gg *for for* and ; H_5 *om.* and ; D but *for* and)

The confusion between *but, for, and*, points clearly to a corrected original.

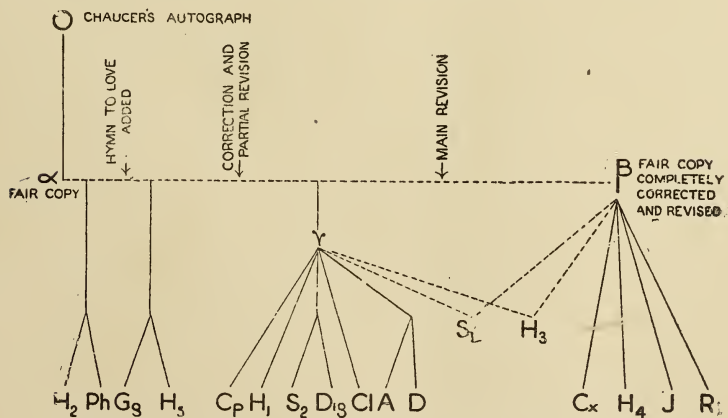
1107. $H_2Ph + Cx$ *omit* ful
 R wel *for* ful
 Gg *omits* quod she ful
1241. $H_2Ph + R$ (*second copy of lines*) + S_1 . . . can gesse
 H_3Cx . . . gan gesse
Rest : . . . may gesse
1480. $H_2Ph + H_3Cx$. . . in þis place . . .
Rest : . . . yn þis plit . . .
1487. $H_2Ph + \gamma S_1$. . . 3oure humble seruaunt . . .
 Cx . . . your seruaunt . . .
Rest : . . . yowr owene seruaut . . .

Of the agreements recorded in the list just given some may well be due to accidental coincidence ; but when the instances are so numerous, we must hesitate to dismiss them as merely accidental. Rarely are they of a character to warrant the idea of any deliberate revision. We must rather regard them as scribal blunders of very early date which have found their way not only into the ancestor of H_2Ph , but also into individual MSS. of subsequent derivation.

The varied phenomena of Book III are capable of but one consistent explanation. From the poet's original autograph was made by a careless scribe such as Chaucer addresses in his familiar lines to "Adam" a "fair copy," the text of which was marred by repeated instances of scribal carelessness and stupidity. This copy was "proof-read" by the poet ; and by numerous "rubblings" and "scrapings" the scribe's "negligence and rape" was "corrected," though in such fashion that the corrupt reading was in many passages still legible beneath the correction. From this corrected MS. was derived the original of H_2Ph , and after line 400 the original of GgH_5 . It is, then, the MS. we have called the *a* original. Subsequent to the derivation of the H_2Ph original and the GgH_5 original, the poet made a more thorough correction, eliminating such of Adam's corruptions as had before escaped his

eye (*i. e.* the cases of clear error shared by H_2Ph and GgH_5), and introducing a number of minor revisions. From the "fair copy" thus recorrected and revised was next derived the original of γ . Using this already considerably corrected and revised copy of his poem as working basis, the poet then subjected Book III to a more thorough-going revision, which included the shifting of stanzas 190 and 191, and the introduction of the readings characteristic of the β MSS. The original of β , then, is *materially* the same MS. as the α original, but with a text extensively altered by progressive corrections and revisions. In some passages this process of alteration seems to have resulted in a confused, if not illegible, text, to which the group errors of β must be attributed. Since the β original was *materially* the same MS. as the α original, we can understand how an individual β MS. here and there copies the α reading, or the reading of H_2Ph or of GgH_5 , instead of the corrected or revised reading written in as a substitute for it. We can understand, also, how individual β MSS. share a γ reading. H_3 and S_1 must be regarded as contaminated MSS., "edited" by some later scribe on the basis of a γ MS. of the type of AD and a β MS. of the type of Cx.

The conclusions reached in the study of Book III may be graphically represented by the following diagram, which shows the relations existing after line 400, when GgH_5 become a MSS.



The broken line, $\alpha-\beta$, represents a single MS., progressively corrected and revised until its text becomes that designated as β .

CHAPTER V.

THE MS. RELATIONS IN BOOK IV.

IN Book IV the centre of interest shifts from the β MSS. back to the α MSS. In the early part of the book, to be sure, the characteristic β readings of Book III continue; but throughout the book the main line of cleavage is between α on the one hand and $\beta\gamma$ on the other. In other words, γ nearly always gives the later, revised reading, as it does also in Book I.

There takes place, furthermore, in the course of Book IV a very striking realignment in the type of several of the MSS. Before line 400, as we shall see, H_2 , with a change in handwriting, has become a β MS., closely related to H_4 ; while J and H_3 have deserted β for α . At line 686 H_5 abruptly ends. So that for the greater part of Book IV α is represented by JGgPh H_3 , and β by H_2H_4 RCx.

READINGS CHARACTERISTIC OF γ .

The relationship of ClCp H_1 S $_2$ AD (γ) is maintained unbroken throughout Book IV. It is attested by a series of agreements which include not only variant readings, but a confusion as to the point at which Book IV begins, and the omission of a stanza, No. 102, which is necessary to the sense.

ClCp H_1 treat the first four stanzas of Book IV, *i.e.* the Proem, as part of Book III, and write after line 28 *Explicit liber Tercius. Incipit Quartus Liber*, in spite of the fact that in all of them line 26 correctly reads *This ilke ferpe book me helpeth fyne*. D presents exactly the same state of things, except that opposite line 1807 of Book III a contemporary hand, which is, I am inclined to think, that of the scribe, has written in the margin *Prologus*. There is, however, no initial, such as D uses to introduce proems and books, until the three-line capital at line 29. This correction in D came apparently from a MS. like S $_2$, which ends Book III with line 1806. There is in S $_2$ a rubric *Explicit Liber Tercius*, and line 1807 begins with a two-line capital (not executed). Before line 29 is a rubric *Incipit quartus liber*, and again space for a two-line capital. In A, books and proems were originally marked only by initials. Later, a corrector wrote book and proem

captions in the ordinary one-line stanza spaces. There is in A a two-line capital at line 29, but none at the beginning of Proem IV. The corrector has, however, supplied correct captions in both places. This error of γ is shared by Ph, which fails to indicate the beginning of the proem, and which writes in the margin opposite line 29 *Incipit liber quartus*. These marginal captions, and the running titles, which throughout Books I–IV are the only indications of the division into books, though written by the original scribe, are plainly an afterthought, and are derived, we may be sure, from the same γ MS. from which the scribe drew corrections and omitted passages. S_1 is perfectly normal in its treatment of Proem IV; but H_3 , which does not become an α MS. until line 300, writes *My fierde booke* instead of *My pridde book* in 3. 1818, and at the end of Book III writes *Explicit Liber iii^{tus}*. At the end of Proem IV, H_3 writes *Crt Sic explicit Liber quartus*. *Crt* (the Chaucer Society reprint wrongly gives it as *L̄t* or *L̄r̄t*) does not seem to be a recognized abbreviation. I take it to mean *certe* or *correcte*. In line 26 H_3 reads *Thys fyfte and laste boke*.¹

The omission of stanza 102, lines 708–714, is a clear case of error. The stanza is found in α and in $\beta + S_1$, and corresponds to stanza 84 of Book IV in *Filostrato*. Moreover, it is indispensable to the sense. It states the fact that Criseyde wept and sighed. Stanza 103 refers to this weeping and sighing as to a fact just stated.

The relationship of the γ MSS. is further attested by the list of variant readings which follows.

CICpH₁S₂AD(γ).

9. . . . wripe . . . (+ $S_1 + J$)

Rest: . . . wrye . . .

Wripe, from O.E. *wrīðan*, and *wrye*, from O.E. *wrīgian*, are identical in meaning; and the written forms are so closely alike

¹ Though, in view of the explicit statement of line 26, the treatment of Proem IV as the end of Book III is certainly an error, it is possible that the confusion may be due in the first instance to a change of intention on the part of Chaucer himself. The first two stanzas of the proem are in part based on a stanza of *Filostrato*, which concludes the third book of Boccaccio's poem. Moreover, the logical connection between the beginning of Proem IV and the end of Book III is a very close one.

that an interchange is easy. In 2.906 the form *wrye* is definitely established, since it falls under the rime.

12. . . . myn herte right now . . . (— Cl)
(D myn herte gynneth now to bleede)

Rest: . . . right now myn herte . . .

- 39, 40. Ector & many a worpi wight out wente
Wip spere in hond and bygge bowes bente (+S₁ + H₅)
(Cl on hond)

Rest: *Transpose order of lines.* (Gg lacking)

Either order is possible; but the arrangement of γ separates *Wip spere in hond*, etc., from *armed bryght and shene* of 38.

78. . . . or in what manere wyse (+ H₃S₁ + J)
(Cl for *for* in)

Rest: . . . and in what manere wyse
(Ph *om.* what)

The Italian reads *e'l modo*, *Fil.* 4. 6, which supports *and*. The substitution of *and* for *or* and *vice versa* is of frequent occurrence in the MSS.

- †80. Ye han er þis wel herd it me deuyse
(A wele harde or this me deuyse, wele *by corrector over*
erasure; D me herd it wele deuise)

Rest: . . . herde me yow deuyse
(R *om.* yow; H₄ me herd weel you; Cx herd me wel
deuyse; H₃ me herde or this you devise; S₁ wel
herd me yow)

The line in γ is so awkward that it must be regarded as corrupt. Apparently the trouble began by the careless dropping of *yow*, as in R and Cx. The variations of the MSS. point to confusion in the common original.

88. . . . you lordes for to plesse (— AD)

Rest: . . . my lordis yow to plesse

163. And . . . (+ S₁)

Rest: Or . . .

- †191. . . . nede to folk . . . (— A)
(H₁ talk *for* to folk; S₂ *om.* to)

Rest: . . . nede of folk . . .

197. . . . trewe . . . (+ S_1)

(Λ trew over erasure)

Rest : . . . soth . . .

215. And fynaly . . .

$\alpha + S_1$ But fynally . . .

JRH₃ What fynaly . . .

H₂H₄Cx That finally . . .

220. Vnto . . . (+ S_1)

Rest : Into . . .

280. . . . euere . . .

Rest : . . . alwey . . .

295. What I may don . . .

Rest : What shal I don . . .

The Italian reads *Che farò io*, *Fil.* 4. 33. The γ reading is probably corrupt.

†317. . . . þis . . .

Rest : . . . thilke . . .

(J thilk; H₃Cx that)

Thilke, with its full dissyllabic value, is necessary for the metre.

410. Yf þis be goodly she is glad and lyght (+ S_1)

H₃ . . . thus is she gladde and lyght

Cx . . . she that is glad & lyght

Rest : . . . þat is glade and lighte

Note the conflate reading of Cx, and apparently also of H₃.

484. But tel me now . . . (+ $S_1 + Cx$)

α But sey me this . . .

H₂H₄R But telle me þis . . .

†498. Nay god wot . . .

α Nay Pandarus . . .

βS_1 Nay nay god wote . . .

The γ reading gives a nine-syllable line.

532. . . . and leue þi nyce fare (+ Cx)

PhS₁ . . . þis nyce fare

GgH₅ . . . þyn grete care

Rest : . . . this nyce care

(H₄ al thi nyce care)

The rime word in 531 is the verb *fare*, and the identical rime of verb and noun is entirely possible. The phrase *nyce fare* is found in *Troil.* 1. 1025; 2. 1144.

542. Al þis haue I my self yet pought ful ofte (+ S₁ + H₂R)
 (D eke *for* yet; H₂ ymagened yet ful ofte)
 Rest: Omit yet
 (J I thought)

If one reads *my selue*, as in GgH₃, *yet* is unnecessary.

570. I moste here honour leuere han þan me (+ S₁)
 α I haue hir honour leuere yit than me
 β I must hir honour leuer saue þan me.
 (H₂ saue leuer; R kepe leuere)

The γ reading is intermediate between α and β .

608. Thenk ek how . . . (+ S₁)
 (S₂ *om.* ek)
 Rest: Thyнк how þat . . .
 (H₂H₄ *om.* þat)

657. . . . yn þis cas . . . (+ S₁)
 Rest: . . . of this case . . .

†708–714. *Omit stanza* 102.

The stanza is found in S₁. Cf. above, p. 183.

732. Into here chaumbre . . .
 Rest: Into the chaumbre . . .

The Italian reads *Nella camera sua*, *Fil.* 4. 86, which supports the γ reading; but the variation is trifling, and the closer approach of γ to the Italian may well be fortuitous.

773. That ilke day þat I from yow departe (+ S₁ + Ph)
 (Cl hym *for* yow)
 JH₃Gg . . . I shal from yow . . .
 β . . . I mote from you . . .

791. . . . Orpheus and Erudice . . .
 Rest: . . . Orpheus with Erudice . . .

†854. This message which by me thi Troilus the sente
(- ClA, + H₄)

(D *om.* thi; H₁ me *for* the; S₂ This message which
pat bi me Troilus sent)

Rest: *Omit* message

(α pat *for* which; Ph This pat Troillus by me the sent;
H₂ The whiche by me your Troilus you sent)

A hypermetrical line, independently corrected by Cl and A. The participation of H₄ in this reading suggests that the error lies back of the γ original. Perhaps Chaucer originally wrote *This message which thi Troilus the sente*.

*882. For verray wo his wit is al away (+ S₁)

Rest: As he pat shortly shapith hym to deye

(Ph shapith hym shortly; H₂H₄ As shortly he pat
shapeth)

The Italian reads: *Il qual del tutto in duol ne vuol morire*, *Fil.* 4. 102. The Paris ed. (5. 84) reads: *Che cerca disperato di morire*. The $\alpha\beta$ reading is thus nearer the Italian, though the γ reading might have been suggested by *disperato* of the Paris ed. Moreover, the Italian rime *dire*: *morire* is exactly translated by *seye*: *deye*. On the other hand, the γ reading offers a somewhat simpler sentence-structure. It has every appearance of being an authentic revision not incorporated by β .

907. For wel wot I it wole my bane be (+ S₁)

Rest: . . . I wot . . .

The $\alpha\beta$ order avoids the hiatus, *I it*.

938. And what pat . . . (+ S₁)

Rest: And pat that . . .

(β + Ph *om.* that)

1100. . . . a wonder (+ S₁)

(A and wonder)

Rest: . . . my wonder . . .

(H₂ I merueyle)

1160. . . . noon oper red (+ S₁ + Cx)

Rest: . . . no maner red

1252. . . . sorwful . .

Rest: . . . woful . . .

1286. And . . . (+ S₁)*Rest* : But . . .†1324. . . . ofte tyme . . . (+ S₁)*Rest* : . . . often . . .

In γ the line is hypermetrical, unless *ofte* and *tyme* are both read as monosyllables. A omits *þer*.

†1373. Lo Troylus men seyn þat ful hard it is (+ S₁)(A O *for* Lo ; D om. þat)*Rest* : *Omit* ful(H₃ But dere Troilus)

A hypermetrical line corrected by D. *Ful* is anticipated from 1374.

1449. . . . swete herte

Rest : . . . deere herte1493. . . . my soule . . . (+ S₁ + Cx)*Rest* : . . . the soule . . .1494. . . . may not . . . (+ S₁)*Rest* : . . . kan not . . .1527. *Omit* hym (+ H₃Gg)

1530. And . . .

Rest : Or . . .

1572. . . . þis dede (+ J)

Rest : . . . that dede1688. And . . . (+ S₁)*Rest* : But . . .1697. . . . sorwful . . . (+ S₁ + R)*Rest* : . . . woful . . .(H₄ ilke *for* woful)

With the single exception of line 882, none of the 44 γ readings recorded has the slightest claim to consideration as an authentic revision. In a number of cases the γ reading is certainly corrupt ; in all the rest the variation is of a trivial sort. In a majority of the γ readings S₁ also shares. Frequently the γ reading is found also in Cx.

Besides the γ readings given above, the following cases must be recorded in which, within the group, two or more γ MSS. agree in a variant reading as against the rest.

SCATTERING AGREEMENTS OF γ MSS.

261. $ADS_2 + S_1$. . . what haue I þe agilte
(A gilte)

Rest : . . . what haue I þus agilt

The Italian, *Che t'ho io fatto*, *Fil.* 4. 30, lends support to the reading of ADS_2S_1 ; but this may well be fortuitous.

†459. $ClCpH_1$. . . I wil . . .

Rest : . . . I wolde . . .

462. CpH_1 Now foul falle hire for thi wo and care
D . . . þat for þi woo care
 ClH_3 . . . þat for þi wo hath care
(Cl hath *by corrector*)
 S_2 . . . for þe wold wo or care
 S_1 . . . þat for þi wo wold care
A . . . for þi wo at care
 $H_2H_4RCx + GgPh$. . . for thi woo þat care
 H_5 . . . for þi wo that woll care
J . . . þat for thy wo þat care

The γ parent MS. must have been confused in this line; but the readings of H_5 and J show that the confusion existed farther back. The reading, *for thi woo þat care*, can be defended only if we regard *care* as singular subjunctive. We should expect an indicative; but the exigencies of rime may be responsible for the construction. Perhaps Chaucer wrote *Now foule falle hir for þe wolde care*.

470. AD . . . herte . . .

Rest : . . . brest . . .

(H_4 body)

511. $Cl(Cp)H_1 + JH_4$ Or with þi colde strok myn hete
quenche

(H_1 *om.* þi; Cp. *lacking*)

H_2 . . . my herte hete quench

Rest : . . . myn herte quenche

The Italian, *Che refrigerio il tuo colpo mi fia*, *Fil.* 4. 61, and the context support *hete*. The error was a very easy one.

- 190 *The Manuscript Relations in Book IV.*
601. CpH_1S_2 . . . vnto . . .
Rest : . . . to . . .
- †717. ClCpH_1 By cause þat sholde . . .
 (H_1 shol *for* sholde ; Cp *corrected over erasure to* she
 sholde)
Rest : Bycause þat she sholde . . .
 (Gg *sche by scribe in margin*)
- †723. AD *omit* on which
 ($\text{H}_3\text{H}_4\text{GgPh}$ *vary*)
- †765. Cl How sholde I a fyssh . . .
 S_2 How shulde I fyshe . . .
Rest : How shold a fissh . . .
 (Gg *om. a*)
- †782. DS_2 . . . to dethe . . .
Rest : . . . til deth
- †1344. CpH_1 *omit* to
1424. CpH_1D . . . it semed . . .
Rest : . . . hym semed . . .
 (H_2H_4 *om. hym* ; Ph *he semyd*)
- †1453. AD . . . berere
Rest : . . . bere
- †1511. CpH_1S_2 *omit* it
- †1535. $\text{CpH}_1\text{S}_2 + \text{S}_1 + \text{Gg}$. . . any other wight
Rest : *Omit* any.
1608. $\text{DS}_2 + \text{Ph}$. . . Cinthea þe quene
 (DPh Cithera)
Rest : . . . Cynthia þe shene

The scattering agreements just given point, as in the earlier books, to the presence of corrections in the γ original, rather than to any sub-relations within the group. Even the relation of A and D, fully attested in Book III, ceases to be clear. The only AD agreements I have found are included in the list just given. They are rather less striking than the agreements of CpH_1S_2 .

READINGS CHARACTERISTIC OF *a*.

Throughout Book IV *a* is attested by a large number of variant readings, of which many are of a very striking sort; but the MSS. which give these *a* readings change as the book proceeds. During the first 196 lines *a* is represented, as in Book III, by H_2PhGgH_5 ; though, because of the mutilation suffered by *Gg*, this MS. lacks lines 1-112. At line 196 ends the portion of H_2 written by hand 1. Lines 197-406 are written by hand 3; and the rest of the poem is by hand 4. With line 197, where the new hand begins, H_2 ceases to be an *a* MS. For lines 197-298 *a* is represented only by GgH_5Ph . At about line 300 H_3 becomes an *a* MS., and remains so till near the end of the poem;¹ and between 430 and 438, *J* also joins the *a* group. With line 686 the H_5 fragment terminates. So that from line 687 *a* is represented by $JGgH_3Ph$. The continuity of *a* is maintained by *Gg* and *Ph*. So intimate is the relation of H_2 ¹ and *Ph*, that we can be certain that the lost conclusion (supplied in the existing MS. by H_2 ³ and H_2 ⁴) would have continued to present *Ph* readings; and the same is true of the defective H_5 .

$H_2Ph(Gg)H_5(a)$.

25. Thow cruel god eke fadir of Qwyrine (+ H_3)
(H_3 to *for* of, gode *for* god)
Rest: Thow cruel Mars ek fader to Qyryne
(A Mars *over erasure*; D *om.* ek; R *lacking*)
- †33. *Omit* ful (+ Cl)
- *37. . . . pat day pei issen ment (+ J)
(Ph *issu*; H_2 pat day pe pus ment; H_5 pat day of
assignment)
Rest: . . . pei fighte mente
(H_4 fouhten)

The form *issen* (O.F. *issir*) is found only in *J*, which here retains the *a* reading. *Ph* reads *issu*, of which the reading of H_2 is a bungling corruption. A more ingenious corruption is given by H_5 . Though the word *issen* is not common, it is found in the second sing. *issest* in Chaucer's Boethius, 3, prose 12, 168. The reading gains some support from the Italian, *Ettor* . . . *Incontro*

¹ Between 300 and 326, H_3 wavers between *a* and *β*.

a' Greci uscì negli ampi piani, Fil. 4. 1. (The Paris ed. reads *uscendo all' improvviso*, 5. 1.) Moreover, the fact that *issen* is not a common word makes for its authenticity.

†51. H₂ Penestio; Ph Polestio; H₅ ponestes

Rest: Monesteo (H₃ Menestes)

In *Filostrato*, 4. 3, Moutier's ed. reads *Menesteo*, and the Paris ed., corruptly, *Nesteo*.

53. Or Polyte or the troian daun Riphio

(Ph ryphio; H₅ Ryffes)

Rest: Polyte or eke þe Troian daun Rupheo

(H₃ and eke; Cx *om.* daun; A *omits line*)

54. Or . . .

Rest: And . . .

62. Thurgh þe sege . . .

(H₅ Thorow þe assege)

Rest: Boþe in þassege . . .

93. . . . out of toun . . .

Rest: . . . out of Troye . . .

*102. I may her have for þat is doutles

Rest: . . . right sone douteles

(H₃ soone or doutles)

*105. . . . am broght in wrecchidnes

Rest: . . . haue al þis heuynesse

(H₃ distresse)

110. . . . graunt . . .

(H₂Ph grauntith)

Rest: . . . yeue . . .

(With line 113 begins again Gg)

H₂PhGgH₅(a).

114. Apollo hath me told sikirly

Rest: Appollo hath me told it feythfully

(H₃ *om.* it; S₂ fulle for it)

The omission of *it* is clearly an error; but *sikirly* is quite as good as *feythfully*.

121. That madyn al þe wallis of þe toun (+ S_1)
Rest : *Omit* al
 (C_1H_1JR makeden ; DS_2 maked)
130. . . . on either cheke
Rest : . . . by eyther cheke
131. . . . mercy . . .
Rest : . . . socour . . .
139. . . . his safe conduyt hem sent (— II_5)
 (II_2 her *for* his)
Rest : . . . his saue garde sente
 (Cl gard ; H_3 his sone gan ; H_5 his soue gard ; R hym sente)
143. Gan þervpon . . .
 (H_2 þer vp *for* þervpon)
Rest : Let here vpon
 (Cx Do *for* Let ; S_2 þere opon)
151. . . . welny with þo wordis deide
 (H_2Ph þe *for* þo)
Rest : . . . with þo wordes wel neygh deyde
 (A myghe drede ; $RCxS_2$ ful *for* wel)
- *160. . . . þe grauntynge with stonde
 (H_2Ph grauntyng ; H_5 to with stonde)
Rest : . . . þeschaunge of here withstonde
161. þis cast he þo . . .
Rest : Ful faste he cast . . .
173. . . . told . . . (H_5 *omits word*)
Rest : . . . seyð . . .
185. *Omit* it.
193. . . . such fantasies . . . (+ H_4R)
Rest : . . . þo fantasyes . . .
 (H_3 that fantasye ; D pi)
195. H_2 þat our wil . . .
 Ph þat our voys . . . (voys *over erasure*)
 GgH_5 þat oure acord . . .
Rest : That al oure voys . . .

(With line 196 ends H_2^1 and H_2 ceases to be an α MS.)

GgH₅Ph(a).

*212. To ȝilde anon for Antenore Crisseyde

Rest: For Antenor to yelden out Crisseyde

(Cl vp for out)

215. But fynally . . . (+ S₁)

γ And fynaly . . .

JRH₃ What fynaly . . .H₂H₄Cx That finally . . .

222. . . . dede . . .

Rest: . . . bad . . .

(A had)

238. In his distresse . . .

(Gg distreste)

Rest: In his woodnesse . . .

(H₄ Woodly werke began)

*246, 247. His eyȝen too . . .

So wepyn þat þey semyn welles tweye

(Gg weptyn)

Rest: Out stremeden as swyfte welles tweye

A clear case of revision. That *a* is the earlier version is shown by the Italian, *Forte piangeano, e parean due fontane*, *Fil.* 4. 28. Even closer is the reading of the Paris edition, *Piangono sì, che paion due fontane*, 5. 24.

*258. þat wel oneþe þe body may suffyse

(H₅ myght)

Rest: That wonder is þe body . . .

(A wonder his; D wonder it is; H₄ wondis)

The Italian reads, *Che'l capo e'l petto appena gli bastava*, *Fil.* 4. 29.

262. How mayst þu þus for reuthe me begile (+ H₄)(Ph myght thou; H₄ thus me begile)

Rest: How myghtestow for reupe me bygyle

266. . . . so crewel . . . (+ H₄)

Rest: . . . þus cruel . . .

269. Whi wilt þou þanne of ioie me depriue
(Ph of þis ioie)

Rest : Why wiltow me fro Ioye þus depryue
(ACx thus from Ioye me ; H₃ from Ioye thus me)

286. . . . þyn gery violence

Rest : . . . þi greful violence
(H₁DS₂JR gerful ; Cp serful ; S₁Cx gyreful ; H₃
grevyll)

290. How . . .

Rest : Wha^u . . .

The Italian reads, *Come farà la mia vita dolente*, *Fil.* 4. 33.

294. . . . þat it be repelyd (+ S₂)
(H₅ that hit to be)

Rest : . . . allas it be repeled
(H₂ me *for* be ; Cx in lesse)

295, 296. . . . whil I may deure

In wo in turment . . .
(Gg turnement)

Rest : On lyue in torment . . .
(RCx Ay lyue in turment)

The Italian reads, *mentre la vita Durerà*, *Fil.* 4. 34.

297. . . . mysauenture

Rest : . . . disauenture

298. Alone as I was born allas compleyne

Rest : Allone as I was born ywys compleyne
(Cl Allas *for* Allone ; H₃ Allas Allone ay as I was
born ; A I mote *for* ywys ; DCx I wol *for* ywys)

Note the conflate reading of H₃ and of Cl.

*300, 301. Ne heuenys lyzt & þus I in derknesse

Myn woful lyf wele endyn for distresse
(H₅ No *for* Ne ; Ph *om.* Ne, as *for* & ; Gg derknes)

H₃ Ne see no lyght And thus in derkenesse
My sorowful lyfe wyl enden in distresse

Rest : But ende I wil as Edippe yn derknesse
My sorwful lyf and dyen in dystresse

(R liuen *for* dyen ; JH₂ for destresse ; Cx But euer
wyl I as Edyppe in derknesse Lede my sorowful lyf
& lyue in dystresse)

This is a clear case of revision ; and, though the Italian gives us no help, it seems plain that the $\beta\gamma$ reading, with its classical reference, is the later version. One can, at least, see no reason why the reference to Œdipus should have been cancelled. H_3 presents what is virtually the α text, though it reads *sorrowful* for *woful* and *in* for *for* with $\beta\gamma$ and corrupts 300. Beginning at 326 it shares all the α readings ; but in 306 and 322 it goes with $\beta\gamma$.

*306. Fle forþ anon & do myn herte brest

Rest : Fle forth out of myn herte and lat it breste

(A Flee for pouȝte ; R *om.* forth ; H_3 fouruth oute ;

Cx Flee fer oute of myn hert or it brest)

322. For thy no fors whan that the body sterue

(*Lines 307–322 of Gg by corrector*)

Rest : For þi no fors is pouȝh þe body sterue

(J whan *for* pouȝh ; $H_2H_4RCxH_3$ For now no ; D þis
body)

Note that J retains *whan* from the α reading.

(With line 326 H_3 becomes consistently an α MS.)

Gg H_5 Ph H_3 (α).

326. And longe mote ȝe in ioye endeure

Rest : . . . mot youre lyf yn Ioye endure

327. And . . . (+ A)

Rest : But . . .

340. perwith . . .

(Ph þat with)

Rest : For which . . .

(H_2H_4 *om.* For)

341. . . . sorwis . . . (+ S_2)

Rest : . . . peynes . . .

347. . . . chaungyn . . .

Rest : . . . yelden . . .

The Italian *render*, *Fil.* 4. 43, supports the $\beta\gamma$ reading ; but the closer approximation may well be accidental.

357. . . . al aweye (+ S_1Cx)

(H_3 alwey *corrected to* al awey)

Rest : . . . neigh aweye

(A now *for* neigh ; D *om.* neigh)

358. But . . .
Rest: And . . .
- *359. Ny dede for wo . . .
 (H₃ omits line)
Rest: For sorwe of þis . . .
 (Cx For sorow of herte)
- *360. . . . sorweful . . .
Rest: . . . woful . . .
 The change to *woful* is necessitated by the revision in 359.
362. And . . .
Rest: But . . .
 Cf. line 358.
- *373. For crewel smert . . .
 (H₃Ph hert)
Rest: Ney ded for smert . . .
 Cf. line 359.
386. O in þis world . . .
Rest: For yn þis world . . .
388. Strengere . . . (+ Cx)
Rest: Straungere . . .
 (H₄ Strangere)
397. . . . fond . . .
Rest: . . . felte . . .
398. . . . castyng of an eye
 (Gg schaungyng of an eye)
Rest: . . . lokyng . . .
403. . . . in a route
Rest: . . . yn som route
404. . . . two or þre . . .
 (Gg to)
Rest: . . . oone or two . . .
409. What on can synge . . .
Rest: Yf oon kan synge . . .
What must be regarded as exclamatory. Cf. 407.

- 410, 411. 3if þis is fayr sche þat can good aryȝt
 3if þis be goodly þat is glad & lyȝt
 (H_5 *om. first* þat; H_5 Ph hir good; H_3 *first* þat and
 gode *inserted above*; Gg & ryȝt, is *for* be; H_5 the
 other *for second* þat; H_3 thus is she gladde)
Rest: Yf þis be goodly þat is glad and lyght
 And þis is fayr and þat kan good aright
 (γS_1 she is glad; Cx she that is glad; J *om. second* is;
 R of ryght)

Either order is equally possible. With the two lines beginning identically, as in α , a scribal transposition is easy. I suspect, however, that α is corrupt.

417. And þynk . . .
 (Gg þyng)
Rest: Thenk ek . . .
 430. . . . to make . . . (+ H_2)
Rest: . . . to don . . .
 (With line 438 J becomes an α MS.)

JGg H_5 Ph H_3 .

438. To traysen hir þat trewe is vnto me (+ ClAD)
 (Gg trostyn; H_5 trysyn, is trew to me; Cl trassen)
Rest: To traysen a wight that . . .
 (H_2 truste; H_4 traist; RCx tray; S_2 trayne)
 441. Or I so do . . .
 (Gg *om. so*; H_5 *illegible*)
Rest: Er I þus do . . .
 (D do þus; H_2H_4 R Or I soo werche)
 445. What Pandarus syn I haue hir behight
Rest: For Pandarus syn I haue troupe here hight
 (Cl S_2 syn þat; H_4 hir trouthe; H_2H_4 plight; Cx syth
 I hyr trouthe behight)
 454. . . . for thy . . .
 (H_3 therefore)
Rest: . . . for whiche . . .
 (D wherfore; Cx for why)

464. . . . man

Rest : . . . wyght

476. This wo

Rest : My wo

484. But sey me this

Rest : But tel me now

(H₂H₄R But telle me pis)

492. . . . yit fro thyn herte

(H₃ om. yit)

Rest : . . . out of þyn herte

*498. Nay Pandarus

Rest : Nay nay god wot

(γ Nay god wot)

*499. But douteles for aught þat may bifalle

Rest : For which for what þat euere may byfalle

(H₄ om. For which ; D may euer)

The βγ reading is hardly an improvement.

*506, 507. Or deth me slowe I wolde han yiuen hire

But now his comyng

(J is *for* his ; H₃ om. his)

Rest : Er þow me slowe I wolde haue yeuen hire

But now pi comynge

(Cl here *for* hire)

The Italian, *Morte, tu mi sarai tanto soave*, *Fil.* 4. 61, with its direct address, is closer to βγ; but the change is very slight, and the greater approximation to Boccaccio may be merely accidental.

515. . . . thanne

Rest : . . . so

(D om. so, þen *inserted above by later hand*)

*537. . . . lat this sorwe be

Rest : . . . wepynge

This phrase corresponds to three lines in the Italian :

Caccia via il dolor, caccia via, caccia

L'angoscia tua e li dolenti guai ;

Rasciuga il tristo pianto della faccia. *Fil.* 4. 65.

Sorwe would translate *dolor*, while *wepyng* would translate *pianto*.

- *560. He nyl for me his honour be repeled
 (Gg nil not)

Rest: . . . his lettre . . .

The *a* reading gains some support from the Italian, *per non romper le cose promesse*, *Fil.* 4. 69.

- *570. I haue hir honour leuere yit than me
 (Gg *om.* hir; H₅ yet leuer)
 γ S₁ I moste here honour leuere han pan me
 β I must hir honour leuer saue pan me
 (H₂ saue leuer; R kepe leuere)

- †571. And in euery cas . . . (— Ph)
 (Gg Hadde *for* And)

Rest: omit And

A hypermetrical line, corrected by Ph.

- *581. For why in loue is litel hertes reste
 (H₃H₅ For while I lyue)

Rest: For as in loue is ther but litel reste
 (H₄ *om.* as; γ per is; S₂ I loue)

The revision avoids repetition with *herte* in 580.

587. . . . lat hem rowne

Rest: . . . wol þey rowne
 (R they wol)

588. For wonder last . . .

Rest: Ek wonder last . . .
 (Cl A *for* Ek)

590. . . . preciously . . . (+ R)
 (R preciently)

Rest: . . . curteysly . . .
 (Cx curyously)

Both the context and the Italian, *sottilmente*, *Fil.* 4. 72, make against *curteysly*, which must be regarded as a corruption of *curiously*.

594. . . . a lite in blame . . .
 (Gg *om.* a)

Rest: . . . in blame a litel . . .

- *596. It is no rape in my dom ne no vice
(GgPh iape ; GgH₅ *om. second* no)
It is no shame to yow . . .
(CpH₁R vnto ; D ne vnto you ; S₁ to the)
598. . . . may . . .
Rest : . . . myght . . .
602. And fleeth fro wrechches . . . (+ Cx)
Rest : And weyueth wrecches . . .
The Italian, *e' timidi rifiuta*, *Fil.* 4. 73, supports the βγ reading.
604. Thow shalt thy pees ful wel hiraftir make (+ Cl)
(PhH₅ *om.* ful ; Ph her pees ; H₅ heraftir wel)
D Thou shalt pi selue pi pees ful wel hereafter make
Rest : Thow shalt thi self thi pees hereafter make
Note the conflate reading of D.
617. . . . thus . . .
Rest : . . . right . . .
630. . . . the deuyll haue hym . . .
Rest : . . . spede hym . . .
- *638. Pandare answerde of þat be as be may
(H₃ as it may ; H₅ as it be may)
Rest : Why so mene I quod Pandarus al pis day
(Cx Ryght so ; H₂ quod Pandar I mene ; H₁ *om.* al
pis day)
- *644. But any aungel tolde it in thyn ere
(GgH₅ told it þe in þyn ere ; Ph told þe it)
Rest : But if þat Ioue told it yn þin eere
(H₂H₄ tolde it the in pine ere)
A revision from Christian to Pagan colouring.
647. . . . why thow art thus gon
(GgPh whedyr þou art thus gon)
Rest : . . . whider þow art gon
(H₄ whethir that thou art gon)
674. . . . biset . . .
(Ph To troylus and þat so)
Rest : . . . yset . . .

680. . . . in townes al aboute
Rest : . . . in towne and al aboute
 (R towns ; Cx *om.* and ; A *om.* al)
 (With line 686 ends H₅.)

JGgPhH₃(a).

- *691. The thridde answerde . . .
Rest : Quod po pe pridde . . .
 (CIH₂ *om.* po ; S₂ pan *for* po)
- *696-698. For al this while hir herte on oother thyng is

 God wot hir aduertence is elliswhere
 (Gg tyme *for* while ; H₃ was elles where)
Rest : For god it wot here herte on oper ping is

 Here aduertence is alwey ellys where
 (Cx *om.* it ; RCx audience ; D His aduertance)
701. . . . so . . .
Rest : . . . pus . . .
702. . . . thus gonne hir tales spende
 (Ph gun pus ; H₃ they *for* thus ; Gg tal opende)
Rest : . . . gonne alle here tales spende
- *706. So pat she wende anon right for to dye
 (Ph *om.* right)
Rest . So pat she felte almost here herte deye
 (D hir herte almost)
717. . . . from pat route
 (H₃Ph the Route)
Rest : . . . out of pat route
 (H₂H₄ pe route)
- *724. . . . hir wordes . . .
Rest : . . . here tales . . .
 The Italian reads *Parole*, *Fil.* 4. 85.
733. . . . for ded she gan to falle
Rest : . . . she gan for ded to falle
 (H₂H₄ for woo ; Cx *var.*)

- *736-742. After line 735, JGgPhH₃ have the stanza beginning
The salte teeris from hir eyne tweyne (stanza 108,
 lines 750-756 in Skeat's edition). This order
 corresponds to that of the Italian, *Fil.* 4. 87, 88.
 For further discussion of this shift see p. 221.

739. *Omit to*

- *747. Wo worth pat day and namely pat nyght
 (Ph *om.* and)

Rest : Wo worth allas pat ilke dayes lyght

- *750-752. The salte teeris from hir eyne tweyne
 Out ronne as shoure in april swithe
 Hir white breste she bet and for the peyne
 (H₃ from heyen tweyn; Gg of aprille ful swyþe;
 Ph in Aprill ful swithe)

Rest : Therwith þe terys from here eighen two
 Doun fille as shour in aperill swyþe
 Here white brest she bet and for the wo
 (H₂ And therwith; Cp *om.* from; R ful swythe;
 S₁Cx dooth swyþe; Cp *om.* in; H₄ for wo)

These lines begin the stanza the position of which was changed by βγ. The change to *Therwith* accommodates the stanza to its new position. In R a word of three letters has been erased before *teres*. Perhaps the scribe started to write *salte*, and then noticed that it was marked for omission. Both in α and in βγ, line 751 is metrically deficient; even though we read *Aperill* or *Aprille* as trisyllabic. Perhaps the correct reading is *ful swithe* as in PhGg and R. Note the emendation of S₁Cx.

- *757. What shal he don what shal I do also
 (Ph y *for* he, he *for* I)

Rest : She seyð how shal he do and I also
 (D I *for* he, he *for* I)

This line begins the stanza which in βγ immediately follows the shifted stanza. Since in the βγ arrangement the shifted stanza, with its description of Criseyde's actions, interrupts what in α is a continuous speech of the heroine, the words *She seyð* become necessary to the sense. The revision in this line and in 750 is, therefore, immediately involved with the shifting of the stanza.

758. . . . shal . . . (+ RCx)

Rest : . . . sholde . . .

*762, 763. And corsed be pat day which that argyue

Me of hir body bar to ben on lyue

(Gg on *for* of)*Rest* : O moder myn pat cleped were Argyue

Wo worth þat day pat pow me bere on lyue

(DCx clepet art; S₁ called art; H₄R the day; Cx *om*
second þat in 763)

The revision, with its direct address to Criseyde's mother, fits the lines better to 761, which reads in all MSS. *O Calkas, fader, thyn be al þis synne* (H₄A *the synne*). In the Italian the address to the heroine's father is in 4.93 (Paris ed. 5.76). In the Moutier ed. the only parallel to 762, 763 is the line *Deh or fuss' io nel nascere affogata*, *Fil.* 4. 88; but in the corresponding stanza of the Paris ed., 5. 73, we find—

*Mal' abbia il giorno, che al mondo fui nata,**E che di me mia madre ebbe desio!**Quant' era meglio m'avesse affogata**Che nutrimento desse al corpo mio.*

These lines correspond more nearly to α than $\beta\gamma$. (Neither the Paris ed. nor that of Moutier contain any hint of the name *Argyue*.)

767. . . . or oother creature

(Ph of eny creature)

Rest : . . . or lyues creature(H₂ a lyues; H₄ lyussh)

770. . . . ertheles . . .

Rest : . . . roteles . . .

773. . . . I shal from yow departe (— Ph)

 β . . . I mote from you departe γ S₁Ph . . . þat I from you departe

(Cl from hym)

775. Ther . . .

Rest : Than . . .

781. . . . holden . . .

Rest : . . . setten . . .

782. . . . til þat deth me meete
(Gg þey *for* deth)
Rest : . . . ay til deth me mete
(H₂R ay till þe dethe ; DS₂ to *for* till)
788. For theygh . . .
(Gg For þy ; Ph þei ; H₃ theight)
Rest : For þough . . .
- *789, 790. Yit in the feld of pite out of peyne
Ther pluto regneth . . . (— Ph)
(Gg 3e *for* Yit)
Rest : That hight Elysos . . .
(Ph *whole line in later hand*)
793. . . . yolden . . .
Rest : . . . chaunged . . .
Cf. line 347.
794. . . . woful . . .
Rest : . . . sorwful . . .
(Cx *om.* sorwful)
809. . . . this seruyse
(Ph his ; Gg *lacking*)
Rest : . . . þat seruice.
- *819. Of deth which þat for wo she gan desire
(Gg *lacking*)
Rest : . . . here herte gan desire
- *820. . . . for shame . . . (Gg *lacking*)
Rest : . . . for sorwe . . .
- The Italian reads *Per vergogna*, *Fil.* 4. 96 (Paris ed. *per onta*, 5. 79).
823. . . . chambre . . . (Gg *lacking*)
Rest : . . . hous. . .
- *828, 829. Myn Em Pandare of Ioyes mo than two
Was cause causynge first to me Criseide
(H₃ woo *for* two ; Gg *lacking*)
Rest : Pandare first of Ioyes mo þan two
Was cause causynge vnto me Criseyde

- *835. And euery worldly Ioye . . .
 (J wordly; Gg wordely; H₃ worldes)
Rest: And alle worldly blysse . . .
 (R And ek as; H₁ wordly)
843. . . . sorwful . . .
Rest: . . . woful . . .
853. What . . . (— Ph)
Rest: That . . .
854. . . . pat . . .
Rest: . . . which . . .
867. . . . and oother Ioyes . . .
Rest: . . . and ek here Ioyes . . .
- *868. . . . and thus for hem she lith allone
 (Gg from hem)
Rest: . . . and þus lith Criseyde allone
 (ClCpH₁DS₁ lith now Criseyde)
876. . . . I trowe wel . . . (+ RS₁)
Rest: *Omit* wel.
881. . . . worldly . . .
 (JGgH₃ wordly)
Rest: . . . erþely . . .
- *891. And ek the beste as my wit kan comprehende
 (H₃ may *for* kan)
Rest: As ferforth as . . .
 The α reading is hypermetrical.
903. Now wys his sorwe . . .
 (GgPh Now Iwis; H₃ Ywis, *omitting* Now)
Rest: Iwis this sorw . . .
 (D Iwis so this; R thus; Cx his)
- *906. To sen hym in pat wo pat he is Inne
Rest: To sen þat sorwe whiche þat he is Inne
 The Italian, *di veder Troilo afflitto*, *Fil.* 4. 105, supports the
 α reading.
915. . . . softly
 (Ph shortly)
Rest: . . . hastely

923. That wot I wel and therfore yit I seye
Rest: That know I wel and for pi . . .
 (R *om.* and ; D as *for* and ; Cx therfor)
924. Lat be this sorwe . . .
Rest: So lef pis sorwe . . .
 (Cx So lete ; D To leue)
936. . . . of short auysement (+ D)
Rest: . . . in short . . .
 (H₄ at)
938. And þat that I kan helpe . . .
 (Ph *om.* that)
Rest: And what þat I may helpe . . .
 (H₂H₄RCx *om.* what ; R helpe may)
- *950-952. He fast made hys compleynt And hys moon
 Besyking hem to sende hym other grace
 Or fro thys worlde to doon hym sone pace (— JGg)
Rest: Ful tendrely he preyde and made his mone
 To don hym sone out of pis world to pace
 For wel he þouhte þer was noon oþer grace
 (Cx *om.* *second* to ; JGgH₂RA nas *for* was)

We have here a clear case of revision, in which JGg have the $\beta\gamma$ reading. We must assume that the revision was made before J and Gg were derived.

- *953-1085. H₃Ph + H₄ omit the whole of the soliloquy on God's foreknowledge. Gg omits all except the last stanza. J originally omitted all but the last stanza (lines 1079-1085), leaving a blank space in which the omitted stanzas were later written by the original scribe. In Ph the passage has been added later by the scribe on inset leaves. For discussion of this matter see pp. 216-221.
- *1093. Hastow nat lyued al thy lyf biforn
 (J of *for* al ; Gg oftyn in þyn lyf)
Rest: . . . many a yer byforn
 (Cx many yere ; S₁ to fōrn ; Cl byfore)

- *1097. Kanstow nat thinken thus . . .
(Gg non ; Ph *om. nat*)
Rest : Lat be and penk right pus . . .
(A *om. right* ; Cx Here lete see & thynek on thy dysease)
1099. In loue also . . . (— Gg)
Rest : Right so in loue . . .
- *1113. Stynt al this thing . . .
Rest : Distorbe al pis . . .
(A To distorbe)
1123. . . . hym moore (+ H₂Cx)
Rest : . . . it more
1124. But . . . (+ H₂H₄)
Rest : And . . .
The Italian reads *ma*, *Fil.* 4. 113.
1129. . . . sorwe . . .
Rest : . . . peyne
(Cl peynes)
- *1131. But hem in arnes hente and softe kiste
(Gg ofte ; Ph sethins *for* softe)
Rest : . . . tok and after kyste
(H₂ & oper kiste ; H₄ & ech othir kiste ; A afore kyste)
- *1133. What for to don . . . (+ Cx)
Rest : Wher pat he was . . .
(S₂ he wist was)
1134. GgPh . . . for sorwe & for wepynge
(Ph *om. second* for)
H₃ . . . for sorow And for sobbing
Rest : . . . for wo and for sobbynge
(A for woo of sobbynge)
- Note that J agrees with βγ. The Italian, *singhiozzi*, *Fil.* 4. 115, supports the reading *sobbynge*.
- *1138, 1139. So bittre teeris wep nat thurgh the rynde
The woful mirra writen as I fynde
(J thurght)
Rest : So bittre teris weep nought as I fynde
The woful myrra prough þe bark and rynde
(D *om. teris* ; Cl pought ; DCx *om. second* þe)

1165. . . . in no cas . . .
Rest: . . . in no þing . . .
1167. And . . .
Rest: But . . .
1173. . . . wipen of and dreye (— Ph)
Rest: . . . wipen of ful dreye
 (A of wipen)
1178. For aught he wiste and breth ne felte he non
 (H₃ om. ne)
Rest: For aught he wot for breth . . .
 (Cl For I wot; H₂H₄Cx om. for; R in for for)
1179. And pat . . .
Rest: And þis . . .
1183. As men don folk . . .
Rest: As men don hem . . .
 (S₁ him)
1185. . . . the shethe . . . (— Ph, + H₄)
Rest: . . . his shethe . . .
1190. . . . no more he lyuen shulde (— J)
 (Gg leue ne schulde)
Rest: . . . he lenger lyuen sholde
 (R no lenger lyuen he sholde; H₄ thei for he)
1194. . . . kan . . .
Rest: . . . may . . .
1199. . . . and folowe hir spirit forth in hye
 (Ph now in hye)
Rest: . . . lowe or hye
 (A hiȝe or lowe; DS₂R and for or)
- Forth in hye* must mean "forth in haste," a more appropriate idea than the "low or high" of βγ.
1209. Omit o.
- *1214. . . . herte myn . . .
Rest: . . . lady myn . . .

The Italian reads *dolce mio disiro*, *Fil.* 4. 124. All MSS. read *herte myn* in 1216, which may explain the revision.

*1218. And he bigan conforte hir . . .

Rest : And he bygan to glade here . .

(D And he begladdid hir)

The Italian reads *La confortò, Fil.* 4. 124.

*1222, 1223. Ayein into hir herte al softe wente

So at the laste . . .

(Gg Al softe to hire herte aȝyn it went; H₃ So that
at laste)

Rest : Into here woful herte ayen it wente

But at þe laste . . .

*1250. . . . hir Ioyes alle lorn

(Gg bore *for* lorn; Ph forlorne; H₃ for Ioyes alle
ylorn)

Rest : . . . al here blisse ylorn

(H₂H₄Cx *om.* here; D lorne; H₄S₂ forlorn)

*1251. Seying allas that euere they were born

(H₃ *om.* euere; Gg were þey)

Rest : Bywaylynge ay þe day þat þey were born

(A Bywaylynge cursynge, he *for* þey; D at *for* ay)

1284. . . . right to conclusioun

(H₃ to Ryght; Ph to þe conclusion)

Rest : . . . to my conclusyon

1289. Gg Makyng here . .

Ph Makyng ay here . . .

H₃ Make here I shal . . .

Rest : Makyng alwey . . . (+ J)

*1290. That in effect this thing þat I shal seye

(H₃ That doutles thys thing that in effect I sey)

Rest : That now þese wordes whiche þat I shal seye

(R *om.* That now, you seye; H₄ *om.* now; D *om.*
second þat)

*1294. For fynaly . . . (— H₃)

Rest : For yn effect

Cf line 1290.

1315. And thus . . .

Rest : And pannē . . .

- *1322. JGgPh That we shul eueremo togeddere dwelle
(Ph wil ; Gg delle)
 H_3 That I may haue a liberte to dwelle
Rest : So as we shulle togedderes euere dwelle
(D *om.* euere ; H_4 euermor)
1323. . . . Ioye . . .
(H_3 Ioyes)
Rest : . . . blysse . . .
1332. Oonly but yif it my fader be
(H_3 Al holy but yf)
Rest : But yf þat onlyche . . .
(H_2H_4 *om.* yf ; S_2 *om.* þat)
A nine-syllable line in *a*.
1336. JGgPh . . . as muche as it hath space
 H_3 . . . as brode . . .
Rest : . . . as wyd . . .
1409. . . . and ek . . . (— H_3)
Rest : . . . and þat . . .
1453. And . . . (— H_3)
Rest : For . . .
1478. *Omit* al.
1654. . . . no thought . . .
(H_3 no thing)
Rest : . . . no cause . . .

Within the group of *a* MSS. certain sub-groups may be established. Up to the point where H_2^1 terminates (line 196), the familiar relationship of H_2Ph remains unimpaired. We may note a few instances by way of proof.

H_2^1Ph .

38. But at þe day . . .
Rest : But on a day . . .
(H_5 *om.* on)
- †41. . . . without eny lenger let
Rest : . . . withoute lenger lette
(βS_1 anon withouten lette)

†55. . . . for hem . . .
Rest : . . . for harm . . .

62. . . . eke . . .
Rest : . . . and . . .

123. . . . hem . . .
Rest : . . . it . . .

194. . . . lo þus sey we . . .
Rest : *Omit* lo

Up to the point where H_5 terminates, the relationship of GgH_5 is maintained. A few instances will suffice.

GgH_5 .

206. Gg But þus it fel ryȝt in conclusioun
 H_5 But þus to fell to conclusioun
Rest : O nyce world lo þy dyscreSSION
 (Ph blinde *for* nyce)

248. þerwith the sobbis . . .
Rest : The heyghe sobbes . . .
 (H_3 *om.* heyghe)

The Italian reads *Gli alti singhiozzi*, *Fil.* 4. 28.

473. . . . out with proserpyne
Rest : . . . down wip proserpyne

588. . . . nyne dayis . . . (+ Cx)
Rest : . . . nyne nyght . . .

As among $JGgPhH_3$, there seems to be a closer relationship of JGg on the one hand, and of H_3Ph on the other. For this the strongest evidence is the fact that H_3Ph omit the soliloquy on God's foreknowledge, lines 953–1085, entire (added later in Ph), and JGg omit only lines 953–1078 (added later in J), giving regularly the last stanza of the soliloquy, lines 1079–1085. A striking revision reading in which H_3Ph alone give the earlier reading, while JGg agree with $\beta\gamma$, lines 950–952, has already been given in the list of *a* readings above, p. 207. The evidence would seem to show that H_3 and Ph are derived from the *a* parent at an earlier stage than J and Gg. There are, however, instances of $GgPh$ and of GgH_3 . The agreements within the *a* group, most of them of a trivial character, are illustrated in the following list.

SCATTERING AGREEMENTS OF α MSS.

412. $H_3Ph + RCx$. . . full dere
Rest: . . . for dere
 (H_4 at deere)
474. H_3H_5 . . . lyue . . .
Rest: . . . wone . . .
 (Gg wene; H_2 duelle)
496. $JGgH_5$ Or . . .
Rest: O . . .
 (Cx Loo)
799. JH_3 How myghte it euere al red ben . . .
Rest: . . . yred ben
 (H_1 yherd)

The Italian, *Chi potrebbe giammai narrare a pieno*, *Fil.* 4. 95, supports the reading *al red*.

842. $GgPh + Cx$ *om.* pleynt.
876. Gg . . . er þis
 J . . . al how *over erasure*
Rest: . . . al how
1144. $GgPh$. . . to lesse . . .
Rest: . . . to wayken . . .
 (A waylen; DS_2 waken; H_1 woken; J weiken; H_2 makyn; H_4 make)
1208. JGg Thow Attrepos þat is ful redy heere
 (Gg antropos þat art)
Rest: And Attropes make redy þow my bere
 (H_2 þou me her ber; H_4 *om.* þow)
1228. JGg . . . he wolde therwith . . .
Rest: . . . þerwith he wolde . . .
1246. GgH_3 *omit* ful (CIR right *for* ful)
- †1266. GgH_3 . . . herte . . .
Rest: . . . art . . .
1295. H_3Ph I wyl it doo . . .
Rest: That wol I don . . .
- 1366 H_3 cause *for* wey; Ph *om.* wey

1451. J . . . þat ich yow heere stere
 Gg . . . þat I here stire
 Rest: . . . þat I haue herd yow stere
1455. H₃Ph + H₄Cx . . . fadyr . . .
 Rest: . . . sire . . .
1575. H₃Ph . . . shyneth now . . .
 Rest: . . . now shyneth . . .
 (H₂H₄ *om.* now)
- †1628. GgPh *omit* a þing
1657. GgPh + H₂ Was neuere fals ne schal . . .
 (*Gg by corrector*)
 Rest: Was fals ne neuere shal . . .

With the exception of 1208, none of these instances is very significant. It is to be noted, however, that they are more frequent in the latter part of the book, where the *a* group readings cease.

Much more significant than these readings just given, is a curious list of cases, all falling between 1300 and 1442, in which H₃, alone and unsupported, presents a reading entirely possible and satisfactory, and so different from the reading of the remaining MSS. as to warrant the idea that deliberate and authoritative revision is responsible for the variation. The list follows.

UNIQUE READINGS OF H₃.

- *1301. As in thys cas lat dryue it oute of mynde
 Rest: To letten it lat it passe out of mynde
 (H₂ lightly *for* lat it; Ph *om. second* it)
1302. . . . fonde . . .
 Rest: . . . shape . . .
- *1304. Ful cruelly oure hertis wolde anoye
 Rest: Wol ys disese and cruwelliche anoye
 (A trewliche; Cx gretely)
- *1312, 1313. Considereth now that tyme it is of trewe
 Ye may not faille of myn estat to here
 Rest: Syn wel ye wot þat it is now a truwe
 Ye shul ful wel al myn estat yhere
 (Cl ye wel; GgCx *om.* þat; H₄ *om.* a; H₂R of *for* al;
 H₄ *om.* al)

The *H*₃ reading is lent some support by the Italian, *Nel tempo delle tregue di venire Ci avrò cagione*, *Fil.* 4. 132.

- *1322. That I may haue a liberte to dwelle
 JGgPh That we shul euermo to geddere dwelle
Rest: So as we shulle to gederes eueure dwelle

- *1325. Of pourviaunce our counseil for to hide
Rest: That for pe beste . . .
 (Cx Is *for* That)

1336. . . . as brode . . .
 JGgPh . . . as muche . . .
Rest: . . . as wyd . . .

- *1363–1365. In hoste amonge the grekys euer in fere
 Hit nyl not bee and gode soo wysly rede
 My soule as ye haue cause noon to drede
Rest: Among po men of armes eueure in fere
 For which as wysly god my soule rede
 I kan not sen wherof ye sholden drede
 (Cx *om.* eueure; Ph so *for* as; R wherfore *for* wherof;
 S₁ þat 3e shuld drede)

The Italian reads (*Fil.* 4. 135)—

*Ed a che far tra' Greci mi terrebbe,
 Che come vedi son sempre nell' armi.*

This is on the whole nearer to *H*₃ than to the rest of the MSS., in spite of the fact that *men of armes* would seem to have been suggested by *sempre nell' armi*.

- *1392, 1393. To doo the wrathe of pryamus to passe
 Towardys hym and don hym stonde in grace
Rest: Toward pe Court to don pe wrape pace
 Of Priamus . . .
 (Gg cuntre; H₁ space)

The reading of *H*₃ is awkward but possible.

1402. Yif thys be les . . .
Rest: If þat I lye . . .

- *1404. In myddys hys werk or bere hym fast on honde
Rest: Makyng his sort and beren hym on honde
 (JGgPhH₂H₄ or *beryn*; R fast on honde)

Note that R agrees with *H*₃ in the phrase *fast on honde*.

*1411. Whan he from Delphos to the grekys sterte

Rest: Whan he for fered out of Delphos sterte

(Cl out of his Delphos; H₂ for drede; Gg out of
displese sterede)

*1442. Shal I neuer as in thys worlde haue Ioye

Rest: Ne shal I neuere haue hele honour ne Ioye

(H₂H₄ *om.* first Ne; Gg *om.* hele)

A [?]nine-syllable line as it stands in H₃. Presumably we should read *Ne shal I neuer*.

One hesitates to pronounce authentic a series of readings found only in a single MS., and that a MS. generally so corrupt as H₃. But most of the readings just given are of such a sort that, were they found in the remaining α MSS., we should at once regard them as variants due to revision. Though the evidence is not conclusive, the Italian is in two of these passages, lines 1312 and 1363, somewhat nearer to H₃ than to the other MSS.; so that we should, in the absence of evidence to the contrary, take the H₃ reading as the earlier unrevised version. If one will look back to the main list of α readings, he will see that in this part of the poem there are no striking α readings except line 1322, and that in 1322, and in several of the less striking readings, H₃ departs from JGgPh. We shall see that in their treatment of the long Boethian soliloquy of Troilus H₃ and Ph represent the earliest state of the text. I do not think we can avoid the conclusion that in these unique readings of H₃ we have a record of the text in its most primitive form. In these lines, we must then assume, the revision was made before J and Gg, and even before Ph, were copied.

THE SOLILOQUY ON FREE-CHOICE.

The most striking characteristic of α in Book IV is its omission of the long soliloquy of Troilus on God's foreknowledge and man's freedom, adapted from the fifth book of Boethius. The passage consists of 19 stanzas, stanzas 137-155, lines 953-1085. During this part of Book IV α is represented by JGgPhH₃. Of these MSS., H₃ lacks the 19 stanzas without break or indication of any kind to mark their loss. Stanza 136 is immediately followed in the middle of a page by stanza 156. In Ph the 19 stanzas

were also omitted; but after the MS. was completed, the scribe discovered the passage and added it on two inset leaves, with proper indication of its position between stanzas 136 and 156. In Gg all but the last stanza of the passage is omitted, without any indication of the loss, so that stanza 155 follows immediately upon 136. In J the whole passage is found, and in the hand of the original scribe; but after stanza 154 a blank was left of 16 stanza-spaces. Stanza 154 is at the foot of fol. 83^a. Fol. 83^b, with space for five stanzas, is blank. After fol. 83, a leaf, the twelfth of the seventh quire of twelve, has been cancelled. The first stanza-space on 84^a is blank. Then comes stanza 155. With the ten stanza-spaces on the cancelled leaf, we have, then, 16 stanza-spaces originally blank between stanzas 154 and 155. At the bottom of fol. 83^a, after stanza 154, is written in a contemporary hand: "her faileth thyng y^t / is nat yt made." The writing of this note is smaller and less black than the writing of the text; but, so far as one can judge from the few words, it seems to be that of the scribe. The reader may form his own opinion on the matter by consulting the collotype reproduction of the page in the Chaucer Society's volume, *The MSS. of Chaucer's Troilus*. This note can hardly be correct as it stands. Though stanza 154 gets us only to the middle of the long Prose III in Boethius, and there is more of the discussion which Chaucer might have used, we cannot willingly admit that the poet ever planned to make this soliloquy longer than it is. Note and space presumably go back to an ancestor of the existing J. This ancestor must have left blank a space equal to 34 stanzas, with a note to the effect that the lacuna was for matter not yet composed. The 18 stanzas were then written in, leaving 16 additional blank spaces not used, and the note was not erased. J found this state of things and exactly reproduced it, save that the note "her faileth thyng, etc," is placed immediately before the blank. We must assume that blank and note have been taken over by J from an ancestor; since the existing J is through more than half its extent a β MS.

However this curious state of things came into being, two significant facts stand out: first, that the main body of the soliloquy, stanzas 137–154, are separated from the transitional stanza 155, which apparently existed in J's parent MS. before the 18 stanzas of soliloquy were supplied; and second, that an

early scribe bears witness to the fact that this Boethian soliloquy was a late addition. There must have been a scribe who knew authoritatively that space was to be left for an indefinite number of stanzas "not yet made."

That the soliloquy was indeed an afterthought we can infer from other evidence. Stanzas 136 and 156 fit together perfectly. In 136 Pandarus finds Troilus in a temple sorrowfully praying the gods to end his life. In 156 Pandarus addresses him at once, as we should expect him to do, and reproves and comforts him. Not only is the connection perfectly appropriate; the two stanzas, 136 and 156, are further bound together by the fact that they are based on a single stanza, 4. 109, in the *Filostrato*. As critics have already noticed, the introduction of the long soliloquy results in a considerable absurdity. As the text stands in $\beta\gamma$, Pandarus finds Troilus at line 947, and does not speak to him till line 1086. Apparently Pandarus stands on the threshold throughout the long soliloquy, and does not come in till 1085.

The added passage of 19 stanzas consists of two parts: 18 stanzas of soliloquy, closely modelled on Boethius, and the transitional stanza, 155, not derived from Boethius. This division is emphasized by the fact that Gg omits the 18 stanzas, but has 155, and that in J 155 is separated from the rest by a space, and was presumably present in J's original before the 18 stanzas were supplied. We must consider carefully stanza 155. It is unmistakably intended to conclude the soliloquy, and is meaningless when found, as in Gg, without the 18 stanzas preceding. "Thanne seyde he pus," with which stanza 155 begins, is clearly intended to set this stanza against the soliloquy. It has no point as referred to stanza 136; for what Troilus says in 155 is virtually what we are told that he prayed in 136. We may note that in H_3 and Ph the concluding lines of stanza 136 are even nearer to the substance of 155. In these MSS. we read:

He fast made hys compleynt And his moon
Besyking hem to sende hym other grace
Or fro thys worlde to doon hym sone pace

In stanza 155 Troilus prays:

Rewe on my sorwe or do me deye sone
Or bryng Criseyde and me fro pis distresse
(GgJCxDS₂ and do me deye)

When stanza 155 is added, stanza 136 is made to end :

Ful tendrely he preyde and made his mone
 To don hym sone out of pis world to pace
 For wel he pouhte per was noon oþer grace

This is the reading of JGg as well as of $\beta\gamma$.

Clearer evidence that stanza 155 refers back to the soliloquy is found in its reference to Troilus "Disputyng with hym self in pis matere," which can hardly refer to anything in stanza 136. It seems clear, then, that stanza 155 has no meaning without the preceding soliloquy ; and yet Gg and J both offer strong evidence that at one stage of its development the passage stood in Chaucer's original with 155 and without the 18 stanzas, 137-154. We must distinguish three stages. The first is that represented by H_3Ph , in which stanzas 136 and 156 followed uninterrupted as in *Filostrato*. It then occurred to Chaucer to give to Troilus at this point a Boethian discussion of free-choice and necessity. He began, not uncharacteristically, at the end, with the stanza of transition, No. 155, and altered the end of 136. But before he had done the rather difficult task of reducing the philosophical argument to seven-line stanzas, there was occasion to have made two new copies of the poem—the copies from which J and Gg are descended—and in these copies was included the new stanza, 155, and space was left for the "thing that is not yet made."

So far attention has been confined to JGgPh H_3 . The whole free-choice passage, including stanza 155, is also omitted by H_4 . Though H_2 , here in its fourth handwriting, is closely related to H_4 throughout the last two books of the poem, the 19 stanzas are regularly given in H_2 , and in R and Cx which with H_2H_4 here constitute β . For this omission by H_4 I can give no satisfactory explanation. Since the passage was at least planned before JGg were copied, and is present in γ , it must have been in existence when H_4 was derived. H_4 , however, is throughout distinguished by its tendency to revert to α readings, notably in Book III, where it gives the shifted stanzas twice over, in their $\alpha\gamma$ position and in their β position. H_2H_4 , moreover, with Ph, omit the *Teseide* passage in Book V. Since H_2 contains the passage, we must assume one of two hypotheses. Either the omission was made (through a misunderstanding, perhaps) by the common ancestor of

H_2H_4 , in which case H_2 has derived the passage from some foreign source (as Ph does before our eyes); or the common original of H_2H_4 contained the passage, and H_4 itself (or an intermediate ancestor) is responsible for the omission. For the first of these hypotheses, that H_2 has derived the passage from a source other than the common ancestor of H_2 and H_4 , some evidence may be drawn from the character of its readings.

In the 19 stanzas under discussion there are only the most trivial variations of reading. There is not in the entire passage of 133 lines a single clear example of group variation. That the reader may see how little is the variation, I give in the following list all the cases in which two or more MSS. agree against the rest in a variation of any possible significance. The Ph readings are those of the inset leaves. We have already seen the reasons for believing that the passage is a later addition in J, or in J's original.

VARIANT READINGS IN THE FREE-CHOICE SOLILOQUY.

957. JDS₁Cx I am *for* he nas ; ClCpH₁AH₂Ph lorn waylawey ;
Rest lorn so weylaway
958. JPhD *omit* second comth
961. S₂ *for* signe ; Ph purgh signe ; *Rest* foresight
964. ClCpH₁S₁JPh desponeth ; H₂RCxADS₂ disposeth
965. PhS₂ his *for* here
968. AR pei *for* per
970. CxS₂ *omit* men
973. H₂R whiche *for* whos
974. RCx *omit* men
975. ClS₁R And *for* Ne ; S₂ *om.*
986. H₂DS₂ writen *for* wripen ; Cx worchen
987. ClCpH₁ADJPh nere ; H₂RCxS₁S₂ wer
989. JPhCx Vnsidefast and no certein *for* Vncerteyn and no
 stedefast ; D *om.* stedefast
991. ADR *omit* cler
994. ClCx corsed wykkednesse *for* wikked corsednesse
998. JPhCx seyn it bifore ; *Rest omit* it
1004. AS₂ not *for* to be *for* not to be
1006. H₂PhS₂ nedfully *for* nedely
1007. Ph that shul falle ; D which shal falle ; *Rest* whiche pat falle

1011. JR *omit* pat
 1012. H₂R *omit second* pe
 1016. H₂S₂ I mene not *for* I me nought
 1028. ClC_x it is *for* is it
 1031. PhC_x thus *for* pis
 1035. H₁H₂ pis *for* pus
 1038. PhS₂ *omit* his ; H₂ pis *for* his
 1043. H₂S₂ and in the *for* and pe
 1044. ClS₁ on *for* in
 1051. PhC_xD *omit* al ; PhC_x *omit* for
 1052. JC_x They ben ; ClDPh it is ; *Rest* is it
 1062. PhS₂ pe goddis ; *Rest omit* pe
 1064. Ph shul ; RC_x shal ; *Rest* sholde
 1072. CpH₁DS₁H₂ herto *for* perto
 1076. PhA so *for* pus
 1080. ClCpH₂R alle pinge *for* al pis thyng
 1081. ClCpH₁AS₁PhR or ; *Rest* and
 1085. RD in thys manere ; JPhC_x as ye shal heere ; *Rest* as 3e
 may here

From such a list as this no sure conclusions can be drawn. The evidence is contradictory, as must always be the case when the variations are of the trivial sort where so great a part can be played by accidental coincidences. We can at most say that Ph and J tend to associate together, as though derived from a similar source ; and that in a number of instances, notably 986, 1016, 1043, H₂ is associated with S₂. From this latter fact it might be argued that the omission of the soliloquy was due to the H₂H₄ parent, and that H₂ has derived the passage from a source similar to S₂. But I feel that the evidence is not clear enough to warrant any conclusion in the matter.

The relation of α to the Boethius passage can be explained with some degree of assurance. We must be content merely to record that H₄ omits the passage, as we must merely record the omission of the proems in R.

THE SHIFT OF STANZA 108.

Less in importance, perhaps, but none the less a striking instance of revision, is the shifting of the stanza numbered 108 (lines 750–756), in the edition of Skeat. In JGgPhH₃ it comes

immediately after stanza 105, *i.e.* after line 735; in $\beta\gamma$ it is moved down to the position which it occupies in Skeat's edition. In $\beta\gamma$ the first line of the stanza is changed to accommodate it to its new position, as is also line 757, which in $\beta\gamma$ immediately follows the stanza in question (*cf.* above, p. 203). There can be no doubt that the shift is a deliberate one; nor can there be any doubt which position this stanza originally occupied. In Boccaccio a single stanza, *Fil.* 4. 87, serves as source for the last three lines of stanza 105, for the shifted stanza, and for stanza 106; and the details are found in the same sequence as in the α text of Chaucer. Stanza 88 of Boccaccio corresponds to stanza 107 in Chaucer. The $\beta\gamma$ position disturbs the order of Boccaccio by inserting a stanza of Criseyde's words between two stanzas which describe her conduct. What was the motive for the revision is not at all clear; and readers may well disagree as to which order, the original or the revised, is preferable. The $\beta\gamma$ arrangement succeeds better in co-ordinating words and deeds.

READINGS CHARACTERISTIC OF β .

Besides the large number of instances in which $\beta\gamma$ agree as against α , there is a considerable number of cases in which the β MSS. agree as against $\alpha\gamma$. The great majority of these cases are found in the first six hundred lines of the book; and the only striking cases of β readings, of the sort which are so numerous in Book III, occur before line 170. During the early part of the book β is represented by JRH₄H₃Cx. At line 197, with a new handwriting, H₂ joins the group. At about line 300 H₃ becomes an α MS.; and J goes over to α at line 438. From there on β is represented by H₂H₄RCx. In the early part of the book S₁ frequently has β readings. After line 166 it is very rarely found with β . In the following list its participation in the β reading is always specifically noted.

JH₄RCxH₃ (β).

7. . . . a mowe (+ S₁)
 (H₃ *om.* a)
 Rest : . . . þe mowe
29. . . . tolde . . . (— J)
 Rest : . . . seyð . . .

- *41, 42. . . anon withouten lette
 Hir fomen in the felde hem faste mette
 (R ful *for* hem ; H_3 on the felde faste they mette)
Rest : . . . withoute lenger lette
 Here fomen in þe feld anoon hem mette
 (S_1 anon withouten lette ; H_2Ph eny lenger ; D *om.*
 anoon ; H_2PhDS_2 they met)

Note that S_1 has the β reading in 41 and the $\alpha\gamma$ reading in 42, thus repeating *anon*.

- *57-59. But natheles a trewe was ther take
 At grekys requeste and tho they gonnen trete
 Of prisoners a chaunge for to make (— H_3 , + S_1)
 (H_4 neuertheles ; RS_1 ther was ; JH_4 At gret requeste ;
 H_4R gonne thei)

Rest : Of Pryamus was yeue at Grekes requeste
 A tyme of trewe and þo þey gonnen trete
 Here prisoneres to chaungen most and leste
 (CpH_1 a greke requeste ; $H_5(Gg)S_2$ a gret request ;
 H_3 To pryamus whas yeven at his Requeste,
 gan to trete ; A than *for* yeue ; D þen þei gan ;
 A touchynge *for* to chaungen.)

A clear case of deliberate revision. That β is less original is shown by the Italian :

*Chiese Priamo triegua, e fugli data ;
 E cominciossi a trattare infra loro
 Di permutar prigioni quella fiata. Fil. 4. 4.*

Nearest to the Italian, however, is the reading of H_3 , so that we must assume that H_3 here preserves Chaucer's original version, which then underwent two successive revisions, each of which removed it further from the Italian. I suspect that we should read in both the later versions *At grek requeste*, since this form will best explain the various readings.

123. They wol eft brynge it . . .
 (H_3 it eft bringe)
Rest : That þei wole brynge it . . .
 (H_2Ph bryng hem)

124. Right for despit . . .
Rest : Right in despit . . .

224 *The Manuscript Relations in Book IV.*

- *126. The town shal yit be set upon a fire (+ S₁)
 (H₄Cx on a fire)
 Rest: The town of Troye shal ben set on fire
 (S₂ *om.* ben; Ph a fyre)
132. . . . sikes soore (+ S₁)
 Rest: . . . sorwes sore
140. . . . streyght to Troye wente (— J)
 (Cx ful streyghte; H₃ wende)
 Rest: . . . to Troye streyght pei wente
 (H₁ *om.* pei; H₅ *om.* streyght pei)
- *156. Abood what oother lordes wolde saye
 (H₄ what that other)
 Rest: Abod what lordes wolde vnto it seye
 (H₁ And *for* Abod; H₂PhGgH₅ADS₂ to *for* vnto)
- *166. Yif thow debate it liste she be thy foo (+ S₁)
 (H₃ you; H₄R *om.* it; Cx Lest thow hyr wrath & she
 than be thy foo)
 Rest: Lest for pi werk she wolde be pi fo.

(With line 197, H₂ becomes a β MS.)

JH₂H₄RCxH₃(β).

215. JRH₃ What . . .
 H₂H₄Cx That . . .
 α S₁ But . . .
 γ And . . .
282. Nought rought I whiderward thow woldest steere
 (J me *inserted above by scribe before* steere; H₃ Now
 Routh, *om.* woldest)
 Rest: . . . wheder pow woldest me stere
 (Gg whedyr pat pou; Ph hit *for* me)
322. For now . . . (— J)
 Rest: For pi . . .

(With line 326 H₃ becomes consistently an α MS.)

JH₂H₄RCx(β).

328. . . . here (— H₄, + Ph)
 Rest: . . . pere

344. . . . at the parliament

Rest: . . . in . . .

418. . . . moot (— Cx)

Rest: . . . shal . . .

(With line 438 J becomes consistently an α MS.)

 $H_2H_4RCx(\beta).$

441. . . . werche . . . (— Cx)

Rest: . . . do . . .

461. . . . now her now ther . . . (— Cx)

(H_4 now heere & there)

Rest: . . . now this now pat . . .

(A *om.* pat)

470. My deth . . . (+ Gg)

Rest: The deth . . .

484. But telle me þis . . . (— Cx)

α But sey me this . . .

$\gamma S_1 + Cx$ But tel me now . . .

†528. Whi nelt þou helpe to doone redresse (— Cx)

(R nyltow, and *for* to)

Rest: Why nylt þiself helpen . . .

(H_3 why nyltow thyselfen; H_5 nylt not, holly don redresse)

The reading of H_2H_4R is metrically deficient.

570. . . . saue . . .

(R Kepe)

Rest: . . . han . . .

573. . . . it . . . (— Cx)

Rest: . . . here . . .

581. . . . is þer but litell reste

γS_1 . . . þer is but litel reste

α . . . is litel hertes reste

588. *Omit* neuere (+ S_1 , + PhAS₂)

TEXT. TRAD.

Q

594. And rather be in blame a liteel stounde (+S₁)
 γ . . . in blame a lite yfounde
 (Cl litel ; S₂ sound)
 α . . . a lite in blame Ifownde
 (H₃ litel)

That the $\alpha\gamma$ reading is more original is shown by the Italian,
inmanzi esser ripreso alquanto, Fil. 4. 72.

598. . . . holde you . . .
 Rest : . . . holden pe . . .

- †630. And dey . . . (—Cx, +D)
 Rest : A dieu . . .

662. . . . þes tidinges new (—Cx)
 (H₄ all these tithyngis)
 Rest : . . . þis tale al newe
 (GgPhH₃ om. al ; Cl of *for* al ; A trewe)

721. *Omit* eke (—R, +Gg)

734. . . . thens neuer . . . (+H₃Ph)
 (H₃ there neuer)
 Rest : . . . neuere þennes

773. . . . I mote from you departe
 Rest : . . . þat I from 3ow departe
 (JII₃Gg I shal from yow ; Cl from hym)

868. . . . lieth Cresseide Alone (+AS₂)
 α . . . for hem she lith allone
 Rest : . . . lith now Criseyde allone

938. And þat I may helpe . . .
 (R helpe may)
 γ S₁ And what þat I may helpe . . .
 α And þat that I kan helpe . . .
 (Ph om. that)

948. . . . no more . . . (—R, +S₁, +H₃Ph)
 Rest : . . . no lenger . . .
 (Gg no þyng)

1178. H_2 . . . brethe þan felte he non
 H_4 . . . ne breth felt he non
 R . . . in breth ne felte he non
 Cx . . . breth ne felte he none
 α . . . and breth ne felte he non
 γS_1 . . . for breth ne felte he noon
1310. *Omit second so* (+ PhGg, + AD)
(Gg now *for so* ; R *parde for so*)
1438. For which full oft ful pitously hir preid ($- R$, + J)
(H_4Cx he *for hir*)
Rest : . . . ful ofte he pitously here preyde
(GgRD ful ofte pitously he preyde ;
Ph ful pitously he her prayde)

Within the group of β MSS. there is an unmistakable relationship between H_2 and H_4 . This relation, it will be remembered, was found in Book I, where two leaves of H_2 are written by the later, third hand. There the related H_2^3 and H_4 were α MSS. Now they are both β . The change from α type to β type must then, have taken place in their common original. The relationship of H_2 and H_4 in Book IV, beginning with line 197 where H_2^3 begins, has already been attested in the variants recorded in the list of β group readings above. It may be further illustrated by the following readings:

 H_2H_4 .

- †299. . . . I son it . . .
(H_4 sonne)
Rest : . . . I seen it . . .
312. . . . wepe forth . . .
Rest : . . . wepen out . . .
397. . . . in no seruise
Rest : . . . in my seruyse
445. . . . plight (+ S_2)
Rest : . . . hight
495. . . . it foryete . . .
Rest : . . . þat foryete . . .

†596. Hit is no shame to you more þan vise

Rest: . . . ne no vice

(Cp *om.* ne ; GgH₅Cx *om.* no)

598. . . . holde you full nyse

Rest: . . . holden þe for nyce

(RCx you)

733. . . . for woo . . .

Rest: . . . for ded . . .

I do not feel that the Italian, *Erasi la dolente in sul suo letto Gittata stesa*, Fil. 4. 87, lends any support to the H₂H₄ reading, since *for ded* corresponds to *stesa*, about as closely as does *for woo* to *dolente*.

†1417. . . . was trew good & kinde

Rest: . . . trewe was and kynde

(H₃ *om.* and)

1456. . . . ouer-renne . . .

Rest: . . . at-renne . . .

(H₃ oute Renne ; A atterne)

†1584. Men say þe sufferaunt ouercomth þe proude parde

Rest: Omit þe proude

A hypermetrical line.

Less striking is the list of readings in which RCx agree as against H₂H₄ and αγ.

RCx.

†96. . . . my sherte

Rest: . . . here sherte

109. R . . . and your bounte

Cx . . . & of youre bounte

Rest: . . . and of bounte

151. . . . ful ney . . . (+ S₂)

Rest: . . . wel neygh . . .

209. Omit he

296. Ay lyue in turment . . .

Rest: On lyue in torment . . .

(α In wo in turment)

301. . . . liuen in distresse

Rest: . . . dyen . . .

(*a* endyn)

412. . . . ful deere (+ H_3Ph)

Rest: . . . for dere

(H_4 at deere)

†698. . . . audience . . .

Rest: . . . aduertence . . .

1177. *Omit* and

There are a few cases, all of which may be coincidences, in which H_4Cx agree in a variant reading:

$H_4Cx.$

517. *Omit* is

666. *Omit* right (+ H_3)

896. . . . come here . . .

Rest: . . . be here . . .

1451. *Omit* yet

1455. . . . fadir . . . (+ H_3Ph)

Rest: . . . sire . . .

In 112 H_4RCx read *toun and folk* instead of *folk and toun*; and in 305 the same MSS. read *woful nest* for *wo vnneste*.

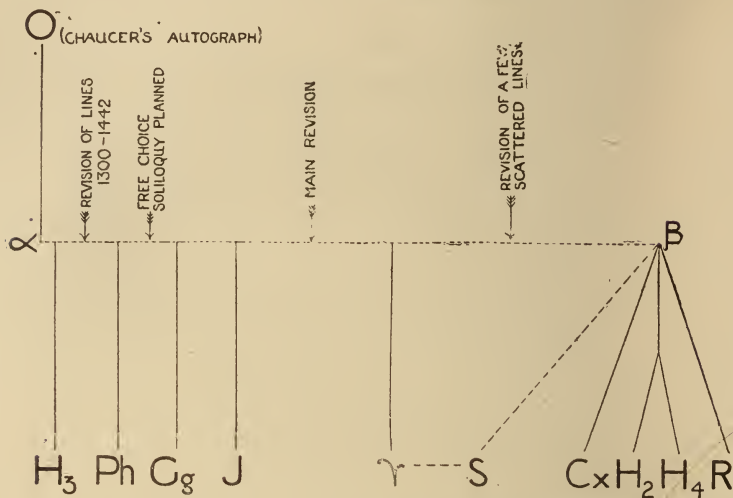
The only closer relationship among the β MSS. is that of H_2 and H_4 . The scattering agreements, when not due to coincidence, must be explained as due to the presence of alternate readings in the β original.

Of the β group readings, but few present striking variations, and those few are found before line 167. There are, however, no clear cases in which β is in error.

In Book IV the most striking series of variants is that which divides *a* from $\beta\gamma$. In other words γ is, as in Book I, normally in possession of the later revised form of the text.

The relation of the MSS. throughout the greater part of the

book, *i.e.* after H_3 and J have both become a MSS., may be graphically represented by the following diagram:



The broken line, $\alpha \dots \beta$, represents a single MS., in which successive revisions were made.

CHAPTER VI

THE MANUSCRIPT RELATIONS IN BOOK V

IN Book V the MS. relations return to a condition similar to that which exists in Book II, where γ alone remains intact, and where the distinction between α and β becomes greatly confused. Save for the *Teseide* passage at the end of the book, which is omitted in H_2H_4 and Ph, and which may be a later addition, there is very little trace of any revision. With only two or three exceptions, the variations are of the trivial sort which can be recognized at once as due to the carelessness and ignorance of a scribe.

We shall begin by presenting the readings of γ . With γ is associated in a large number of cases S_1 . Occasionally other MSS. share in a γ reading. The participation of S_1 or of other MSS. is in every case specifically noted.

ClCpH₁S₂AD(γ)

- †9. . . . his bemes clere (+ H₃ + Cx)
 J(Gg)Ph . . . cleene
 H₂H₄RS₁ . . . shene

A clear case of error, since the rime words in 11 and 12 are *grene* and *queene*.

- 60, 61. And forth she rit ful sorwfully a pas
 Ther nys non oper remedye yn pis cas
 (Cl right for rit)

Rest : transpose order of lines.

Though the order in γ is not impossible, it seems fairly clear from the context that it is erroneous. The line, *Ther nys non oper remedye*, etc., comes more appropriately immediately after 59, *But forth she mot for ought pat may bytyde*. There is a curious reflection of this transposition in Gg. In Gg the line, *Ther nys*, etc. (properly line 60) has been lost. In consequence the line, *And forthe sche rauzt ful sorwefully apas*, becomes the fourth line of the stanza. To supply the missing line someone has put in as the fifth line of the stanza, *And ofte sche syhede & seyde allas*. All this points towards confusion in the common original of all the MSS. Perhaps the line *Ther nys*, etc., was in the margin. This would at any rate account for the transposition in γ and the loss of the line in Gg.

63. . . . swete herte

Rest : . . . deere herte

107. Whan pis was don . . .

Rest : Whan tyme was . . .

115. That he nolde don his peyne and al his myght
 (S₂ ne wolde ; Cp *om.* and)

Rest : That he nyl don his herte . . .

(H₄RS₁ nolde ; H₂ wil)

I can find no justification for the phrase *don his herte*, while *don his peyne* in the sense of "take trouble" is well attested. *Herte* must be anticipated from the next line. If *herte* is an error, it is a very early one, since it is found in all the MSS. except γ . We must assume that *herte*, the corrupt reading, stood

in the common original of all MSS. and that the reading of γ is a scribal emendation, not improbably correct.

166. Ek I am not . . . (+ S₁)

Rest: Nor I am not . . .

(J nam: H₂PhNe: GgRCx For)

242. . . þis sustene (+ S₁)

Rest: . . . ek sustene

245. For langour . . . (+ S₁)

Rest: For longynge . . .

The context strongly favours *longynge*.

412. The folk wol wene . . . (+ S₁)

Rest: The folk wol seyn . . .

The Italian, *diria l' uom, Fil. 5. 35*, confirms the reading *seyn*.

†436. . . of heigh prowess (+ S₁)

Rest: . . . of heygh largesse

The context shows that *largesse* is the correct reading.

495. Lat vs holde forth our purpos fermely (+ S₁, + Cx)

(Cx forth holde; A om. oure)

Rest: Omit forth

Without *forth* we have a nine-syllable line, since attributive *oure* seems to be always monosyllabic.

565. Lo yondir saugh I myn owene lady daunce (+ S₁)

(Cl yende)

Rest: . . . last my lady daunce

(H₄ my lady last daunce)

613. . . shal . . .

Rest: . . . wil . . .

(S₁ lacking)

†711 Omit second ther (+ S₁)

924. Ye leuere þan be lord of Greces twelue (+ S₁)

(Cl þe for be; H₁ ben a lord; A Grekys)

Rest: . . . kyng . . .

The Italian, *Più volentier che re de' Greci adesso, Fil. 6. 22*, supports the *aß* reading.

944. Ye wol me graunte . . . (+ S₁)

Rest: T ye me graunt . . .

973. I trowe ek wel . . . ($- A, + S_1$)
Rest: I trow it wel . . .
992. . . . er . . . ($+ S_1$)
Rest: . . . yit . . .
 (H_2RH_3 *om.* yit)
- †1006. And gan to syke & seyde O Troylus & Troye town
 ($+ S_1$)
 (H_1 O Troilus town; CpD O Troie town)
Rest: . . . O Troye town
- A clear case of error in the γ original, rightly emended by CpD, and mistakenly emended by H_1 .
1021. . . . bedde . . . ($+ S_1 + H_3$)
Rest: . . . reste . . .
 (H_4 chamber)
1070. . . . is now for me to rewe ($+ S_1 + H_3$)
 (Cl *om.* for; ADS₁ is now me for)
Rest: . . . it is now for to rewe
 (R *om.* for; Ph is me now to repente)
1081. . . . shold I . . . ($- Cl, + JH_3$)
Rest: . . . myght I . . .
 (ClGg myghty)
1163. . . . right soth . . . ($- A, + S_1$)
Rest: . . . ful sothe . . .
1168. . . . dar I seye ($- A, + S_1$)
Rest: . . . soth to seye
1270. . . . per is no remedye . . . ($+ S_1$)
Rest: . . . ther lith no remedy . . .
1295. . . . of þat þou art in doute ($+ S_1 + H_3$)
 (H_3 of wych)
Rest: . . . ther thow art now in doute
 (JCx *om.* now; H_2 in a doute)
1316. . . . may . . . ($+ S_1 + H_3 + H_2$)
Rest: . . . shal . . .
1390. . . . myn owen lady free ($- Cl, + S_1 + H_3$)
Rest: . . . myn hertes lady free

234 *The Manuscript Relations in Book V.*

1413. As ye . . . (+ S₁ + Cx)

Rest: As she . . .

1449. . . . þe bor . . . (+ S₁ + H₃)

Rest: . . . this boor . . .

(Gg bope *for* boor; Cx *om.* boor)

1543. Thorough purueyaunce . . . (+ S₁)

Rest: By purueaunce . . .

1585. *Omit first* þat (+ S₁)

(H₃H₄Cx *om.* second þat)

1674. . . . o lady myn Criseyde (+ S₁ + H₃)

Rest: . . . o lady bright Criseide

(Gg *by scribe over erasure*)

1775. . . . she . . . (+ S₁ + R)

Rest: . . . ye . . .

1806. Dispitously . . . (+ S₁ + Cx)

Rest: Ful pitously . . .

†1809. . . . þe seuenþe spere (+ S₁ + H₃)

JRCx . . . the viij speere

(H₂H₄ *omit the passage*; Gg *lacking*; Ph *on inset leaf*
has the γ reading)

The Italian reads: *Ver la concavità del cielo ottava. Teseide*,
11. 1. See also Skeat's note.

These γ readings in Book V are of precisely the same character as those we have recorded in the preceding books. In several instances they are certainly corrupt; and in most cases probability, both inherent and transcriptional, makes against them. In no instance is there any ground for regarding the variation as due to deliberate revision by the author; though once, in line 115, γ has emended a corrupt reading in the common original of all MSS.

It is to be noted that from line 166 S₁ shares all the γ readings except one (line 1081), and that a doubtful case. Beginning with line 1021, H₃ shares in about half of the γ readings.

We have now to consider some scattering agreements within the group of γ MSS.

SCATTERING AGREEMENTS OF γ MSS.

12. Cp Syn that the sone I Troilus of Ecuba the queene
Rest : Omit I Troilus
 ($H_1S_2 + H_4$ have gloss Troilus over sone ; S_1 has gloss in margin)
- Cp has taken into the text a gloss which must have stood in the γ original. The *I* is the sign ·|· which regularly introduces a gloss.
26. Cp H_1S_2 . . . here to fore
Rest : . . . here byfore
 (H_3 eke byfore)
- †42. Cp H_1S_2 . . . crye
Rest : . . . drye
- †55. A pore, D poor, for yore
88. Cp Of which the sone Diomedes of Tideus took hede
Rest : Omit Diomedes
 (S_2D have gloss Diomedes over Tideus ; H_2 has gloss in margin ; H_4 diomedes for the sone of Tideus)
- †208. AD + H_2H_4 . . . and eke Cipride
Rest : Omit eke
Eke is taken over from the preceding line.
321. AD + Gg . . . on me . . .
Rest : . . . of me . . .
- 335, 336. H_1S_2 . . . þe care
 . . . this fare
Rest : . . . þe fare
 . . . þis care
 (A þe mone . . . þis care allone ; Gg care corrected from fare)
522. $H_1AS_1 + Gg$. . . preyde
 (H_1 preyed)
Rest : . . . seyde
- †572. DS_1 Now goode swete herte . . .
Rest : Omit herte
599. $DS_1 + J$. . . blisful god . . .
Rest : . . . blisful lorde . . .

- 236 *The Manuscript Relations in Book V.*
733. ClCpH₁ AS₁ + JH₃ . . . po yonder wallys
 (H₃A the)
 Rest : Omit po
750. AS₁ . . . bytyde what may bityde
 Rest : Omit may
943. A So þat or þat I departe . . .
 D So þat or I departe . . .
 Rest : So er þat I departe . . .
 (H₄ For for So ; H₂H₄ om. þat)
993. AD I neuere er wroughte
 Rest : Omit er
- †1048. ClD omit kepen
1057. AS₁ + Cx . . . and eke . . .
 Rest : . . . and on . . .
- †1098 ClH₁ omit so
- †1153. ClCpH₁ . . . whan þat . . .
 Rest : Omit þat
1193. AD + Ph . . . by est & ek by weste
 Rest : . . . by west & ek by este
- †1277. AD + Gg omit maner
1343. AD may sterte for masterte or me asterte
1393. ClCp(H₁) There for That
- †1444. DS₁ + Gg omit come ; Cl ek for come
- †1792. ADS₁ + Cx Of Virgile . . .
 (A O for Of)
 Rest : Omit Of
1796. Cp Ne the this mysymetre . . .
 S₂ Ne þis mysymetre . . .
 Rest : Ne þe mysymetre . . .

These readings just recorded point to the existence of corrections in the γ original. They also show, if not very clearly, the continued relationship of A and D, and the association with these two MSS. of S₁. As against ADS₁ we find CpH₁S₂ agreeing in several cases in a variant reading. It is to be noted that Cl is present in very few of these combinations.

READINGS CHARACTERISTIC OF α .

The long series of α group readings in Book IV is, it will be remembered, found in the first 1300 lines of the book. After line 1336 there are but a handful of trivial cases. This is the condition which we find throughout Book V. There are but a score of α readings in the whole book; and in a number of those either H_3 or Ph has deserted its affiliation. Moreover, the readings are of a very trivial character. In only two instances, lines 476(?) and 1502–1504, have we anything which points strongly towards revision; and in the second of these instances the α reading is presented only by JGg. Further, it will be found that in the trivial readings of the group individual β MSS. frequently share. The list of α readings follows.

JGgPh H_3 (α).

9. J(Gg)Ph . . . hir bemys cleene
 $H_2H_4RS_1$. . . his bemes shene
 γH_3Cx . . . his bemes clere

The pronoun *hir* is clearly wrong; *cleene* in the sense of clear bright, is quite defensible. It would seem to be the source of the corrupt γ reading.

202. . . . no wight . . .
 (Gg non man *over erasure*)

Rest: . . . no ping . . .

Wight suits the context better than *ping*.

476. . . . and thennes wolde he wende
Rest: . . . and seyde he wolde wende
 (S_1 pat he wolde; Cx with pandare his frende)

523. *Omit* As (— H_3)

A nine-syllable line in JGgPh.

570. . . . ful busily (— J, + R)
Rest: . . . ful blyssfully

Either reading is possible.

583. . . . in my memorie (— Ph, + H_2R)
 (J momorie)

Rest: *Omit* my

My is necessary to the metre, since the rime words in 585, 586 show that we must accent *memórie*.

†628. *Omit yet (+ R)*The line is metrically deficient without *yet*.†629. *Omit right ($-H_3$, $+C_x$)*

The line is metrically deficient.

652. *Omit ek (+ H_2)*A possible reading, since the plural *olde* is properly dissyllabic.†730. . . . walles ($-H_3$, $+D$)*Rest*: . . . halles(H_3 hawlys)A clear case of error, since all MSS. read *wallys* in 733.885. Nor . . . ($-Ph$, $+H_2H_4$)(J Ne; H_2 Neuyr)*Rest*: For . . .(R *lacking*)*Nor* seems a preferable reading. Note that *For* is found only in $\gamma S_1 C_x Ph$.1028. . . . causes . . . ($-H_3$)*Rest*: . . . cause . . .The Italian, *da queste cagion*, *Fil.* 6. 34, favours the plural *causes*.†1103. . . . tenthe nyght ($-Ph$)(J *nynght for nyght*)*Rest*: . . . nynpe nyght(R *seluen nyght*; A *same nyght*)The context shows that *nynpe* is correct. Criseyde had promised to be back on the tenth day (4. 1595). She left Troy soon after prime (5. 15). Only nine nights would intervene between her departure and the day of her promised return.1186. *Omit al ($-Ph$, $+R$)*1446. And þat that Ioues of his purueiaunce ($-H_3$, $+H_4$)*Rest*: *Omit that*.A nine-syllable line in $\beta\gamma$.

- 1502-1504. JGg And how ypomedon with bloody wownde
 And ek Parthonope in litel stownde
 Ben slayn and how Cappaneus the proude
Rest: And how ypomedon yn lytel stounde
 Was dreynt and ded Parthonope of wounde
 And also how Cappaneus pe proude
 (Cl *om. first* how, y *for* yn; Cp *a for* yn; H₄Cx in a
 litel; H₃ dede And dreynt; H₂ *om. of*; H₃ And
 eke how kyng Cappaneus; Ph She told eke how;
 H₁ *om. third* And; Cx *om. also*)

Statius tells us that Parthenopæus died of bloody wound (*Theb.* 11. 883), and that Hippomedon was drowned (*Theb.* 11. 504 *seq.*); so that we must either regard the JGg reading as corrupt, or assume that Chaucer wrote the JGg lines from memory, and corrected later on reference to Statius's text.

1532. JGg She ches to dye and ek to gon to helle
 (Gg *deþ for* to dye)
 Ph She chese for him to dye & eke goo to helle
Rest: She ches for hym to dye and go to helle
 Note the conflate reading of Ph.

1570. *Omit* ay

1749. JPh That in ich estat is litel hertes reste
 H₃ That in suche thinge is . . .
 Gg *lacking*.

Rest: In eche estat is . . .

Within the group of α MSS. we find agreements of H₃Ph H₃Gg, GgPh, and JGg. Though most of these cases are of a trivial character, we must record those which may have any significance.

SCATTERING AGREEMENTS OF α MSS.

154. H₃Ph + Cx . . . any creature
Rest: . . . euery creature
 (D *has the* H₃Ph *reading by later hand*; H₂H₄ euery
 oper)
 217. GgPh *omit* right.
 308. JPh + Cp swerd *repeated from* 307 *for* sheld.

†318. H_3Gg That certainly I mot nedes dye
(H_3 must nedles)

Rest: Al certeynly þat I mot nedes dye
(H_2 That certeyn þat ; H_4 Al certeyn that)

342. Gg . . . myn owene lady dere
 Ph . . . myn owne broþer dere

Rest: . . . my leue broþer dere

364. H_3Ph . . . what that they meen

Rest: . . . what dremes mene

†407. $GgPh$ Now rys vp . . .

Rest: Omit vp

†469. H_3Ph . . . owne . . .

Rest: . . . howue . . .

(H_2 ougne ; H_1 howen ; A honde ; Gg enmy)

496. $JGg + AS_1$. . . we . . .

Rest: . . . ye . . .

(H_3 he)

513. H_3Ph . . . tho doun of hors they lyght

Rest: . . . they doun of hors alighte

($ClGg$ of here hors ; Cp om. of hors ; H_2 light)

564. $H_3Gg + Cx$ omit al

617. $H_3Ph + RCx$. . . ful ofte

Rest: Omit ful

†645. $H_3Gg + Cx$ Thys songe whan he hade songen sone
(Gg hade songe also sone)

Rest: This song when he þus songen hadde soone
(Ph whan þus sungyn had he ; H_4 om. þus)

The Italian reads, *cantando così detto*, *Fil.* 5. 67.

†655. J cleere *corrected from* cheere ; Gg clere *by corrector in text, and written in margin.*

It would seem that Gg as well as J had originally written *chere*.

769. $GgPh + Cx$ omit out ; $GgPh + H_2H_4S_1$ glyde *for*
slyde.

946. H_3Gg . . . the wordes . . .

Rest: . . his wordes . .

†1023. $H_3Gg + RCx$ omit ay

1071. Ph To this y wil be trewe in myn entente
 H_3 omits line
Rest: To Diomedes algate I wol be trewe
 Ph alters the rime word in 1070.
- †1109. GgPh . . . þe walles wete
Rest: . . . the wawes wete
1167. $JH_3 + D$ But I not how *for* Not I not how
1407. $H_3Ph + A$. . . vnnethe my lyf . . .
Rest: . . . my lyf vnnepe . . .
 (Gg silf *for* lyf)
1454. $H_3Gg + S_1$. . . with hys tuskes stoute
Rest: Omit hys
1510. GgPh . . . sche tolde hym þo
Rest: . . . she told ek þo
 (D alsoo *for* ek þo; H_3 also *for* þo; A eke she told þo)
1526. GgPh . . . er to morwe
Rest: . . . yet to morwe
- †1545. JGg . . . flitted
Rest: . . . smytted
 (H_4 submitted; R sunmitted)
- Flitted* is wrongly repeated from 1544 (where Gg reads *kyttid*).
1563. GgPh omit it

The scattering character of these agreements clearly precludes any intimate connection between any two of the α MSS. Rather the evidence points to alterations and corrections in their common original.

READINGS CHARACTERISTIC OF β .

Equally colourless are the variant readings which characterize β , not one of which furnishes any ground for asserting authentic revision. The list of these readings follows:

$H_2H_4RCx(\beta)$.

9. . . . his bemes shene ($- Cx, + S_1$)
 $J(Gg)Ph$. . . cleene
 γH_3Cx . . . clere

34. . . . al wolde he not compleyne
(H₂ he wolde him nat)

Rest : . . . al wolde he nought hym pleyne
(H₃ al wolde hym not pleyne)

509. But natheles he Iaped þus & pleyde (+ H₃)
(R *lacking* ; H₂ Iaped he ; H₃ forthe for þus)

Rest : . . . seyde

Pleyde is certainly correct ; for all the MSS. have *seyde* as the rime word in 506. Whether the slip was originally due to the poet or his scribe, it remained uncorrected until after the γ original was derived.

- †632. The entencioun of his woo . . . (- Cx, + H₃)

Rest : Thencheson . . .

The Italian reads, *Chi ne fosse cagione*, *Fil.* 5. 61.

732. Omit al (- Cx, + H₃Ph)

941. And serue . . . (+ Ph)

Rest : To seruen . . .

1020. . . . light (- Cx, + Ph)

Rest : . . . bryghte

1029. H₂CxS₁ . . . purpos fully . . .

R omit purpos

H₃ omit fully

Rest : . . . fully purpos . . .

1091. . . . to loue hir . . . (- R, + D)

Rest : . . . to wowe hire . . .

1095. . . . publisshid . . . (- H₄, + Ph)

Rest : . . . punysshid . . .

(Gg ponschede)

Though at first sight *publisshid* seems a preferable reading, more careful examination of the context leads one to the conclusion that Chaucer wrote *punysshid*. Criseyde's name has been punished so widely that it is not necessary to chide the poor woman herself. I regard *publisshid* as an unauthorized correction. Note that H₄ reads *punysshid*, so that we must regard the H₂ reading as an independent alteration to the reading of RCx. H₂H₄ both invert the order, putting *is* after the participle.

1461. . . . Lordes high . . .
Rest : . . . lordes olde . . .
 (H_3 omits line)
- †1540. . . . he dryueth forth his Auenture (+ S_1 + H_3Gg)
Rest : . . . drieth . . .
- †1652. *Omit* his (+ Ph)
1702. H_4RCx + Ph . . . yit sende me . . .
 H_2 . . . so sende me yet
Rest : . . . me sende yet
1715. *Omit* now ($- H_4$, + Ph)
 (H_4 nou it is *for* it is now)

Within the group, the relationship of H_2 and H_4 is clearly attested. It will suffice to present only the more striking cases in which their readings coincide.

H_2H_4 .

50. . . . craell
Rest : . . . fel . . .
84. . . . lete me not dey
Rest : . . . doth me not to deye
 The Italian reads *non mi far morire*, *Fil.* 5. 12.
137. . . . withoute more . . .
Rest : . . . out of more . . .
- †476. The first day . . .
Rest : The ferpe day . . .
- †547. . . . knowen of Housen All
Rest : . . . crowne . . .
 (R *lacking*)
- †563. H_2 Paleis ; H_4 paleisis ; *Rest* places
- †989. And ye in Armes bene besy day be day
 Cl And ye in armes ben day by day
Rest : And 3e in armes bisy day by day
- †1321. That tunge tell can . . .
 S_1Cx . . . can telle . . .
Rest : *Omit* can.
1386. Remorde *for* Commeue.

†1572. . . . pouzt . . . (+ Ph)

Rest: . . . soughte . . .

1602. *Omit* why

Apart from this relationship of H_2H_4 , which is, however, occasionally broken, the β MSS. fall into no recognizable sub-groups. We may notice a few scattering agreements, of which only one is of any significance.

SCATTERING AGREEMENTS OF β MSS.

60. $H_2R + H_3$ soberly *for* sorwfully

89. $RCx + D$ his crede *for* pe crede

211. $H_4Cx + Gg$ walwith; R waltryth; J whieleth; Ph swellith; *Rest* weyleth

236. $H_4Cx + Ph$ omit right

265. H_2R peynes *for* sorwes

266. RS_1 peynes *for* sorwes

652. RCx ek old *for* olde ek; $\alpha + H_2$ om. ek

1082. $RCxS_1 + Ph + A$ right sorry; H_4 ful sorry; *Rest* sorry

1083. H_4CxS_1 . . . in any aduersite

Rest: *Omit* any

H_4CxS_1 emend to avoid a nine-syllable line.

1203. H_2Cx ymagin *for* Iuggen

1498. H_4R omit the Latin summary of the *Thebais*; H_2 contains an additional line, *Feruidus ypomedon timidique in gurgite mersus*, not found in the other MSS.

1545. H_4 submitted, R sunmitted, *for* smytted

1790. H_4RCx be thou *for* be

*1866. H_2R Trine vnite vs from oure cruel foone

Rest: Vs from visible and Inuysible foon

This reading of H_2R has every appearance of being genuine.

1868. H_2R take *for* make

Note that here and in 1866 H_4 and H_2 are at variance.

THE STANZAS FROM *TESEIDE*.

A problem of peculiar difficulty is offered by the fact that three MSS., H₂, H₄, and Ph, omit the three stanzas, lines 1807-1827, taken from the *Teseide* of Boccaccio (11. 1-3), which describe the flight to heaven of the soul of Troilus. In H₂ and H₄ the stanzas are omitted with no indication whatever of any lacuna. In Ph the original scribe has later supplied the passage on an inset leaf, and has at the proper place in the text indicated its position by the words, *Require ad hoc signum* ☉. Ph thus treats this passage exactly as it does the hymn to love in Book III, and the long soliloquy in Book IV.

The question immediately arises whether the omission of the passage by Ph marks it as a later addition, whether, in other words, Ph here presents an early *a* text. To this question, I fear, no satisfactory answer can be given. We must be content to state the problem in all its bearings, and at most to indicate probabilities. The evidence to be considered is of two sorts: (1) internal, derived from a study of the passage and its setting; and (2) external, derived from MS. testimony.

(1) A careful examination of the context does much to support the idea that the passage was an afterthought. The stanzas are in no way required by the context. Not only are they not implied in what precedes or follows; they are to some extent, at least, incongruous. Stanza 258 states the death of Troilus, and stanza 262, *Swich fyn hath lo pis Troylus for loue*, etc., with its repeated insistence on the thought of death as the end-all of worldly greatness and worldly happiness, comes much more appropriately immediately after the statement of Troilus's death, instead of after the very splendid account of his flight to heaven.

Of this flight to heaven there is not in the *Filostrato* the slightest hint. The ending of *Filostrato* is much simpler than that of *Troilus*, which seems to end several times over. Book VIII, as it is numbered in Moutier's edition, tells of the sorrow of the deserted Troilo, of his battles, and of his death (stanza 27). Stanza 28 corresponds to stanza 262 of Chaucer; and, the poem now ended, the poet addresses young lovers and bids them distinguish faithful ladies from the faithless. Chaucer's stanza 252 corresponds to Boccaccio's stanza 26. Then come in Chaucer five stanzas explaining the purpose of the poem, appealing to ladies not to be

angry with him, and praying that the book may be carefully transcribed and understood. Then we have Chaucer's stanza 258, which corresponds to Boccaccio's 27. Then follow the three *Teseide* stanzas. After them comes Chaucer's stanza 262, which corresponds to Boccaccio's 28. Stanzas 263-265, addressed to *yonge fresshe folkes*, correspond in a general way to Boccaccio's 29-33. Chaucer then concludes with his address to Gower and Strode, and his prayer to the Blessed Trinity; while Boccaccio addresses eight stanzas to his own lady.

Chaucer's ending is, thus, a patchwork of many colours, from which the particularly purple patch of the *Teseide* passage can be removed with no injury to the fabric. This could not be done, it may be noted, with the five stanzas 253-257. Digression though they be, they are inseparably attached to the context (see line 1800).

(2) The passage is omitted by H_2 , H_4 , and Ph. We have seen that through Books IV and V H_2 and H_4 are descended from a common original; and in this original, we are justified in inferring, the *Teseide* passage was lacking. Between H_2H_4 and Ph, however, there is in this part of the poem no connection discoverable. It is in the highest degree improbable that three stanzas should be independently omitted by the mere carelessness of two separate scribes; and there is nothing in the stanzas themselves which could possibly lead to deliberate omission. The passage must have appealed to a medieval scribe quite as strongly as it appeals to us to-day. We are driven to assume that some particular reason existed for its omission in H_2H_4 and in Ph. Since we know that the particular reason in the case of the free-choice soliloquy was that the passage was a later addition, we are naturally led to the same hypothesis here.

Our difficulty is that Ph is the only MS. of the α type in which the passage is surely omitted. In the case of Gg we cannot be certain; since the mutilation of the MS. has involved the loss of everything after line 1701. Five leaves, which contained the end of *Troilus* and the first 36 lines of the *Canterbury Tales*, have been cut out. These leaves were, however, presumably cut out because of illuminations which they contained; and, since we have no way of estimating how much space was filled by illuminations, we cannot tell whether or not there was room for the three *Teseide* stanzas. There would seem though to have been no lack of space.

The missing lines of the two poems are only enough to fill three full leaves, while five are missing. Since J contains the stanzas in due order, we must assume that they were probably included in Gg.

In the case of the free-will soliloquy, it will be remembered, H₃ and Ph omit the passage entirely, while J and Gg have the last stanza. There was further evidence in Book IV that H₃ and Ph present the text in a slightly earlier state than do JGg. We should, then, regard the Ph text as representing the earliest unrevised version, provided only that it had the support of H₃. But the passage is found regularly in H₃.

The association of H₃ with the α MSS. is in Book V, and particularly in the latter part of the book, far from consistent. It deserts in a number of the group readings; in several instances it agrees with β as against $\alpha\gamma$; and, beginning at line 1021, it shares in eight γ readings. Among these γ readings, one falls within the *Teseide* passage. H₃ agrees with γS_1 and the inset leaf of Ph in reading *seuenth spere*, where the Italian supports JRCx in reading *eight*. This fact is of peculiar significance, for it justifies us in believing either that the *Teseide* passage was added later from a γ source somewhere in the tradition of H₃, as we see it added before our eyes in Ph; or that in the latter part of the book H₃ has become again a hybrid MS. whose evidence can no longer be trusted in a matter of this kind. In either of these conclusions we find support for the hypothesis that Ph is presenting a primitive α state of text.

But if the omission of the *Teseide* stanzas in Ph is to be so explained, what is to be said of their omission by H₂H₄, which we have shown to be of the β group? It is here that we must recognize our lack of any satisfactory answer. We can merely point to the fact that the H₂H₄ parent is of a peculiarly composite character. In Book I it is definitely an α MS.; in Book II it wavers between α and β ; in III, though overwhelmingly β in character, it has the shifted stanzas 190 and 191 twice over, once in the $\alpha\gamma$ position and again in the β position; in Book IV H₄ (and probably the H₂H₄ parent) agrees with α in omitting the free-choice soliloquy. Perhaps the *Teseide* passage, if added later, was written on a loose sheet, which the H₂H₄ scribe failed to notice, or to find.

We may conclude by saying that, in the absence of certain

evidence, the probabilities both external and internal favour the hypothesis that the *Teseide* passage was not present in Chaucer's earliest draft of the poem.

CHAPTER VII

CONCLUSION

THE length of the poem and the composite character of some of the MSS. have made it more convenient to treat each of the five books as though it were an independent unit. For each of the books the evidence has been presented, and certain tentative conclusions have been drawn. Obviously, however, the books do not in fact constitute independent units, but indissoluble parts of a larger unit; so that no explanation of the phenomena of one book can be valid which does not take into account all the other books as well. It is now time to resume in a single discussion the discussions of the separate books, and to seek an explanation which shall account for the varied phenomena of the whole, which shall show so far as may be through what vicissitudes the text has passed, and how in consequence we shall evaluate and use the several MSS. which have survived.

THE REVISION OF THE POEM.

No one, I trust, will have failed to recognize that the variations of reading which distinguish the MSS. of the α type from those of the β type are of a sort which can proceed only from deliberate and conscious revision. To make this clear beyond all doubt, one has but to review these variations in their entirety, and summarize the evidence which has been presented piecemeal in the preceding chapters.

In Book I α , represented by H_2PhH_4 , contains a stanza, number 128 in the modern editions, which is obviously genuine, but which is not necessary to the sense.¹ This stanza is omitted by $\beta\gamma$. There are, moreover, nearly a hundred variations of reading which

¹ See above, pp. 34, 35.

differentiate α from $\beta\gamma$, of which a large number are of such a sort that each reading is not only possible, but entirely in accord with Chaucer's metrical and linguistic usage. Of the variant readings which characterize α , more than 63 per cent. are found in the first 300 lines, and more than 77 per cent. in the first 500 lines.

In Book II the distinction between α and β is not so clearly drawn. There are very few striking variations, except in the portion of the book beginning with line 701 and ending with 1113. Here we find α , represented by H_2PhGgH_5 , now agreeing with γH_3CxS_1 against JRH_4 , and now with JRH_4 against γH_3CxS_1 . For this state of things no satisfactory explanation can be given. An attempt at explanation will be found on pp. 126-128.

In Book III we have a very large number of cases of striking variation. In some, α varies as against $\beta\gamma$; in a much greater number of cases, γ is associated with α ; and the variation is of $\alpha\gamma$ against β . All but a very few of these variations occur after line 400, from which point they extend to the end of the book. The α type of text is represented by H_2PhGgH_5 ; the β by JH_4RCx with the irregular adherence of S_1 and H_3 . The most significant case of revision in Book III concerns the position of the two stanzas numbered 190 and 191 in Skeat's edition. In $\alpha\gamma$ they immediately follow line 1323; in β they are moved down to a position immediately preceding line 1415, and lines 1323, 1415, and the first line of the shifted passage are altered to suit the new relations.¹ There is also evidence that Troilus's song to love, lines 1744-1771, omitted by H_2Ph , was not present in Chaucer's earliest draft of the poem.²

In Book IV the series of striking variations continues up to about line 1450. In the great majority of cases γ agrees with β in presenting the revised reading; though in other instances $\alpha\gamma$ are arrayed against β . Between lines 1300 and 1442, H_3 , which has become an α MS., seems to present alone the earliest form of text.³ The most important revision concerns the long soliloquy on God's foreknowledge and man's freedom of choice, lines 953-1085. This passage was not even planned for in Chaucer's earliest draft of the poem. It is omitted by α and also by H_4 . Before two of the α MSS., however, Gg and J, were derived, the last stanza of the passage, lines 1079-1085, had been added in the common

¹ See above, pp. 157, 158.

² See above, pp. 155-157.

³ See above, pp. 214-216.

original.¹ In α stanza 108, according to Skeat's numbering, follows line 735; in $\beta\gamma$ it comes just before 757, and the first line of the stanza and line 757 are altered to suit the new relations.²

In Book V the striking variations in reading altogether disappear. There are at most two or three lines which point towards deliberate revision. The only significant case of revision has to do with the passage at the end of the book, lines 1807–1827, taken from the *Teseide*, which describes the flight to heaven of Troilus's soul. These stanzas, which are omitted by Ph and by H_2H_4 , seem to be an afterthought. They are, however, present in J; and were probably present in the mutilated Gg—MSS. which derive from the second stage of α .³

That in the case of such an added passage as the free-choice soliloquy, or the *Teseide* stanzas, we have to do with Chaucer's own revision of his work, no one, I think, will doubt. If this is admitted, it follows that the existing MSS. represent the text in more than one authentic recension. When, therefore, we find that the same MSS. which omit the free-choice soliloquy also shift stanza 108 of the fourth book, and revise two lines in order to fit it to its new context, there is strong ground for the presumption that this unmistakably deliberate and conscious variation is also due to the poet's own revision. If this is true for stanza 108 of Book IV, it cannot be denied that Chaucer's own hand is probably at work in the shifting of stanzas 190 and 191 of Book III, and the even more elaborate readjustment of phrasing which accompanies the shift. Every variation which is admitted to be a case of the author's revision increases the presumption that other variations are to be similarly explained.

That some, at least, of the variant readings which distinguish α and β are due to deliberate revision by some one or other is plain from the thoroughgoing character of the changes, which occasionally involve even the rime. It cannot be argued that these revisions may be merely successful attempts of some editor to repair scribal corruptions due to mere carelessness; for, if this were the case, we should expect that they would be distributed with reasonable regularity throughout the poem. But this is not the case. The striking instances of text-variation are concentrated in certain areas of the poem; namely, I. 1–300, II. 701–1113, and III.

¹ See above, pp. 216–221.

² See above, pp. 221, 222.

³ See above, pp. 245–248.

400–IV. 1450. If the variations were due in the first instance to accident, this could not have happened.

That this deliberate reviser was the poet himself cannot, perhaps, be absolutely proved; but the presumption is so strong as to remove any reasonable doubt. He was certainly a poet, and a poet who understood perfectly the principles of Chaucer's metre and grammar, who knew how to catch what we recognize as the poet's characteristic manner. If he was not Chaucer, it is hard to see what motive could have led him to take so much trouble, and hard also to explain how he succeeded in giving his revision such wide currency. That the α text was the original version, and hence necessarily by Chaucer, we know from the fact that it stands so much closer to the Italian than does β . We cannot suppose that Chaucer, or any one else, would so revise as to bring the text nearer to the *Filostrato*; since there is no attempt at, or pretence of, literalness of translation. If the β text is due to some one other than Chaucer, we should have to admit that only three MSS. have preserved the authentic text in Book I, and only four in Book IV. That would mean that all of the remaining MSS. are derived from a copy of the poem which had undergone extensive scribal editing. In so long a poem it would be very strange if this scribal editor was never guilty of bungling Chaucer's meaning. Such bungling, however, does not exist. Unless the omission of stanza 128 of Book I be regarded as an error—and I have shown reasons for refusing to put this interpretation upon it—there is no instance where $\beta\gamma$ can be proved to be in error as against a correct reading in α .

THE CHARACTER OF γ .

In sharp contrast to the variations which distinguish α and β are those which characterize γ . These are (1) the omission of stanza 102 of Book IV, a stanza necessary to the sense;¹ (2) a mistake as to the place at which Book IV begins, by which Proem IV is treated as though it were part of Book III;² and (3) a long list of variant readings, of which a considerable proportion are clear cases of error, others are obviously inferior, and the rest, with very few exceptions, are of the trivial sort which normally originate with a scribe. The errors of γ obviously

¹ See above, p. 183.

² See above, pp. 182, 183.

cannot be attributed to Chaucer. It follows, then, that all the MSS. of this group are descended from a common ancestor which has not received Chaucer's correction and sanction. Were we inclined to regard any reading peculiar to γ as authentic, we should have to recognize that we were accepting it on the single authority of one MS., the γ parent. Almost without exception, the γ readings, unless supported by other MSS. outside the group, are of a sort which precludes any thought of authentic revision; for the changes involved are not beyond the reach of an ordinarily intelligent scribe. That they have their origin in accident rather than in deliberate intention is shown also by the fact that they are distributed evenly over the five books of the poem, in striking contrast to the limited areas into which are concentrated the variations which distinguish α from β .

The γ original presents a state of the text, as regards revision, midway between α and β . In Books I and IV it gives usually the revised, or β readings; in Book II it seems to give revised readings, though the evidence is not clear; in Book III it has in general unrevised, or α readings.

The assumption of critics hitherto has been that γ presents a third and final state of revision, later than α and β ; to quote from the Globe edition, "the γ type represents a later copy, either carelessly corrected by the author, or collated by some hand after Chaucer's death."¹ For this conception of γ I can see no justification. As was said a moment ago, there is no ground for assuming that the author had any hand in it whatever. Could we assume that Chaucer was in any way responsible, the "version" could not be later than β . For, if so, we should have to suppose that in Book III, and only there, Chaucer deliberately reverted to the unrevised text. For such a procedure no plausible reason exists. If, on the other hand, γ is due to the collation of "some hand after Chaucer's death," the procedure of this editor must have been to collate an α MS. and a β MS., and to choose now the reading of α and now that of β . Such a supposition would serve well to explain the not infrequent appearance in γ of a conflate reading which combines elements both of α and β . But against this hypothesis there is a grave objection. If this early editor had before him a text of α and a text of β , we should expect that in his eclectic text the proportion of α readings to

¹ p. xli.

β readings would be very nearly constant in each of the books where revision has played a large part. But this is not the case. In Book I our hypothetical editor has adopted no α readings at all; while in Book III he has taken most of them. In Book IV again he takes nearly all the β readings. Such a procedure would be incomprehensible. We are compelled to assume that the scribe of the γ original did not have access to the revised version of Book III.

Is γ , then, like certain individual MSS. among those that have survived to us, notably H_2 , of composite character? If so, it must be regarded as having also undergone a very extensive process of contamination. For, though in Book I it is pretty consistently of the β type, in Book III its text is a mixture of α and β . It is much simpler, and more in accord with all the facts, to explain its relation to α and β in another way. Plainly its position is between α and β . If it has in some passages the revised reading and in others the unrevised, we must assume that it derives from Chaucer's original at a time when some of the revisions had been made and others had not been made. If γ is to be regarded as a separate "version" or "edition," it is the second and not the third. The long list of revision readings in Book III, and extending into the opening stanzas of Book IV, found in JH_4RCx but not in γ , and the scattered instances of the same sort found in the other books, represent the latest revision which the poem has undergone.

If, then, it is clearly recognized that the variations of γ are, unless otherwise supported, never to be regarded as authentic, the whole problem of revision is a good deal simplified. We have but one series of authentic revisions, those which distinguish β from α . The symbol γ stands, therefore, for a lost MS., the parent of a group of surviving MSS., and not, like α and β , for a state of the text.

GENEALOGICAL RELATIONS WITHIN THE MAIN GROUPS.

It is important that the reader clearly recognize that we have to do with two sorts of relationship among the MSS. Since the text of *Troilus* exists in more than one redaction, two or more MSS. may be associated by the fact that they present the text at the same stage of revision. Thus in Book III J , H_4 , R , and Cx are associated as members of the β group, as presenting the revised or β readings; in Book IV J , Gg , Ph , and H_3 are similarly

associated as constituents of the α group. Such association does not necessarily imply genealogical relationship; for the individual α MSS. may be derived along independent lines of descent from Chaucer's own autograph in its first form, and the β MSS. independently from the autograph of his revised version. Genealogical relationship means common descent from an original other than Chaucer's autograph, and is proved by the participation of two or more MSS. in a series of manifest errors, so striking, or so frequent, that the agreement cannot be due to mere coincidence. Two or more MSS. so related will necessarily represent the same stage of text.

Of this genealogical character is the relationship existing between H_2^1 and Ph, between H_2^3 and H_4 , and between Gg and H_5 ; though the evidence of relationship, particularly in the case of Gg and H_5 , is occasionally confused by contamination. As soon as this relationship is established, two MSS., such as H_2^1 and Ph, weigh with the critic as a single MS., their common ancestor. Of this genealogical sort also is the relationship existing among the γ MSS.—Cl, Cp, H_1 , AD, S_2 Dig, and sometimes S_1 and H_3 . They are descended from a common ancestor, neither Chaucer's autograph nor revised by Chaucer, a MS. which never passed under Chaucer's eye; and their combined testimony must weigh with the critic only as that of one MS., their lost original. It is of the utmost importance that this fact be clearly recognized. Since the γ group includes half of all the surviving MSS., and numbers among its members MSS. like Cl and Cp, beautifully executed and exceptionally free from errors of their own, there is danger lest it tyrannize over the critic's judgment, as it did in very fact over the judgment of Professor Skeat.

In contrast to the genealogical group, γ , we have the group of α MSS., which are associated primarily by the fact that they present the earliest, unrevised text of the poem. It is important to ask whether these α MSS. are also related genealogically. Are they, perhaps, all descended from some one MS. of the unrevised text, not itself Chaucer's autograph? To establish such a relationship, one must find that the α MSS. not only differ from those outside the group by presenting a different series of authentic readings, but that they also agree as against the rest in presenting readings which are manifestly corrupt. In Book I, where α is represented by H_2 Ph and H_4 , there are a number of cases of

manifest error; in Book II $H_2PhGgH_5[H_4]$, and in Book III H_2PhGgH_5 , present a few readings that are manifestly corrupt; in Book IV $JGgPhH_3$ present no clear cases of error; in Book V of the very few α readings four seem to be erroneous. But one conclusion is possible. The α MSS. must be descended from a MS. not Chaucer's autograph, but a MS., none the less, which was singularly free from scribal corruptions, much freer for example than was the γ original. It will best suit all the probabilities if one supposes that this MS. was made by a professional scribe directly from Chaucer's autograph, that it was corrected by the poet, and that it remained in his possession as an archetype from which other copies could be made.

In the case of the β MSS., the evidence for any genealogical relationship is not clear. In the whole poem I have found but a half dozen cases in which all the β MSS. agree as against the rest in a reading which is manifestly corrupt; and of these cases only three are striking. There is a clear case of scribal repetition in 3. 608. In 3. 1685 a word in the β original was certainly illegible. In 3. 1600 has been wrongly substituted some form of the name *Cocytus* for the *Phlegethon* of $\alpha\gamma$. We find repeatedly instances where two or more β MSS. agree in a reading certainly or probably corrupt; but these agreements are so varied and contradictory that, save between Gg and H_5 and between H_2^3 and H_4 , no closer relationship within the group can be established. Of these apparent relationships, the most striking is that of J and GgH_5 in the parts of the poem where GgH_5 are β MSS.; but J frequently agrees with R , and R with H_4 or Cx , and H_3 in its β readings shows kinship now with Cx and now with H_4 . No one of these contradictory relationships is attested by evidence of the unequivocal sort on which is based the relationship of H_2 and Ph , of Gg and H_5 , of S_2 and Dig , or of the γ MSS. as a group. The independent derivation of R is indicated by the fact that R , and R alone, omits the proems to Books II, III, and IV. Even stronger is the evidence furnished by the fact that R contains a stanza, clearly authentic, found in no other MS. (For a discussion of these idiosyncrasies of R , see above, pp. 24–26.) We are driven to assume that the several β units are derived along independent lines of descent from a common original in which had been made a great many alterations and corrections. This β original, then, would in many lines offer

more than a single reading to the eye of a copyist, and in other lines would present a confusing, if not illegible, text. Moreover, we repeatedly find an individual β MS. reverting to an unrevised α reading, or giving a conflation of the revised and the unrevised. Most striking is the fact that H_4 has the shifted stanzas of Book III twice over, once in the α position, and again in the β position. But one hypothesis will meet all the facts. The β original must have been an α MS., most conscientiously corrected of its scribal errors, and revised and altered to give β readings.

THE METHOD OF REVISION.

The whole process of revision can best be explained on some such hypothesis as the following :

When Chaucer had finished the composition of his poem, he turned over the rough draft to a professional scribe, who was commissioned to make a fair copy of it, precisely as a modern author may have his rough draft typed by a professional stenographer, that he may have a clean and legible copy for the printer. This copy, made by a scribe, would be sure to incorporate a good many errors. If the rough draft had been much worked over, it must frequently have presented to the scribe a confused and puzzling text, of which he made what he could. If this scribe was the "Adam scriveyn" of Chaucer's well-known stanza, we have Chaucer's own word for it that in "negligence and rape" he was true to the reputation of his craft. His copy, then, we may safely assume to have been in many passages corrupt, and to have needed the correcting hand of Chaucer, with much "rubbing and scraping." After it had been so corrected by the poet, copies were made from it for "publication." These copies were the ancestors of the MSS. of the α type, *i. e.*, H_3 , H_2Ph , GgH_5 , H_4 , in such parts as they are of the α character. These MSS., then, are related by their descent from a copy of the poem made by a careless scribe, but corrected by the poet. The cases of manifest error shared by all the α MSS. are to be regarded as due to scribal error which has escaped the author-corrector's eye. An error found in two or more α MSS. may, in any case, be due to the fact that they were derived from the common original before this particular error was corrected, or that their ancestors failed to understand an indicated correction.

This archetype MS., as we may call it, remained in Chaucer's

possession as his own "official" copy, from which, perhaps, he read aloud to friends as we see him doing in the illuminated frontispiece of the Corpus MS., from which, as demand arose, new copies were made by "Adam," or some less negligent and rapacious scribe. As time went on, this archetype MS. would tend to free itself from such errors as had in the first instance escaped correction. But Chaucer was not content to correct scribal blunders. He was continually revising and rearranging his own work, and his method of recording such revisions would most naturally be that of writing the new line or phrase in the margin, or between the lines, of his own copy. With this double process of progressive revision and correction, the pages of the archetype MS. must have become at places a rather bewildering entanglement of alterations.

Almost immediately this revision must have begun. In Book IV there is a series of passages in which the most primitive readings are preserved only by H_3 . Next in point of time comes the H_2Ph ancestor, which, like H_3 , knows nothing of the free-choice soliloquy of Book IV. Before J and Gg were derived, the soliloquy had been planned; but only its concluding stanza of transition had been written, though a note warned the scribe that "here failleth thing that is not yet made." Next, after all the α MSS. had been derived, were made the many and elaborate revisions found in Book I and Book IV, and some of those found between lines 701 and 1113 of Book II. From the text in this state, with scribal errors eliminated and extensive revisions in the first and fourth books, was derived the original of γ . Finally, extensive revisions were made in the third book, of which the most striking is the shift in position of stanzas 190 and 191; and individual passages were revised in the fourth book. From the archetype MS., in its final state of revision, were derived last of all the MSS. belonging to the group which we have called β . These β MSS. (in Book III they are J, H_4 , R, Cx) are, therefore, related to each other only in that they are derived from Chaucer's archetype in its latest stage of revision. The puzzling cross-relations which bind together now this set of β MSS., now that, may in part be due to mere accidental coincidence, or to deliberate contamination; many of them, however, must be traced to the confusion due to the repeated correction and revision of the archetype.

If the β MSS. represent the text in its revised form, the question immediately arises whether or not we can discover among these MSS. such grades of revision as are discernible in the case of the α MSS. Can one say that this MS. or that represents the β text in a more or less advanced state of revision? No such conclusion is justified by the evidence. Between lines 701 and 1113 of Book II there are a number of striking instances in which Cx agrees with $\gamma S_1 H_3$ as against JRH_4 on the one hand, and $H_2 PhGgH_5$ on the other. For a full discussion of this puzzling passage the reader is referred to pp. 126–128 above. If the explanation there suggested is indeed correct, we must regard Cx and H_3 , in so far as the latter is a β MS., as derived earlier than JRH_4 ; but this explanation is hardly more than a surmise, and will not bear the superimposed weight of new deductions. The explanation ventured on p. 25 for the omission by R of the proems to Books II, III, and IV would place its derivation latest of all the surviving MSS.; but again the explanation is only conjecture. Apart from these considerations, nothing marks any one of the β MSS. as earlier than the rest. Each of them reverts in this line or that to the unrevised reading, or shows a conflation of the revised and the unrevised; but no one of them does this more than the rest. It best agrees with all the established facts to regard all of the β MSS. as derived after the authentic revision had ceased.

Precisely the processes which went on in Chaucer's workroom we cannot hope to reconstruct with any certainty of detail. Chaucer has himself drawn the curtain for a moment and let us see him "ofte a daye" renewing the work of scribe Adam, correcting with much rubbing and scraping the results of Adam's negligence and rape. He has told us specifically that one of the works which called for his correction was *Troilus*. So much we have on certain evidence; the rest must be inferred from the readings of the existing MSS., and the inference can seldom be free from ambiguity. One cannot establish certainly the truth of the hypothesis just given; but one can assert with a high degree of probability that, if not precisely the processes assumed, something equivalent to them must have taken place. One can establish, so to speak, the "typical" truth of the supposition. For the hypothesis as I have stated it may be urged, first, that it assumes a perfectly natural and reasonable action, in no way repugnant to general

probability nor to such facts as we know about the conditions of literary work in the later middle ages;¹ and, second, that better than any other hypothesis it explains the complicated phenomena presented by the existing MSS.

The essential point of the hypothesis is that all the surviving MS. units—H₂Ph, GgH₅, γ , J, R, etc.—are, save for incidental contamination, independently derived from an archetype MS. not written by Chaucer's hand, but progressively corrected and revised by him. It means that the original of the β MSS. is *materially, physically*, identical with the original from which the α MSS. and the γ original were derived, despite the fact that its textual character has been so changed by progressive revisions, and its pages confused by repeated alterations.

The existence of this archetype will explain—and it is the only simple explanation I can find—the following series of facts, the truth of which has repeatedly been shown in the preceding chapters:

(1) The confusing and apparently contradictory cross-relationships found in Book V and in the greater part of Book II, *i.e.* in this line an agreement between H₂Ph and γ , in the next between H₂Ph and Cx or R, or between γ and J, etc. These agreements, usually in trivial variations, are found also in the other books, where, however, our attention is diverted from them by the striking cases of variation due to revision. Such cross-agreements are readily understood on the assumption of a common original, or archetype, which had been subjected to a thorough-going correction. Beneath or beside the correction, the corrupt reading would still be legible, and a scribe might easily fail to incorporate the correction.

(2) The not infrequent instances in which an α reading is found in one of the β MSS., where the other β MSS. have a revised reading. This phenomenon can be easily explained if the original of the β MSS. had both the unrevised and the revised reading in its text. It would mean that one scribe, either carelessly or capriciously, took the cancelled reading instead of the substituted revision.

(3) The occurrence in the γ original, and in individual β MSS. of conflate readings. These are to be explained on the theory

¹ See an article by the present writer on "Publication before Printing," *Publications of the Modern Language Association of America*, 28. 417-431.

that an indicated revision was only partly understood by the scribe, who incorporated part of the revised reading and part of the unrevised. Of this phenomenon the most striking instance is the repetition in H_4 of the two shifted stanzas of Book III.

(4) The position of γ midway between α and β , sharing in some but not all of the revised readings. This is to be explained on the theory that the revisions had only partially been made at the time the γ original was derived.

(5) The presence in the α original of a number of obvious errors, and the almost total lack of manifest errors in the β original. Side by side with the revision went a weeding out of scribal errors.

If some such hypothesis is not accepted, these phenomena can be explained only by supposing a very far-reaching process of contamination, so involved in its complications as to defy analysis. There is nothing inherently improbable about contamination except the trouble which some scribal editor must be assumed to have taken. Contamination undoubtedly plays its part in the textual tradition of *Troilus*; we can see it actually at work under our eyes in the existing MSS., where missing lines have been supplied later from a divergent source. But to explain the phenomena before us on the hypothesis of contamination, we must assume a more deliberate process, a sort of eclectic editing with the acceptance of one reading from this MS. and another from that. Had such a process of editing taken place, we should expect that the contamination would show itself particularly in the case of striking divergences. But this is not the case. It is rather in the trivial variations of reading that the cross-relationships exist. When the variation involves a whole line or more, the groups generally are distinct; all the α MSS. present α readings, and so with β . On any theory of contamination this is indeed hard to explain. On the assumption of a common archetype the explanation is simple. An alteration involving a whole line is less likely to escape the eye of a copyist than is one involving a single word or a few letters.

THE NUMBER OF THE VERSIONS.

The question has been raised, in the introduction to the Globe edition, and in Professor Tatlock's *Development and Chronology of*

Chaucer's Works,¹ whether we have two versions of the poem or three. If the theory I have advanced be accepted, this question will be approached from a different point of view. If the revision was progressive and cumulative, clearly each separate MS. unit may represent a new version. Within the limits of the α group three distinct stages are discernible. Though the readings characteristic of γ are, unless otherwise supported, to be regarded as not authentic, in one sense γ may be thought of as constituting a version, inasmuch as it presents the text at a time when the principal revision of Book III had not yet been made. The final version, which includes the sum of all the revisions, is given by the MSS. of the β group. In this sense one might speak of at least five versions. On the other hand, if one looks at an individual line, it is in only a very few cases that one finds more than two authentic versions. It will best serve the needs of an editor if he recognizes two versions: the unrevised α version, in which several minor stages are discoverable, and the revised β version. In γ he will recognize merely an intermediate stage between the two. Instances in which α , γ , and β present each a different reading are rare. In such cases the γ reading is usually corrupt or, what amounts to the same thing, due to an imperfect understanding of an indicated correction. These cases have all been discussed in the preceding chapters. The more noteworthy are: 1. 259; 2. 703; 2. 738; 2. 1005; 2. 1083; 3. 459; 3. 558; 3. 1153; 3. 1595; 4. 570. Of these cases the strongest is 2. 738.

CHAUCER'S MOTIVE FOR REVISION.

What was Chaucer's motive in this extensive revision of his text one cannot say with any certainty. The addition of the soliloquy on free-choice, and of the stanzas from *Teseide* which follow the soul of Troilus in its flight to heaven, enhance very appreciably the serious and philosophic tone with which Chaucer has overcast his story. Presumably that was the effect he desired to attain. But in the revision of individual lines and stanzas no consistent tendency is discoverable. These revisions have no bearing whatever on plot, character, or interpretation. They are changes in words rather than in ideas. In four passages—1. 9;

¹ Professor Tatlock's discussion of the problem is avowedly based on insufficient data, and is throughout merely tentative. It rests on so many and such serious misconceptions that it is best to disregard it.

1. 164; 4. 300; 4. 644—the revision is in the direction of heightening the classical colouring of the story. On the other hand, in 2. 115 the revision is in the other direction. Had Chaucer seriously set himself to the task of substituting pagan for Christian, he would hardly have stopped with the revision of four lines. His motive seems to have been merely the artist's desire to improve his artistry. Often we can see, or imagine that we see, the reason which compels this change or that. Sometimes the revision secures greater definiteness. Examples are: 1. 88; 1. 169; 1. 176; 1. 208, 209; 2. 897; 2. 908; 2. 1093; 3. 503; 3. 677; 3. 1327; 4. 706; 4. 1251; 4. 1290. Sometimes it removes an awkward phrase due to too close a translation of the Italian, as in 1. 83; 1. 85; 1. 111; 4. 37; 4. 246, 247. Often the revised reading is better suited to its context. Examples of this are: 1. 45; 1. 345; 1. 640; 1. 773; 2. 734, 735; 3. 442; 3. 490; 3. 568; 3. 598; 3. 668; 3. 882; 3. 1595; 4. 581; 4. 762, 763; 4. 891. In many other cases the change seems to be merely capricious. The shifting of stanzas 190 and 191 of Book III represents merely a change in judgment as to the best place to introduce into the narrative the two stanzas of reflection. Equally capricious is the shifting of stanza 108 of Book IV.

I have found nothing whatever in the revisions to suggest at what date they were made.¹ The line, "Right as our firste lettre is now an A," 1. 171, which seems to refer to Richard's marriage to Anne of Bohemia, is already present in *a*.

RECONSTITUTION OF THE TEXT.

If, then, it is admitted that the surviving MSS. derive not from a single and constant original, but from an original which was undergoing a progressive series of alterations and corrections at the hands of the poet himself, the task of the textual critic is the reconstitution not of a single authentic text, but of a text in more than one authentic recension. Since the revision was not done at one time, the number of these recensions is from one point of view more than two; but, as we have seen, the final result is that of a single recension. We shall ask of the critic, therefore, that he

¹ Professor Tatlock's tentative suggestion (*Development and Chronology*, p. 15) that the substitution of *shame* for *rape* in 4. 596 has to do with the Cecilia Chaumpaigne episode seems to me quite fanciful.

constitute the text at its two extremes of revision, in its α form as it was first published, and in its β form with all authentic revisions incorporated. With the relations of the MSS. determined in all essential points, the task will not, save in a part of Book II, offer insuperable difficulties.

THE TEXT OF α .

There is but one MS. which represents the α text consistently throughout the whole of the poem. This is Ph. It is a MS. in which some corrections have been made, and missing lines supplied, from a γ source; but these corrections, though made by the original scribe, are always easily recognizable by difference in ink or by a more cramped writing. Apart from these contaminations, made under our very eyes as it were, and hence not misleading to the critic, there is very little evidence of any deliberate "editing." But unluckily the text of Ph is exceedingly corrupt. It clearly stands at the end of a series of careless transcribing. There is hardly a stanza which does not contain a serious corruption, not to mention a total ignorance of the syllabic value of unaccented final e . For nearly two-thirds of the poem the readings of Ph can be checked by those of H_2 ; but this aid is not very satisfactory. The first hand of H_2 , which has written most of the α portion of the MS., is the same as that of Ph; so that what we have are two copies made by the same scribe, and a very careless one he was, from the same corrupt original. When we have reconstituted the common original of H_2^1 and Ph, we have a text somewhat better than that of H_2 or of Ph, but one, none the less, which bristles with manifest errors. Fortunately we possess in nearly every part of the poem some other authority for α , by means of which the readings of H_2 Ph can be checked.

In Book I α is represented by H_2 Ph and H_4 . No reading can be regarded as a genuine α reading unless it has the support of these two authorities. We should be justified in regarding as genuine the reading of H_2 Ph or of H_4 alone, only if it also received the support of one or more β MSS. in a variant reading of a sort so striking that the agreement could not be regarded as fortuitous, or if it received unequivocal support from the Italian source. But no case exists in which one is at all tempted to regard a reading of H_2 Ph or of H_4 , not found in the other, as genuine. Conversely,

we must accept as belonging to the α original any reading in which H_2Ph and H_4 agree, even though the reading seems to be, or actually is, manifestly corrupt. Such a reading could be rejected only on the ground that the agreement of H_2Ph and H_4 was fortuitous. There are in Book I a number of readings in which H_2PhH_4 are corrupt; but it must be remembered that the α original is not Chaucer's autograph, but a copy of this autograph made by some "Adam scribeyn." The manifest errors of H_2PhH_4 are not more numerous than we should expect in such a copy, even after it had received a rather careful examination by the author.

In Book II, α gains the adherence of GgH_5 . This adherence begins near the beginning of the book—the first striking instance is in line 64—and continues to about line 1200. (From about 1200 to the end of the book, GgH_5 present β readings closely akin to those of J.) Throughout the book, H_4 , which in Book III and thereafter is a β MS., presents a mixed text, agreeing now with H_2PhGgH_5 , now with JR. As the book advances, the proportion of β readings increases. We shall accept as authentic α readings those that are found in $H_2PhGgH_5H_4$. It is not easy to say what attitude should be adopted towards readings found in H_2PhGgH_5 not supported by H_4 and in H_2PhH_4 not supported by GgH_5 . Of the latter the clearest cases are found in the first 57 lines, before GgH_5 join the α group. After that point, the H_2PhH_4 readings are no more impressive than are the cases of agreement between H_2Ph and Cx, or H_2Ph and R. All the evidence goes to show that the common original was greatly confused. It would seem that this part of the poem had been elaborately revised before any of the existing MSS., even H_2Ph , had been derived, and that to the confusion in the common original are due the puzzling cross-relations. It must, I think, be frankly recognized that for the first 700 lines of Book II no satisfactory reconstruction of α is possible. Virtually all of the striking cases of variant readings are found between lines 701 and 1113. Here we can safely constitute α on the basis of H_2PhGgH_5 . With these MSS. are associated sometimes γH_3CxS_1 , sometimes JRH_4 . An attempt at explaining this eccentricity of JRH_4 has been made in an earlier chapter (see pp. 126–128); it need not here concern us, since in any case the reading found in H_2PhGgH_5 must on the basis of all the evidence be regarded as the earlier unrevised reading. After line 1200

again, when GgH_5 revert to their β allegiance, the reconstruction of α becomes exceedingly difficult. A possible procedure here, and in the earlier part of the poem, before line 700, might be to regard as an α reading any reading of H_2Ph which has the support of two other MS. units. Since such an agreement of three units can hardly be fortuitous, the reading so supported must at least have been present as an alternative reading in the common original. However, we can have no assurance that the reading is authentically Chaucer's. I must repeat that the complete and satisfactory reconstitution of α in Book II is not possible.

In Book III we find for the first 400 lines a continuation of the conditions found in the last 500 lines of Book II, with very few striking variations of reading. In line 269 a striking α reading is given by $H_2Ph + \gamma R$, in 282 by $H_2Ph + JH_4RCx$, and in 293 by $H_2Ph + GgH_5\gamma H_3S_1$. From about line 400, however, the confusion clears up. GgH_5 become definitely α in their readings; and there begins a long list of striking variations, in the great majority of which γ retains the α reading. From line 400, then, we shall regard as an authentic α reading any reading found in H_2PhGgH_5 . In most cases we shall have also the testimony of γ . By their omission of Troilus's hymn to love, lines 1744-1771, H_2Ph are indicated as of earlier derivation than GgH_5 .

In Book IV α loses the adherence of H_2 after line 196, where the third hand of this MS. begins; so that from this point on the readings of the H_2Ph original must be inferred from Ph alone. But with line 326, H_3 becomes an α MS.; and with line 438, J also joins the α group. With line 686, H_5 ends; so that from here on the readings of the GgH_5 parent must be inferred from Gg . Looking at the book as a whole, we find that for lines 1-112, where Gg is missing, α is represented by H_2PhH_5 , for 113-196 by H_2PhGgH_5 , for 197-325 by GgH_5Ph , for 326-437 by GgH_5PhH_3 , for 438-686 by $JGgH_5PhH_3$, and from 687 to the end by $JGgPhH_3$. For the greater part of the book, then, α has the testimony of four independent MSS. In their treatment of the free-choice soliloquy, PhH_3 represent an earlier stage than JGg ; and between 1300 and 1442 H_3 has a series of unique readings, apparently authentic, which seem to represent a stage of the text earlier than that of $JGgPh$, a stage which might be described as pre- α . The distinctive α readings in Book IV are very numerous until after line 1300, when they become very infrequent.

In the great majority of these cases, though not in all, γ shows β readings.

In Book V α continues to be represented by JGgPhH₃; but the distinctive α readings are very few in number, and are not striking. The only significant instances are in line 476, in 1502–1504, and in the omission by Ph of the *Teseide* passage at the end of the book. In lines 1502–1504, JGg alone present the α reading. From line 1021, H₃ takes on a mixed character, sharing in about half the γ readings. It is, therefore, an uncertain witness to α . Ph also frequently deserts the α reading, particularly in the latter half of the book. Throughout Book V we find very few striking variants. Instead we have, as in most of Book II, trivial variations and puzzling cross-relations of the MSS., which point to a confusion in the common original of all the MSS.

Save for part of Book II, then, we have always the witness of at least two independent MSS. by which to determine the reading of α .¹ Despite the shifting character of its attestation, the unity and continuity of the α text throughout the poem cannot be doubted. It is preserved by the steady and virtually unbroken adherence of the H₂Ph parent, and after Book II by that of Gg(H₅). Throughout the poem, the α text is indicated as the earlier version by its closer following of the Italian.

Of the α MSS., unfortunately, all but J are individually full of corrupt readings, and of metrical perversions due to scribal ignorance of Chaucer's grammatical forms. In these ways J is very satisfactory; so that we must regret that J has not preserved the α text throughout the poem. For Books I and II, H₂Ph must serve as basis for a critical text of α . In Book III, where γ shares in most of the α readings, a critic wishing to reconstitute α might take γ as his basis. After line 438 of Book IV, he would probably choose J. The unsatisfactory character of the witnesses will necessitate a hybrid text.

THE TEXT OF β .

When we turn to the problem of reconstituting the β text, we are confronted with similar difficulties. For β we have throughout the poem two independent witnesses—R² and Cx. Both R and

¹ In Book I we have also the occasional adherence of Th. See above, pp. 29–31.

² R apparently deserts the normal β text in lines 701–1113 of Book II. See above, pp. 126–128.

Cx, however, are exceedingly corrupt; and either would furnish a most unsatisfactory basis for a critical text. For the first two-thirds of the poem, J is an excellent authority.

In Book I the β text is represented by JGgH₅H₃RCx, and in all but a few lines by γ also. In every single case where the variation is at all striking γ has the β reading.

In Book II, as we have seen, the relation of the MSS. is so confused that certain conclusions are out of the question. From line 64 to about 1200, GgH₅ desert β for α . After 1200, they are β MSS., frequently in agreement with J. H₄ presents a mixed text, a collation of α and a MS. akin to R. In the list of striking variants between 701 and 1113 it is associated with JR. In this passage, however, JRH₄ present an aberrant text, with a marked tendency to revert to α readings. The character of this JRH₄ text I have not been able to determine satisfactorily. The only safe procedure in Book II is to regard as genuine β readings only those which have the support of γ H₃CxS₁. In a great majority of cases these authorities are supplemented by JR[H₄].

Throughout Book III, β is represented by JH₄RCx. In the first 400 lines, where, however, there are hardly any striking variants, it has the support also of GgH₅. H₃ and S₁ present mixed texts, collations of β and γ . The γ group stands midway between α and β . In some sixty-five cases it presents β readings; in a much larger number of cases, including the great majority of the striking revisions, it has α readings. Repeatedly we find individual β MSS. reverting to the unrevised text. In line 256 we have what seems to be a genuine β reading given only by γ H₃S₁R. In general, however, the β text can be established with a high degree of accuracy on the basis of J, the readings of which can be checked by the independent testimony of H₄, R, and Cx. Each of the four chief representatives of β —J, H₄, R, and Cx—is independently derived from the β original; so that a reading supported by any three of the four must be regarded as genuine. The β readings of S₁ seem also to have been independently derived; those of H₃ come from a source apparently akin to Cx.

In Book IV, β gains at line 197 the adherence of H₂; but as H₂ in its third and fourth hands is closely related to H₄, it serves as a check on H₄ rather than as an independent witness. At line 326, H₃ ceases to give even its intermittent β readings; and with line 438, J, hitherto the backbone of β , becomes an α MS. Through

the greater part of the book, then, β is represented by H_2H_4RCx . As in Book III, individual β MSS. frequently revert to the earlier reading in the case of the less striking variations. In line 882 we have what seems to be a genuine revision reading given only by γS_1 . In a great majority of the variant readings, which in the first 1300 lines of the book are striking and very numerous, γ presents the β text. After the defection of J at line 438, β can best be reconstituted on the basis of γ ; since H_2H_4 , R, and Cx are individually corrupt.

In Book V β continues to be represented by H_2H_4RCx ; though in the single important revision, the inclusion of the *Teseide* passage, H_2H_4 revert to the primitive text, otherwise represented only by Ph (and possibly Gg). Throughout the book, as also in the last third of Book IV, the variants are of a very trivial character. In all save a few unimportant and doubtful cases, the γ text, purged of its distinctive γ group readings, presents the poem in its final authentic form.

A critic wishing to reconstitute β will find it his simplest procedure to use as his basis a corrected γ text, save in Book III and the early part of Book IV, where J must be given first consideration. Or he may base his text on J so far as it is a β MS., correcting it to γH_3Cx readings between lines 701 and 1113 of Book II, and substituting for it, after it goes over to α , a corrected γ .

THE TEXT OF γ .

As has been abundantly proved, the distinctive readings of the γ group have no claim to authenticity. A γ reading, not otherwise supported, must in every case be regarded as of scribal origin; and in any case the combined testimony of all the γ MSS. has only the authority of one MS., their lost original. This lost original, however, was a MS. of great importance. Its corruptions are, after all, but few, and these of a sort very easily corrected by the testimony of other authorities. It is not impossible that it was derived immediately from the common original; in any event it cannot be far removed.¹ Though derived too early to include all of the poet's final revisions, it has preserved and transmitted to certain of its descendants, with a high degree of accuracy, the text which Chaucer had himself corrected and in large part revised. Of all the surviving MSS., J alone can rival in correctness of grammatical

¹ We know that Cl, one of its descendants, was executed before 1413.

forms, and consequently in metrical smoothness, the text of the γ original as represented by Cl, Cp, and H_1 . It is of the first importance, therefore, that the critic should be able to reconstitute the γ original.

This is, fortunately, not a difficult matter. Throughout the poem, γ is represented by five independent MS. units—Cl, Cp, H_1 , S_2 Dig, and AD. With such generous attestation, the critic will rarely need to call in the testimony of S_1 and H_3 , whose adherence to the group is not constant. Moreover, S_1 is clearly an "edited" MS.,¹ skilfully emended by some editor with a good sense of metre, but ignorant of the syllabic values of Chaucer's language; and H_3 is full of individual corruptions. For both MSS., too, the γ readings have been derived from a source akin to AD, and hence not of independent authority. S_2 and Dig are individually corrupt, and are descended from a very corrupt parent. For finer matters of language and versification their evidence is nearly worthless. In more general matters their evidence, despite occasional instances of contamination, confirms that of the remaining MSS.; but the confirmation is usually superfluous. A and D are individually corrupt; but their common parent was very free from errors. Cl, Cp, and H_1 are singularly pure representatives of the γ original, diverging from one another but slightly even in orthography.

Though among the five units which compose γ no sub-groups can be established with any certainty, we find among the cross-relations of this MS. with that in trivial variations a slight attestation for the connection of CpH_1S_2 Dig as against ClAD, and of CpH_1S_2 DigCl as against AD. In cases of the latter sort the AD parent may have corrected an error found in the rest. It will best suit all the facts if we conceive of the γ original as receiving, during the period when it was used as an exemplar, a few slight corrections and alterations. We shall then say that Cp, H_1 , and S_2 Dig were derived before Cl, and Cl before AD. The presence in the γ original of such corrections will explain the chance associations of one γ MS. with another in trivial variations.

As basis for the reconstitution of γ , the critic will probably choose Cp, as freest from individual errors and most consistent in spelling. He will then correct Cp by reference to Cl, H_1 and AD. Any reading attested by three of these he will accept as a genuine

¹ Its edited character similarly lessens the authority of Th, which in the main presents a γ text.

γ reading. In the rare cases where they divide two and two, he will call in the evidence of S_2 Dig, and perhaps of S_1 and H_3 .

When the γ original has been thus reconstituted, the next step is to purge it of corrupt readings—that is to say, of the readings peculiar to it alone, which, if our conclusions are correct, are due to scribal carelessness or “editing.” No γ reading can be regarded as authentic unless supported by MS. authority outside of the γ group; and since S_1 and H_3 so frequently share in γ characteristics, the support of either or both of these “mixed” MSS. is not to be regarded as significant. To this principle there can be but two exceptions—first, if α , β , and γ present three distinct readings; and second, if the γ reading is unequivocally marked as authentic by comparison with the source, or by similar evidence. Of the first of these exceptional situations there are very few instances; and in most of these the γ reading is recognizable as a variant of either α or β , or as due to the imperfect incorporation of a revision. In the few remaining cases we must assume that the line has undergone two successive revisions, and that γ represents the middle stage. Of the second there is but one clear case. In line 1748 of Book III where $\gamma H_3 S_1$ read *knetteth*, the remaining MSS. read *enditeth*. Since both words are found in Chaucer’s source, Boethius, we must assume that the common original contained both readings.¹

If a γ reading is supported by one authority independent of γ , we shall in general assume that the agreement is, if of a trivial sort, due to accidental coincidence, if more striking, to contamination.² To this principle exception can be made only when the intrinsic claims of such a reading are very strong. In such a case we are forced to assume that other MSS. have reverted to an unrevised reading. There is, of course, always the possibility that a γ reading, supported by one independent witness, was present as an alternative reading in the common original. If γ has the support of two independent authorities, we must assume this to have been the case; but instances of this are not frequent.

The γ original so constituted, and so purged, will represent, as accurately as our evidence will permit, Chaucer’s own archetype copy of the poem. Save in Book III, it will incorporate most of his final revisions.

¹ See above, p. 136.

² This does not apply to lines 701–1113 of Book II, where all the β MSS. save Cx have reverted to a modified α text.

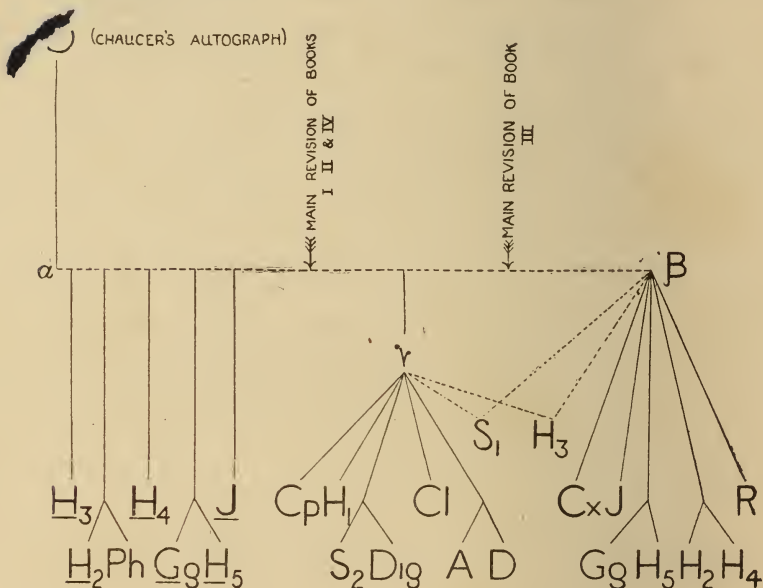
THE TEXT OF A CRITICAL EDITION.

We have indicated the process to be followed in reconstituting α , β , or γ . It remains to consider what text a modern editor should print in a critical edition. Ideally he would choose to print either the α text with a full set of β variants, or *vice versa*. Preferably, I should think, he would choose the latter; since he would so give greater prominence to Chaucer's mature and final judgment, and would avoid the necessity of emending the uncorrected scribal errors of α . Practically, both of these choices are beset with great difficulty by the lack of any single MS. on which to base a text of either α or β . To base one's edition on Ph, the only consistently α MS., or on R or Cx, the only consistently β authorities, would mean an almost complete rewriting of the basal MS. to bring it into linguistic and metrical conformity with Chaucer's known usage. Editing of this sort, which means a critical reconstitution *in vacuo*, is properly looked upon with distrust. It presupposes in the methods of textual criticism a mathematical certainty which is far from being justified, and in the editor a sureness of judgment and a confidence in his own conclusions to which he has no right to pretend. Chaucer's spelling we cannot hope to recover with any degree of certainty. A modern editor's guess at it will hardly be so satisfactory as is the spelling of a careful scribe of the early fifteenth century. Save for a beginner's text-book, normalized texts are of doubtful service. The critic will prefer to throw in his lot with one carefully chosen MS. He will choose a MS. as free as possible from individual corruptions, and the inheritor of a pure tradition, one in which contamination has not played a large part, a MS. reasonably consistent in spelling, and in its forms as close as may be to Chaucer's known usage, and one which is throughout the poem true to a single type of text. These conditions are best met by such MSS. as Cl, Cp, and H₁. Of the three, the choice will probably fall upon Cp. This basal MS. will first be corrected by the other γ MSS., and then purged of its distinctive γ readings. This purified Cp text will be a consistent and unified presentation of Chaucer's archetype in its middle stage.

The disadvantage of such a text is that it will incorporate only part of Chaucer's final revisions. The α and β variants would, however, be given in every case in the list of variants at the foot of the page. The editor might without undue temerity venture upon

the further task of correcting his γ text to β readings, wherever these are capable of sure determination. Except in Book III the amount of this correcting would not be very great; and here the editor would find in J a β text not very different in spelling and forms from Cp. In every instance where his γ text had been so "beta-ized," the γ reading would, of course, be recorded in the notes. As between these two procedures the editor will have to make his choice.

Finally, I shall try to present graphically in genealogical form the conclusions reached in this discussion. The table is inevitably a complicated one.



The broken line, $\alpha \dots \beta$, represents a single MS., Chaucer's own copy of the poem, progressively corrected and revised, until its text, originally α , becomes β . In the case of MSS. of composite character, the α portion of the MS. is represented by underscoring the designation.

APPENDIX

CORRECTIONS OF THE CHAUCER SOCIETY PRINTS OF TROILUS MSS.

Harleian 3943.

- I. 652. *For wel read wele.*
- II. 26. *Line written by later hand.*
- 64. *Songe by later hand.*
- III. 1261. *For Benienyng read Bemenyng.*
- IV. 1340. *in over line by scribe.*
- 1352. *it over line by scribe.*
- V. 940, 942. *Lines exchanged in MS.*
- 1343. *me over line by scribe.*
- 1359. *eke over line by scribe.*

Campall.

- I. 285. *For meuyngne read menyngne.*
- 387. *Omit second hire.*
- 465. *For doon read noon.*
- 559. *For And read That.*
- 632. *For And read But.*
- 664. *For kynge read kyng.*
- 737. *For But read And.*
- 814. *For of read for.*
- II. 101. *For Layus read layus.*
- 137. *For that read pat.*
- 260. *is over line.*
- 283. *For And read But.*
- 325. *For throte read prote.*
- 746. *one over line, (?) later.*
- 931. *For And read But.*
- 1442. *opere corrected from operes.*
- 1734. *Omit which.*
- III. 1. *At beginning of proem read: Incipit prohemium Tercij Libri.*
- 630. *For a read it.*
- 801. *For ful read she.*
- 1089. *& over erasure.*
- 1094. *For For read But.*

- 1098. *pis over line.*
- 1292. *pey over erasure by scribe.*
- 1534. *Real Palais corrected from Palais Real.*
- 1568. *After first yow read he.*
- IV. 25. *For of read to.*
- 58. *trete corrected from tretre.*
- 438, 439. *Lines originally transposed, but corrected in margin.*
- V. 7. *For Lachesis read lathesis.*
- 531. *For dorres read dores.*
- 667. *on over line by scribe.*
- 832. *For enteched read entecched.*
- 1482. *For And read But.*
- 1641. *& over line by scribe.*
- 1849. *For vyces read rytes.*
- 1859. *For garde read goode.*
- 1862. *For And pe read And to pe.*

Harleian 2280.

- I. 72. *All but first word over erasure.*
- 398. *so over line.*
- 470. *For charppe read sharp-pe.*
- 534. *I erased before caught.*
- 559. *For And read pat.*
- 598. *Second it over line.*
- 737. *For But read And.*
- 865. *Omit the.*
- 1067. *he over line.*
- II. 57. *his over line.*
- 112. *to over line.*
- 207. *able by scribe in margin.*
- 283. *For And read But.*
- 300. *For If read And.*

352. *Omit that.*
 413. *to and it over line.*
 428. *ful over line.*
 441. *to over line.*
 576. *no over line.*
 749. *Omit it; is under line, later.*
 764. *when over line.*
 913. *to over line.*
 1298. *tweye corrected to two.*
 1299. *sermone corrected to sermon.*
 1429. *me over line.*
 1571. *euere over line.*
 1655. *a over line.*
- III. 270. *Second pat over line.*
 561. *Delete [lf. 51].*
 617. *A word erased before wierdes.*
 770. *as over line.*
 800. *Line over erasure.*
 983. *though he corrected from thought she.*
 1107. *ful leuere were over erasure.*
 1225. *it over line.*
 1344. *reme written as though last word of line, not indicated as a gloss.*
 1814. *3ow over line.*
- IV. 60. *with over erasure.*
 338. *Line over erasure.*
 503. *For soft read soth.*
 829. *me over line.*
 1086. *quod over line.*
 1611. *wel over line.*
- V. 190. *his over line.*
 239. *fulle over line.*
 640. *euere over line.*
 1290. *it over line.*
 1466. *on over line.*
 1467. *For greekes read grekes.*
 1516. *For she read sche. A word erased before sche.*
 1842. *right over line.*
- Cambridge, Gg. 4. 27.
- I. 297. *q of quekyn by corrector over line.*
 329. *wrype and self over erasure.*
 353. *For he gan read be gan.*
 372. *For gaine read game.*
856. *After wo, now over line by later hand.*
 921. *for erased before to.*
- II. 159. *euere corrected from euery.*
 356. *as over line by corrector.*
 865. *it over line.*
 915. *was by corrector in margin.*
 922. *Line by scribe over erasure.*
 923. *That by corrector over erasure.*
 970. *Line at end of stanza, but with proper position indicated.*
 1065. *litera in margin by contemporary hand.*
 1460. *Line at foot of page with indication of proper place.*
- III. 844. *is by corrector.*
 1436. *For alwoy read away.*
- IV. 555. *of erased before myn.*
 613. *me over line.*
 717. *sche by scribe in margin.*
 755. *fyrst by scribe in margin.*
 1104. *pu corrected from pus.*
 1220. *a of glade over line by corrector.*
- V. 88. *Tideus corrected to Tedeus.*
 578. *Line at foot of page with indication.*
 601. *Second was marked for deletion.*
 1060. *A word erased after for.*
 1069. *Line at end of stanza with indication.*
- St. John's, Cambridge.
- I. 208. *For And read He.*
 356. *he corrected.*
 858. *Before vnwre read to.*
 890-896. *Stanza 128, in margin by 17th cent. hand, has by trimming lost two or three letters at beginning of lines. The print emends without comment. Line 896 should probably read The ought for Men ought.*

1028. *it over line, later.*
 1054. *Read yis (not italicized).*
 I. 299. *Omit to.*
 349. *For And read Yif.*
 380. *euer corrected from euery.*
 505. *to over erasure by later hand.*
 508. *with in by scribe over erasure.*
 655. *hym have mercy by later hand over erasure; for and read &.*
 840. *For destreynd read desteynd.*
 924. *For That read Til.*
 960. *Omit first I.*
 1272. *After hope, I written and erased.*
 1307, 1308. *By scribe over erasure.*
 1316. *After with, al over line by old hand, perhaps that of scribe.*
 1344. *After som, what over line by scribe.*
 1465. *After Nece read myn.*
 1621. *it over line by scribe.*
 III. 160. *For But read And.*
 438. *For This read That.*
 448. *For That read This.*
 514. *For And read As.*
 721. *Adon by scribe over erasure.*
 731. *tres sorores fatales / Cloto latesis & attropos / vnde cloto colum baiulat by scribe in margin.*
 831. *be written and erased after May.*
 838. *Omit and.*
 908. *or over line by scribe.*
 933. *Dulcarnon repeated by scribe in margin.*
 1022. *For And read Of.*
 1066. *Nota by scribe in margin.*
 1094. *For For read But.*
 1119. *For And read So.*
 1201. *After in read his.*
 1373. *or a corrected.*
 1415. *Vulgaris Astrologer by scribe in margin.*
 1455. *-st of sekist corrected by later hand.*
 1577. *For an read &.*
 1600. *flag- over erasure.*
- IV. 1. *Three-line initial B.*
 28. *Rubric reads: Explicit prohennium quarti libri / Incipit Liber Quartus.*
 134. *who over line by scribe.*
 282. *me over line by scribe.*
 435. *Omit he.*
 455. *me over line by scribe.*
 565. *ded over erasure.*
 577. *I by corrector.*
 595. *a over line.*
 646. *After to, the over line by early hand.*
 891. *For first As read And.*
 1078. *her failleth thyng yt is nat yt made by early hand at foot of page.*
 1137. *For in read is.*
 1286. *For And read But.*
 1296. *Omit for.*
 1345. *day over line by scribe.*
 1397. *Omit and.*
 1478. *Omit al.*
 1530. *For And read Or.*
 V. 93. *he over line by scribe.*
 358. *Nota de sompnij by early hand in margin.*
 435. *de commendacione (?) regis Sarpedonis by scribe in margin.*
 799. *Voce ferox animo preceps / audentique ira. Validos / quadratur in artus tetides / plenusque meretur tidea factis / sic animo sic ore fero Sic et cetera / Calidonijs heres / by scribe in margin.*
 806. *In medium librata / statum Criseis heriles promit in affectum vultus nodatur / in equos flauicis / crinata / Vmbraque minoris / delicias oculis iunc / tos suspendit in / arcus / diuicijs forme cer / tant insignea amorum / Sobria simplicitas / comis pudor ari / da numquam / poscenti / pietas gracia fandi*

- lenis / by scribe in margin.
827. Troilus in spacium / surgentes expli / cat arcus / mente gigas eta / te puer. mixtoque / vigore / nullique secundus / virtutis opis / by scribe in margin.
1085. *For And read But.*
1317. *Litera Troili by scribe in margin.*
1590. *litera Criseidis by scribe in margin.*
- Corpus.
- I. 463. *For dredres read dredes.*
540. *For manye read many.*
632. *For sharpe read sharppe.*
693. *Read: Thi wo to telle and tel me if the liste.*
704. *For for read wo.*
875. *For þe read the.*
- II. 18. *For seyde read Seyde.*
540. *For With read Wyth.*
924. *For That read Til.*
1400. *After of read it.*
1415. *For thanke read thank.*
- III. 1. *Initial not executed.*
833. *For but read ful.*
922. *though corrected from thought.*
1593. *Omit out.*
- IV. 717. *she sholde corrected from sholde.*
1394. *Note should read [Most of stanza 199, all of 200 and 201, part of 202 omitted].*
- V. 16. *Omit for.*
831. *steel corrected to stiel.*
1548. *Parodie glossed duracioun.*
- Harleian 1239.
- I. 57. *No special initial in MS.*
110. *For she read sche.*
720. *After he read on.*
- II. 50. *For may read many.*
139. *For the read tho.*
162. *For sethe read fethe.*
1030. *For harpe read harper.*
1053. *For that that lorde read that lorde that.*
1632. *Initial not coloured.*
- III. 232. *No change in writing.*
275. *For thy read thys.*
421. *wel over line by scribe.*
1608. *For heers read heris.*
1613. *For wher read whey.*
1744. *For on read ouer.*
- IV. 28. *For Lvt (or Lft) read Cft (or Ct).*
39, 40. *Order of lines as printed.*
179, 180. *Order of lines as printed.*
357. *al away corrected from alwey.*
411. *that and gode over line by scribe.*
417. *selfe deleted before lyf.*
422. *Read: The new loue oute chaseth labour or other woo with oute chaseth marked for deletion.*
593. *by over line by scribe.*
1247. *in over line by scribe.*
1534. *For primum read promissum.*
1535. *After second or, f erased.*
1564. *After sorowe read ye; before wolde, cowde deleted.*
- V. 1. *Ordinary stanza initial.*
60, 61. *Transpose order of lines. The order is that of J.*
666. *For Opon read Bpon. (Illuminator has mistaken v, written in ink, for b).*
981. *For doth read dothe.*
1085. *For And read But.*
1246. *nys over line by scribe.*
1574. *For his read hir.*
1590. *litera Crese[yde] by scribe in margin.*
- Phillipps.
- II. 1083. *Line later by scribe in space left blank.*
1119. *For wordis read woordis.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| III. 257. <i>For hadc read have.</i>
292. <i>Line later by scribe in
space.</i>
299. <i>For caust read canst.</i>
320. <i>Line regularly written:</i>
<i>That neuere zet behight</i>
<i>hem pis ne that.</i> | IV. 772. <i>For I read y.</i>
785. <i>For Myht read My hert.</i>
790. <i>Line later by scribe in
space.</i>
V. 331. <i>sawe over line, later.</i>
1796. <i>For mismetre read mis-
mettre.</i> |
|---|---|

LINE INDEX

TO CHAPTERS II—VI

IN each column the numbers at the left refer to book and line of *Troilus*, according to the line-numbering of Skeat's edition, those at the right to the pages of this volume.

BOOK I		(Book I)		(Book I)	
2	35	94	67	202, 203	45
4	59	98	41, 69	204	77
5	83	101	41	205	67, 77
9	35	104	41	206-209	45
10	59	106	76	215	46
12, 13	35	108	41	217	46
17	35	109	76	224	46, 67
19	35	110	41	225	46
20	59	111	41	234	70
24-28	35	118	41	235	81
27	75	119	55, 66	237, 238	55
33	36	123	41	245	46
34	36	124	42, 67	249	77
36	37	125	42	253	70
38	67	130, 131	42	255	46
43, 44	37	133	42	257-259	46
45	37, 69	137	42	259	62
46	37	143	61	261	47, 62
52	37	143, 144	42	268	55
53	75	144	77	272	47, 70
54	37	150, 151	42	274	47
56	75	156	55	276	47
57, 58	38	157	43	280	73
60	72	159	43	286	56
61	38	162	61	324	62
63	38, 59	163-167	43	327	47, 66
67	75	164	62	342	47
68	59	165	75	344, 345	48
71	72	167	62	347	72
76	55	168	70	348, 349	48
78	38	169	44	350	73
82	28	176	44, 73	361	72
83	38	181, 182	55	373	48
85	39	183	45	375	76
86	76	186	73	386	62, 82
87	61	195	45, 77	388	66
87-91	39	197	55, 73	393	48
93	73	198	62	395	48
93-96	40	199	45	399	77
		200	81	403	49

(Book I)	(Book I)	(Book I)
405 68, 82	646 57	1001 79
406 56	649 63	1002 65
407 49, 68	661 64	1007 79
409 56, 68	665 57	1012 65
423 56	668 68	1014 53
424 49	672 77	1024 79
425, 426 56	678 51	1032 58, 75
426 73	681 78	1050 65
442 62	715 51	1057 65, 79
452 49	719 72, 74	1064 65
462 49	720 64	1076-1078 58
465 56, 66	725 82	1081 58
471 56	737 78	
483 49	739 57	
485 67	747 57	
487 63	748 58	
490 68	755 51	
495 63	757 78	
496 57, 63	767 58, 71, 78	
497 70	768 78	
498 59, 74, 82	773 51	
500 60	786 51	
502 63, 74, 77	794 52	
516 70	796 52	
531 67	797 68	
532 50, 70	803 68	
536 60	806 58, 64, 67	
539 63, 71	808 64	
540 50	820 64	
546 60	831 52	
547 60	832 78	
558 60	833 82	
563 63	834 64	
564 50	849 76	
565 63	860 58	
582 50	874 78	
585 72	878 68	
587 77	880 64	
592 67, 74	884 82	
603 77	889 82	
611 74	890-896 34	
612 57	907 78	
613 82	914 58, 74	
614 71, 77	926 58	
616 67	938 52, 74	
623 74	943 68	
628 63	949 52, 64	
629 50	957 58, 76	
630 77	960 74	
631 67	972 68	
632 57	976 52, 65, 78	
640 50	984 71	
642 57	988 63, 79	
644 51	1000. 1001 65	

(Book II)		(Book II)		(Book II)	
147	95	458	105	721	107
154	98, 117	461	98, 123	724	116
159	92, 122	462	115	729	96
170	95	465	85	731	107
176	84	466	123	734, 735	107
178	105	478, 479	105	736, 737	108
185	92	485	123	737	86
189	92	489	93	738	108
190	105	491	85	745	86, 96, 119
192	84	497	93	751	119, 123
206	92	500	105	752	116
209	92	503	106	758	101
211	92	508	85, 115	760, 761	108
217	100	509	96	768	124
221	91, 98	510	106	775	119
224	84	512	101	783	101
225	92	516	85, 96, 119	792	109
226	105	521	106	801	86
239	84	522	93	808	86
246	98	535	123	813	109
248	92	551	120	814	119
253	118	568	119	815	86
267	93	585	116	816	86, 96
272	85	588	101	822	124
283	85	589	116	825	109
286	85	591	86	839	98
291	105	592	106	840	99
292	93, 101	593	117	850	96
296	122	597	86, 103, 116	851	93
305	95, 115	598	106	856	99
307	98	603	106	859	109
309	85	613	117	864	116, 119
330	101	617	86	896	109
331	105	636	114	897	109
347	93	640	123	899	102
349	101	644	116	904	87
354	102	646	106	905	93, 116
357	123	649	103	908	109
376	101	653	92, 116	910	109
380	95	656	119	912	96
383	85	663	96, 98	922, 923	110
384	105	664	106	924	117
398	101	667	106	925	120
403	119	670	107	937	87
406	85	675	101	943	87
408	95	677	102	945	110, 117
411	105	678	92	949	87
421, 422	95	679	107	950	87, 110
425	103	692	93	953	124
432	85	694	103	956	87
434	123	701	107	960	87
438	114	701-1113	126	963	87
449	92	703	107	964	103
454	101	713	101	977	87

(Book II)

978	117, 120
980	117
1005	87, 102
1009	87
1013	91
1018	110
1024	99, 124
1026	114
1055	88
1068	114
1079	118
1083	96, 110, 120
1084	110
1085	110
1091	120
1093	111
1095-1097	111
1104	96
1105	96
1108	111
1109	88
1113	88, 111
1116	92
1119	112
1120	112
1130	96
1142	112
1143	88
1147	120
1152	93
1155	97
1156	112
1162	116
1164	121
1168	93
1172	124
1181	91
1189	102
1196	97
1201	112
1202	88
1210	121
1211	112
1225	88
1240	88, 92
1249	124
1265	99
1280	88, 116
1286	97, 116
1291	89
1292	121
1298	93
1311	92
1312	93

(Book II)

1314	114
1316	89
1321	112
1333	121
1344	89
1347	89, 97
1352	112
1356	112
1383	112, 121
1394	89
1395	89
1398	118
1399	102, 112
1426	90
1429	103
1429, 1430	90
1433	121
1434	97
1439	90
1442	103
1452	103
1455	113, 116, 121
1487	125
1493	90
1500	102
1504	91
1513	97
1517	91, 114
1519	103
1526	120
1546	103, 116
1550	121
1552	94
1553	125
1554	97
1561	103
1585	91
1590	91
1596	121
1598	99
1602	91
1616	115
1621	97
1624	91
1644	116
1649	92
1663	91
1665	91, 115
1666	125
1669	91
1672, 1673	118
1677	97
1687	99
1688	122

(Book II)

1691	122
1696	102
1701	118, 122
1705	115
1712	118
1715	117
1733	122
1741	117
1746	91
1754	113
1755	94, 113
1757	94

Book III

5	177
13	142
16	138
33	138
49	129
53	177
57	137
58	158
64	175
65	177
74	145
80	158
82	158
84	129, 177
90	129, 147
91	140
98	142
101	129
110	129
111	130
116, 117	177
119	130
124	138
130	130
131	175
136	130
137	142
146	178
158	130
160	138
168	178
171, 172	146
178	147
185	175
188, 189	130
193	138, 178
199	142
200	138

(Book III)		(Book III)		(Book III)	
203	130	462	139	651	149
205	178	468	143, 160	656	143
220	142	484	160	659	163
228	178	487	179	668	163
230	131	489	169	671	143
231	137	490	160	672	163
242	139, 175	492	160	673	163
243	147	501	143	677	163
256	131	503	139, 160	683	146
258	140	508	160	690	139
259	140	512	132, 160	692	133
263	139	514	171	694	149
265	142	518	161	696	149
266	147	524	148	699	141, 150
269	158	525	161	702	163
273	175	526	176	705	164
277	146, 178	527	141	712	150
280	178	528	161	717	150
282	178	529	161	722	133
293	141, 158	535	132	724	176
300	137	536	132	737	179
301	131	537	132	751	150
302	175	543	148	756	139, 146
303	178	544	161	758	133
304	142	546	161	759	164
306	137	549	148	766, 767	143
311	137	554	161	773	164
319	131	555	161	776	150
329	179	558	132, 141, 148, 161	786	179
349	143	568	162	797	179
354	131, 175	571	143, 179	799	139
357	146	573	162	800, 801	164
367	175	578	162	810	133
371	159	579, 580	162	819	150
379	159	585	141	820	164
391	143, 147	588	162	821	150
396	159	589	132	827	141
399	147	591	162	831	176
400	137	593	143, 162	838	133
401	147	595	141	857	151
412	131	598	149	859	133
427	131	599	149	875	151
433	147	601	149	876	141
438	131	604	162	880	133
439	147	607, 608	163	882	144, 164
442	159	612	149	884	139
444	159	621	149	889	151
448	159	623	132	913	133
449	159	626	149	915	179
450	131, 141, 159	627	176	922	151, 164
455	159	629	149	924	151
457	146	635	163	928	141
459	131, 148, 160	636	132	930	179
461	131, 148, 160	642	149	931	133

(Book III)		(Book III)		(Book III)	
933	151	1218	166	1440	170
934	151	1225	166	1441	170
937	164	1239	166	1451	140, 170
946	144	1241	180	1455	170
952	164	1245	166	1464	170
953	151	1250	154	1465	145
957	151	1251	144	1466	170
958	164	1258	166	1470	170
962	152	1260	166	1473	170
968	176	1261	144	1479	171
970	146	1264	166	1480	180
971	165	1268	134	1482	135
989	152	1280	166	1486	135
1009	179	1283	144, 167	1487	180
1011	165	1284	167	1488	135
1014	152	1288	154	1492	171
1019	165	1291	134, 141	1496	171
1041	152	1295	167	1504	145
1046	152	1307	167	1512	154
1062	144	1308	139	1524	135
1063	152	1313	176	1525	135
1063, 1064	144	1316	167	1526	140
1067	153	1323	167	1531	140
1071	146	1324	167	1534	176
1073	133	1324-1337	157	1538	171
1079	153	1327	163	1548	176
1032	153	1329	168	1552	141
1084	153	1334	168	1554	154
1086	153	1348	154, 168	1561	171
1094	180	1351	138	1563	171
1096	139, 165	1354	168	1565	147
1101, 1102	165	1360	163	1576	172
1107	180	1362	168	1582	172
1115	165	1365	138	1595	135, 154, 172
1119	133	1367	168	1600	145, 172
1123	146	1373	134	1605	176
1127	153	1382	168	1617	136
1136	144, 165	1383	176	1621	141
1137	139	1388	154	1621, 1622	172
1141	165	1389	154	1632	173
1153	133, 153, 165	1390	154	1639	173
1156	139	1392, 1393	169	1642	176
1157	134	1394	135	1643	155, 176
1163	154, 166	1395	169	1645	173
1165	134	1399	169	1647	176
1174	139	1402	135	1649	176
1177	166	1406	154	1660	136
1183	139	1413	147	1665	173
1187	144	1415	169	1675	136
1192	134	1418	169	1679	145
1202	134, 146	1419	141	1685	173
1203	134	1422	135	1694	177
1211	176	1431	169	1702	136
1214	166	1437-1439	170	1707	155

(Book III)		(Book IV)		(Book IV)	
1708	136	130	193	340	196
1720	173	131	193	341	196
1723	136	132	224	344	225
1744	140	133	193	347	196
1744-1771	145, 155	140	224	357	196
1746	173	143	193	358	197
1748	136	151	193, 228	359	197
1754	137, 140	156	224	360	197
1768	140, 147	160	193	362	197
1778	140	161	193	373	197
1779	145	163	184	386	197
1783	145	166	224	388	197
1793	155	173	193	397	197, 227
1795	173	185	193	393	197
1805	141	191	184	403	197
1818	145	193	193	404	197
1820	177	194	212	409	197
		195	193	410	185
		197	185	410, 411	198
		206	212	412	213, 229
		209	228	417	198
		212	194	418	225
		215	185, 194, 224	430	198
		220	185	438	198
		222	194	441	198, 225
		238	194	445	198, 227
		240, 247	194	454	198
		248	212	459	189
		258	194	461	225
		261	189	462	189
		262	194	464	199
		266	194	470	189, 225
		269	195	473	212
		280	185	474	213
		282	224	476	199
		286	195	484	185, 199, 225
		290	195	492	199
		294	195	495	227
		295	185	496	213
		295, 296	195	498	185, 199
		296	228	499	199
		297	195	506, 507	199
		298	195	511	189
		299	227	515	199
		300, 301	195	517	229
		301	229	528	225
		305	229	532	185
		306	196	537	199
		312	227	542	186
		317	185	560	200
		322	196, 224	570	186, 200, 225
		326	196	571	200
		327	196	573	225
		328	224	581	200, 225
Book IV					
1-28	182				
7	222				
9	183				
12	184				
25	191				
29	222				
33	191				
37	191				
38	211				
39, 40	184				
41	211				
41, 42	223				
51	192				
53	192				
54	192				
55	212				
57-59	223				
62	192, 212				
78	184				
80	184				
88	184				
93	192				
96	228				
102	192				
105	192				
109	228				
110	192				
112	229				
114	192				
121	193				
123	212, 223				
124	223				
126	224				

(Book IV)		(Book IV)		(Book IV)	
587	200	799	213	1208	213
588	200, 212, 225	809	205	1209	209
590	200	819	205	1214	209
594	200, 226	820	205	1218	210
596	201, 228	823	205	1222, 1223	210
598	201, 226, 228	828, 829	205	1228	213
601	190	835	206	1246	213
602	201	842	213	1250	210
604	201	843	206	1251	210
608	186	853	206	1252	187
617	201	854	187, 206	1266	213
630	201, 226	867	206	1284	210
638	201	868	206, 226	1286	188
644	201	876	206, 213	1289	210
647	201	881	206	1290	210
657	186	882	187	1294	210
662	226	891	206	1295	213
666	229	896	229	1301	214
674	201	903	206	1302	214
680	202	906	206	1304	214
691	202	907	187	1310	227
696-698	202	915	206	1312, 1313	214
698	229	923	207	1315	210
701	202	924	207	1322	211, 215
702	202	936	207	1323	211
706	202	938	187, 207, 226	1324	188
708-714	183	948	226	1325	215
717	190, 202	950-952	207	1332	211
721	226	953-1085	216	1336	211, 215
723	190	1033	207	1344	190
724	202	1097	208	1363, 1365	215
732	186	1099	208	1366	213
733	202, 228	1100	187	1373	188
734	226	1113	208	1392, 1393	215
736-742	203	1117	229	1402	215
739	203	1123	208	1404	215
747	203	1124	208	1409	211
750-752	203	1129	208	1411	216
750-756	221	1131	208	1417	228
757	203	1133	208	1424	190
758	204	1134	208	1438	227
762, 763	204	1138, 1139	208	1442	216
765	190	1144	213	1449	188
767	204	1160	187	1451	214, 229
770	204	1165	209	1453	190, 211
773	186, 204, 226	1167	209	1455	214, 229
775	204	1173	209	1456	228
781	204	1178	209, 227	1478	211
782	190, 205	1179	209	1493	188
788	205	1183	209	1494	188
789, 790	205	1185	209	1511	190
791	186	1190	209	1527	188
793	205	1194	209	1530	188
794	205	1199	209	1535	190

(Book IV)		(Book V)		(Book V)	
1572	188	495	232	1098	236
1575	214	496	240	1103	238
1584	228	509	242	1109	241
1608	190	513	240	1153	236
1628	214	522	235	1163	233
1654	211	523	237	1167	241
1657	214	547	243	1168	233
1688	188	563	243	1186	238
1697	188	564	240	1193	236
		565	232	1203	244
		570	237	1270	233
		572	235	1277	236
		583	237	1295	233
		599	235	1316	233
		612	232	1321	243
		617	240	1343	236
		628	238	1386	243
		629	238	1390	233
		632	242	1393	236
		645	240	1407	241
		652	238, 244	1413	234
		655	240	1444	236
		711	232	1446	238
		730	238	1449	234
		732	242	1454	241
		733	236	1461	243
		750	236	1498	244
		769	240	1502-1504	239
		885	238	1510	241
		924	232	1526	241
		941	242	1532	239
		943	236	1540	243
		944	232	1543	234
		946	240	1545	241, 241
		973	233	1563	241
		989	243	1570	239
		992	233	1572	244
		993	236	1585	234
		1006	233	1602	244
		1020	242	1652	243
		1021	233	1674	234
		1023	240	1702	243
		1028	238	1715	243
		1029	242	1749	239
		1048	236	1775	234
		1057	236	1790	244
		1070	233	1792	236
		1071	241	1796	236
		1081	233	1806	234
		1082	244	1807-1827	245
		1083	244	1809	234
		1091	242	1866	244
		1095	242	1868	244

BOOK V

9	231, 237, 241
12	235
26	235
34	242
42	235
50	243
55	235
60	244
60, 61	231
63	231
84	243
88	235
89	244
107	231
115	231
137	243
154	239
166	232
202	237
208	235
211	244
217	239
236	244
242	232
245	232
265	244
266	244
308	239
318	240
321	235
335, 336	235
342	240
364	240
407	240
412	232
436	232
469	240
476	237, 243

Chaucer Society.

The Textual Tradition of Chaucer's Troilus

BY

ROBERT KILBURN ROOT, PH.D.

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR, JOHN L. CADWALADER
PRECEPTOR IN ENGLISH, IN PRINCETON UNIVERSITY

LONDON

PUBLISHED FOR THE CHAUCER SOCIETY

BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,

BROADWAY HOUSE, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.

AND BY HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS,

AMEN CORNER, E.C., AND 29-35 WEST 32ND STREET, NEW YORK.

1916 for the Issue of 1912.

The Chaucer Society.

The Founder and Director, Dr. F. J. FURNIVALL.

Hon. Sec. is W. A. DALZIEL Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N.

To do honour to CHAUCER, and to let the lovers and students of him see how far the best unprinted Manuscripts of his works differed from the printed texts, this Society was founded in 1868. There were then, and are still, many questions of metre, pronunciation, orthography, and etymology yet to be settled, for which more prints of Manuscripts were and are wanted; and it is hardly too much to say that every line of Chaucer contains points that need reconsideration. The founder (Dr Furnivall) began with *The Canterbury Tales*, and has given of them (in parallel columns in Royal 4to) six of the best theretofore unprinted Manuscripts known. Inasmuch as the parallel arrangement necessitated the alteration of the places of certain tales in some of the MSS, a part of each MS has been issued separately, following the order of its original. The first six MSS printed have been: the Ellesmere (by leave of the Earl of Ellesmere); the Hengwrt (by leave of W. W. E. Wynne, Esq.); the Camb. Univ. Libr., MS Gg. 4. 27; the Corpus, Oxford; the Petworth (by leave of Lord Leconfield); and the Lansdowne 851 (Brit. Mus.). The Harleian 7534 has followed, and the Cambridge Dd., completed by Egerton 2726 (the Haistwell MS.). *Specimens of all accessible MSS of the Tales* are now nearly completed, edited by the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D., and Prof. John Koch, Ph.D. Lady Cardigan will not allow her MS to be seen.

Of Chaucer's *Minor Poems*,—the MSS of which are generally later than the best MSS of the *Canterbury Tales*,—all the available MSS have been printed, so as to secure all the existing evidence for the true text.

Of *Troilus*, Parallel-Texts from the 6 best MSS have been issued (the Campsall MS also separately), and a 7th MS text of it with the english Boccaccio Comparison. *Autotypes* of most of the best Chaucer MSS have been published.

The Society's publications are issued in two Series, of which the First contains the different texts of Chaucer's works; and the Second, such originals of and essays on these as can be procured, with other illustrative treatises, and Supplementary Tales.

The yearly subscription, which constitutes Membership, is 2 guineas, beginning with January 1, 1868. *All the Society's Publications can still be had*—except First Series, No. LXII.

The Society's Hon. Secs. for America are, Prof. Kittredge, of Harvard College, Cambridge, Mass., for the North and East, and Prof. Bright, of Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, for the South and West. Members' names and subscriptions should be sent to the home Hon. Sec., W. A. Dalziel, Esq., 67 Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N.

FIRST SERIES.

The Society's issue for 1868, in the **First Series**, is,

I. The Prologue and Knight's Tale, of the *Canterbury Tales*, in 6 parallel Texts (from the 6 MSS named below), together with Tables, showing the Groups of the Tales, and their varying order in 38 MSS of the Tales, and in 5 old printed editions, and also *Specimens* from several MSS of the "Moveable Prologues" of the *Canterbury Tales*,—The Shipman's Prologue, and Franklin's Prologue,—when moved from their right places, and of the Substitutes for them. (The Six-Text, Part I.)

II—VII. II. The Prologue and Knight's Tale from the Ellesmere MS, Part I; III. Hengwrt MS, 154, Pt I; IV. Cambridge MS Gg. 4. 27, Pt I; V. Corpus MS, Oxford, Pt I; VI. Petworth MS, Pt I; VII. Lansdowne MS. 851, Pt I. (Separate issues of the Texts forming Part I of the Six-Text edition.)

The issue for 1869, in the **First Series**, is,

VIII—XIII. VIII. The Miller's, Reeve's, and Cook's Tales: Ellesmere MS, Part II; IX. Hengwrt MS, Pt II; X. Cambridge MS, Pt II; XI. Corpus MS, Pt II; XII. Petworth MS, Pt II; XIII. Lansdowne MS, Pt II, with an Appendix of "Gamelyn" from six MSS.

(Separate issues of the Texts forming the Six-Text, Part II, No. XIV.)

The issue for 1870, in the **First Series**, is,

XIV. The Miller's, Reeve's, and Cook's Tales, with an Appendix of the Spurious Tale of Gamelyn, in 6 parallel Texts. (Six-Text, Part II.)

The issue for 1871, in the **First Series**, is,

XV. The Man of Law's, Shipman's, and Prioress's Tales, with Chaucer's own Tale of Sir Thopas, in 6 parallel Texts from the MSS above named, and 9 coloured drawings of Tellers of Tales, after the originals in the Ellesmere MS. (Six-Text, Part III.)

XVI. The Man of Law's Tale, from the Ellesmere MS. Part III.

XVII. " " " " " " Cambridge MS. Part III.

XVIII. " " " " " " Corpus MS. Part III.

XIX. The Shipman's, Prioress's, and Man of Law's Tales, from the Petworth MS. Part III.

11. *Early English Pronunciation*, with especial reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer, by Alexander J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part IV.

12. *Life-Records of Chaucer*, Part I, The Robberies of Chaucer by Richard Brerelay and others at Westminster, and at Hatcham, Surrey, on Tuesday, Sept. 6, 1390, with some Account of the Robbers, from the Enrolments in the Public Record Office, by Walford D. Selby, Esq., of the Public Record Office.

13. Thynne's Animadversions (1599) on Speght's *Chaucers Workes*, re-edited from the unique MS, by Fredk. J. Furnivall, with fresh Lives of William and Francis Thynne, and the only known fragment of *The Pilgrim's Tale*.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for 1876 is,

14. *Life-Records of Chaucer*, Part II, The Household Ordinances of King Edward II, June 1322 (as englished by Francis Tate in March 1601 A.D.), with extracts from those of King Edward IV, to show the probable duties of CHAUCER as Valet or Yeoman of the Chamber, and Esquire, to Edward III, of whose Household Book no MS is known; together with Chaucer's Oath as Controller of the Customs, and an enlarged Autotype of Hoccleve's Portrait of Chaucer, ed. by F. J. Furnivall.

15. *Originals and Analogues of Chaucer's Canterbury Tales*, Part III. 13. The Story of Constance, for the *Man of Law's Tale*. 14. The Boy killd by a Jew for singing 'Gaude Maria,' an Analogue of the *Prioress's Tale*. 15. The Paris Beggar-boy murdered by a Jew for singing 'Alma redemptoris mater!' an Analogue of the *Prioress's Tale*; with a Poem by Lydgate. Edited by F. J. Furnivall.

16. *Essays on Chaucer, his Words and Works*, Part III. 7. Chaucer's Prioress, her Nun Chaplain and 3 Priests, illustrated from the Paper Survey of St Mary's Abbey, Winchester, by F. J. Furnivall. 8. Alliteration in Chaucer, by Dr Paul Lindner. 9. Chaucer a Wicliffite; a critical Examination of the *Parson's Tale*, by Herr Hugo Simon. 10. The sources of the Wife of Bath's Prologue: Chaucer not a borrower from John of Salisbury, by the Rev. W. W. Woolcombe.

17. *Supplementary Canterbury Tales*: 1. The Tale of *Beryn*, with a Prologue of the merry Adventure of the Pardoner with a Tapster at Canterbury, re-edited from the Duke of Northumberland's unique MS, by Fredk. J. Furnivall. Part I, the Text, with Wm. Smith's Map of Canterbury in 1588, now first engraved from his unique MS., and Ogilby's Plan of the Road from London to Canterbury in 1675.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for 1878 (there was none in 1877) is,

18. *Essays on Chaucer, his Words and Works*, Part IV. 11. On *here and there* in Chaucer (his Pronunciation of the two e's), by Dr R. F. Weymouth; 12. On *a*. An Original Version of the *Knight's Tale*; *β*. The Date (1381) and Personages of the *Parlament of Foules*; *γ*. on *Anelida and Arcyte*, on Lollius, on Chaucer, and Boccaccio, &c., by Dr. John Koch, with a fragment of a later *Palamon and Ercyte* from the Dublin MS D. 4. 18.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for 1884 (none in 1879, '80, '81, '82, '83, '85) is,

19. *Essays on Chaucer, his Words and Works*, Part V: 13. Chaucer's *Pardoner*: his character illustrated by documents of his time, by Dr J. J. Jusserand. 14. Why the *Romaunt of the Rose* is not Chaucer's, by Prof. Skeat, M.A. 15. Chaucer's *Schipman*, and his Barge 'The Maudelayne,' by P. Q. Karkeek, Esq. 16. Chaucer's *Parson's Tale* compared with Frère Lorens's *Somme de Vices et de Vertus*, by Wilhelm Eilers, Ph.D., 1882, englished 1884. 17. On Chaucer's Reputed Works, by T. L. Kington-Oliphant, M.A.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for 1886 is,

20. *Originals and Analogs of the Canterbury Tales*. Part IV. Eastern Analogs I, by W. A. Clouston.

21. *Life-Records of Chaucer*, Part III, *a*. The Household book of Isabella wife of Prince Lionel, third son of Edward III, in which the name of GEOFFREY CHAUCER first occurs; edited from the unique MS in the Brit. Mus., by Edward A. Bond, LL.D., Chief Librarian. *b*. Chaucer as Forester of North Petherton, Somerset, 1390—1400, by Walford D. Selby, Esq. With an Appendix by Walter Rye, Esq., on I, Chaucer's Grandfather; II, Chaucer's connection with Lynn and Norfolk.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for 1887 is,

22. *Originals and Analogs of the Canterbury Tales*, Part V (completing the volume). Eastern Analogs, II, by W. A. Clouston.

23. John Lane's *Continuation of Chaucer's Squire's Tale*, edited by F. J. Furnivall from the 2 MSS in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, A.D. 1616, 1630. Part I.

24. *Supplementary Canterbury Tales*: 2, The Tale of *Beryn*, Part II. Forewords by F. J. Furnivall, Notes by F. Vipan, M.A. &c., and Glossary by W. G. Stone; with an Essay on Analogs of the Tale, by W. A. Clouston.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for 1888 (*wrongly markt No. 27 for 1889*) is,

25. *Early English Pronunciation*, with especial reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer, by Alexander J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part V, and last.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for 1889 is,

26. John Lane's *Continuation of Chaucer's Squire's Tale*. Part II, with an Essay on the Magical Elements in the *Squire's Tale*, and Analogues, by W. A. Clouston.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for 1890 is,

27. *The Chronology of Chaucer's Writings*, by John Koch, Ph.D., Berlin.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for **1891** is,
 28. *Observations on the Language of Chaucer's Troilus* (a Study of its MSS, their words and forms), by Prof. George Lyman Kittredge, M.A.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for **1892** is,
 29. *Essays on Chaucer, his Words and Works*, Part VI, by Prof. Cowell, LL.D., Alois Brandl, Ph.D. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., and W. M. Rossetti.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for **1898** (none in 1893-97) is,
 30. *Notes on the Road from London to Canterbury*, ed. H. Littlehales, Esq.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for **1900** (none in 1899) is,

31. *The Portraits of Geoffrey Chaucer*. By M. H. Spielmann.

32. *Life-Records of Chaucer*, Part IV, Enrolments and Documents from the Public Record Office, the City of London Town-Clerk's Office, &c., ed. R. E. G. Kirk, Esq.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for **1901** is,

33. *R. Brathwait's Comments on 2 Tales of Chaucer*, 1665, ed. Miss C. Spurgeon.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for **1902** is,

34. *Supplementary Canterbury Tales: 3, A new Ploughman's Tale*, being Hoccleve's englisht *Legend of the Virgin and her Sleeveless Garment*, from the Christchurch and Ashburnham MSS, edited by A. Beatty, M.A., Wisconsin. Part III.

35. *The Pardoner's Prologue and Tale*, a critical edition by John Koch, Ph.D.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for **1903** is,

36. *Analogues of Chaucer's Canterbury Pilgrimage*, the 4-days' Journey from London to Canterbury and back of the Aragonese Ambassadors, 31 July—3 Aug. 1415, etc., ed. R. E. G. Kirk and F. J. Furnivall. (Publishd in 1906.)

37. *The Development and Chronology of Chaucer's Works*, by John S. P. Tatlock, Ph.D., Assistant Professor of English in the University of Michigan. (Issued in 1907.)

38. *The Evolution of the Canterbury Tales*, by Prof. W. W. Skeat, Litt.D. (1907.)

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for **1904** (publishd in 1907) is,

39. *Studies in Chaucer's House of Fame*, by Wilbur Owen Sypherd, Ph.D., Professor of English in Delaware College, U.S.A.

40. *The Origin and Development of the Story of Troilus and Criseyde*, by Karl Young, Ph.D.

41. *The Harleian MS 7334 and Revision of the Canterbury Tales*, by Prof. Tatlock, Ph.D.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for **1905** (publishd in 1908) is,

42. *The Date of Chaucer's Troilus and other Chaucer matters*, by Prof. George Lyman Kittredge, LL.D., Litt.D.

43. *The Eight-Text Edition of the Canterbury Tales; with especial reference to the Harleian MS 7334*, by Prof. W. W. Skeat, Litt.D.

44. *The Syntax of the Infinitive in Chaucer*, by John Samuel Kenyon, Ph.D.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for **1906** (publishd in 1910-1) is,

45. *A Study of the Miracles of Our Lady, told by Chaucer's Prioress*, by Prof. Carleton Brown, Ph.D.

46. *Lydgate's Siege of Thebes*, ed. from the MSS by Prof. Axel Erdmann, Ph.D. Part I, the Text (1911). Part II will be publishd by the E.E.T.S.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for **1907** (publishd in 1913) is,

47. *A Detailed Comparison of the Eight Manuscripts of Chaucer's Canterbury Tales*, as completely printed by the Chaucer Society, by Professor John Koch, Ph.D.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for **1908** (publishd in 1914) is,

48. *Five Hundred Years of Chaucer Criticism and Allusion, 1357-1800 A.D.*, by Professor Caroline F. E. Spurgeon, Docteur de l'Université de Paris. Part I.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for **1909** (publishd in 1916) will be,

49. *Five Hundred Years of Chaucer Criticism and Allusion, 1357-1900 A.D.*, by Professor Caroline F. E. Spurgeon, Docteur de l'Université de Paris. Part II.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for **1910** (publishd in 1917) will be,

50. *Five Hundred Years of Chaucer Criticism and Allusion, 1357-1900 A.D.*, by Professor Caroline F. E. Spurgeon, Docteur de l'Université de Paris. Part III.

Of the **Second Series**, the issue for **1911** is,

51. *The Scene of the Franklin's Tale visited*, by Professor J. S. P. Tatlock, Ph.D. (publishd in 1914).

Among the Texts and Chaucer Essays, &c., preparing for the Society is:—

A Comparative Study of all the MSS of the Canterbury Tales, by Professor George Stevenson, B.A.

UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS-URBANA



3 0112 118417697